

# Chinese OCW Conversational Chinese Grammar Text

by

**Kurt Hamm**  
and  
**Rose Xu**  
徐丽  
(Xú Lì)

edited by

**Christine Feng**  
冯晓瑾 (Féng Xiǎojǐn)

Page 1 of 265

Chinese OCW Conversational Chinese is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-No  
Derivative Works 2.5 China Mainland License. Based on work at Chinese [www.chineseocw.com](http://www.chineseocw.com)



## Table of Contents

Unit	page
Introduction to Studying Chinese .....	8
Summary of this Book .....	15
Unit 1 Greetings, Names and Titles .....	26
Addressing friends, family and coworkers .....	27
Statements .....	27
Negative Statements .....	27
Questions .....	28
Unit 2 “To Be” Sentences .....	29
“To Be” an noun .....	30
And / Also / All (Statements) .....	30
OR (Statements) .....	30
Negative Statements .....	31
Questions .....	31
Unit 3 Showing Possession 的 (de) .....	34
Negative Statements .....	35
Questions .....	35
Unit 4 Numbers and Measure Words .....	37
The Number “one” .....	38
The Number “two” .....	38
Measure Words .....	38
Unit 5 Adjectives .....	39
“To Be” an Adjective .....	40
Negative Statements .....	41
Questions .....	42
General Rules for Modifying Nouns .....	43
是(shì)。。。 的(de) .....	43
Negative Statements .....	43
Questions .....	44
Using 的 (de) with Adjectives .....	44
Adjectives that are Modified by Degree .....	45
Measure Words and Adjectives .....	45
Example Sentences .....	46
Unit 6 Comparisons .....	47
Comparing Two Things 比 .....	50
Questions .....	50
Comparing Two Things (不如) .....	51
Questions .....	51
A is equal to or greater than B (有) .....	51
A is less than B (没有) .....	52
Questions .....	52
Stating Two Things are the Same (跟 / 和。。。 一样) .....	53
Stating Two Things are not the Same (跟。。。。。。 不一样) .....	54
Questions .....	55
Relatively / Comparatively (比较) .....	56



	Progression (越来越).....	56
Unit 7	“To Have” (有) Sentences .....	57
	Negative Statements .....	58
	Questions .....	58
Unit 8	Days and Dates.....	60
	Months and Days.....	60
	Dates and Years .....	62
	Questions .....	62
Unit 9	Time .....	64
	Stating the Time.....	64
	Length of Time .....	66
	Questions .....	66
Unit 10	“Action Verb” Sentences .....	67
	Habitual / Intentional Actions.....	67
	Time Phrases .....	68
	Negative Statements .....	69
	Questions .....	69
Unit 11	“Action Verb” Sentences - Actions in Progress .....	72
	Negative Statements .....	74
	Questions .....	75
Unit 12	“Action Verb” Sentences (了) (过).....	78
	Completed Actions (了).....	78
	Negative Statements .....	82
	Questions .....	82
	Actions (as part of past experience) (过) .....	86
	Negative Statements .....	86
	Questions .....	86
	Describing a situation (是。。。的).....	88
Unit 13	Using 了(le) to indicate a change of state .....	89
Unit 14	“To Be” at a Place .....	91
	在 as a Verb .....	91
	Negative Statements .....	91
	Questions .....	92
	Habitual or Intentional Actions.....	92
	Actions in Progress.....	93
	Completed Actions .....	93
	Negative Statements.....	93
	Questions .....	94
Unit 15	There is (there exists) (有, 在, 是).....	95
	There is (there exists).....	96
	Beside .....	97
	Opposite (对面).....	98
	Between .....	98
	There is not.....	99
	Is not beside.....	100
	Is not opposite.....	100



	Is not between .....	101
	Questions .....	102
Unit 16	Over / On / Under / Below / In / Out .....	103
	Negative Statements .....	105
	Questions .....	106
Unit 17	Actions in a Continuing State (着) .....	108
	Negative Statements .....	110
	Questions .....	111
	Example Sentences .....	111
Unit 18	How Often / How Many Times .....	114
	Often .....	114
	Negative Statements .....	115
	How Often .....	115
	How Many Times .....	117
	Normally / Usually .....	117
	Questions .....	118
Unit 19	How / Why / Like / Dislike .....	120
	Expressing Purpose (Why) .....	121
	Negative Statements .....	121
	Questions .....	121
	Expressing Means and Method .....	123
	Negative Statements .....	124
	Questions .....	124
	Stating Likes and Dislikes .....	125
	Negative Statements .....	126
	Questions .....	126
Unit 20	Compliment of Potentiality (得) .....	127
	Sentences with no Action .....	127
	Negative Statements .....	128
	Questions .....	128
	Sentences with Potential Action .....	129
Unit 21	Comparisons .....	130
	Two Actions (A is greater than B) (比) .....	130
	Two Actions (A is not greater than B) (不比) .....	131
	Questions .....	132
	Two Actions (A is equal to or greater than B) (有 / 没有) .....	132
	Questions .....	133
	Stating that two actions are the same (跟。。一样) .....	134
	Stating Two Actions are the not Same (跟。。不一样) .....	135
	Questions .....	135
Unit 22	Verb “Compliment of Results” .....	136
	Section 1 – Verbs and Adjectives .....	138
	Verbs .....	138
	Adjectives .....	139
	Section 2 – Verb “Compliment of Results” .....	140
	Negative Statements .....	143
	Questions .....	143



	Section 3 – Using “Compliment of Results” and “Compliments of Potentiality”	144
Unit 23	Directional Verbs (上 and 下)	148
	Habitual or Intentional Actions	149
	Actions in Progress	149
	Completed Actions	149
	Negative Statements	149
	Questions	149
Unit 24	Will / Want / Think / Should / Must (Auxiliary Verbs)	151
	Section 1 – Verbs	152
	Want (verb - 要)	152
	Negative Statements	152
	Questions	152
	Think (verb - 想)	153
	Negative Statements	153
	Questions	154
	Think / Opinion (verb - 认为 / 觉得)	154
	Negative Statements	155
	Questions	155
	Need (verb - 需要)	156
	Need (verb - 得 - děi)	156
	Negative Statements	156
	Questions	157
	Section 2 – Auxiliary Verbs	157
	Want / Will - Auxiliary Verbs (要 / 想)	157
	Negative Statements	158
	Questions	158
	Should - Auxiliary verbs (应该 / 要)	159
	Negative Statements	159
	Questions	159
	Must - Auxiliary Verb (必须)	160
	Negative Statements	160
	Questions	161
Unit 25	Can / Able / Possible / Probable / Will (Auxiliary Verbs)	162
	Can (ability or knowledge) Verb (会)	163
	Can (Auxiliary Verb) (会)	163
	Negative Statements	163
	Questions	164
	Possibly / Probably (Auxiliary Verb - 会)	164
	Negative Statements	165
	Questions	165
	Can (Auxiliary Verb - 能)	165
	Negative Statements	166
	Questions	166
	Possibility (may / can) (Auxiliary Verb - 可以)	167
	Negative Statements	167



	Questions .....	167
	Possible / Not Possible - 了 (liǎo).....	168
	Example Sentences .....	170
Unit 26	If / Then / Because / Don't / Other / But / Still .....	171
	Because ...So (因为。。。。所以。。。)	172
	If ...Then (要是)(如果)(的话).....	173
	Then (就)(才)(然后).....	175
	Don't (别).....	179
	Other (别的)(另外).....	179
	But (但是).....	179
	Still / Yet / Also / Emphasis (还).....	180
Unit 27	Before / After / While / When.....	181
	Before (以前).....	181
	After (以后) .....	181
	While (一边。。。。一边).....	182
	When / While (当。。。的时候).....	183
	Questions .....	183
Unit 28	Repetition of Actions (再)(又).....	184
	再(zài) and 又(yòu).....	184
	又(yòu) - two actions happen in succession.....	185
	The difference between 一边。。一边 and 又。。又.....	185
	又。。又 two situations that occur at the same time.....	186
	再 used to indicate a continuation of actions .....	186
Unit 29	From / To / With .....	187
	From (从).....	187
	From (离).....	188
	With (跟。。。一起).....	188
	Near / Nearby (很近 / 附近).....	189
Unit 30	Simple Compliments of Direction (来 and 去).....	190
	and Compound Compliments of Direction	
	Simple Compliments of Direction (来 and 去) .....	190
	Compound Compliments of Direction .....	192
	Example Sentences .....	193
	Supplemental Words .....	193
Unit 31	Durations of Actions.....	199
	Unit Summary .....	199
	Example Sentences .....	212
Unit 32	Modifying Verbs (着) .....	218
	Example Sentences .....	219
	Single syllable adjectives 地 (de).....	220
	Reduplicated Single Syllable Adjectives.....	220
	Two Syllable Adjectives with Verbs 地 (de) .....	220
	Reduplicated Two Syllable Adjectives .....	221
	Example Sentences .....	221



Unit 33 把 (bǎ) Sentences.....	223
把 (bǎ) sentences .....	226
Rules of 把 (bǎ) sentences .....	226
Using 着 in 把 (bǎ) sentences .....	227
Auxiliary Verbs in 把 (bǎ) sentences .....	229
Time Phrases in 把 (bǎ) sentences.....	231
Negative Statements .....	232
Questions .....	232
Commands and Requests .....	239
To Give Something to Someone .....	246
Auxiliary Verbs and the Particle 了 (le) .....	247
Verb “compliments of results” .....	247
Example Sentences .....	248
Sentences that must use 把 .....	249
Compound Compliment of Direction.....	253
Unit 34 被 (bèi) Sentences .....	259
Comparison of Active and Passive voice .....	260
Summary of rules for simple 被 (bèi) sentences .....	260
Using 让 (ràng) and 叫(jiào).....	261
Negative Statements .....	262
Questions .....	263
Example Sentences .....	253

## Appendices

Appendix A	Pinyin
Appendix B	Advance Measure Words
Appendix C	Shopping and Money
Appendix D	Numbers in Use
Appendix E	Large and Small Numbers
Pinyin Pronunciation Chart	
Glossary	

Pinyin is a phonetic representation of Chinese characters, it is not proper Chinese. In the material in these books, we have only capitalized pinyin spellings that are normally used as such in English. Those words are limited to the names of cities, such as Beijing and Shanghai and family names.

In this text, we have used the more common pronunciation (shéi) for the character 谁 instead of (shuí). In dialogs, the pinyin representations for 一 (yī) and 不 (bù) have been changed to reflect the way they are spoken in conversation. (Reference: Grammar Text Appendix A – Tone Change Rules)



## Introduction to Studying Chinese

While there are many dialects of Chinese spoken throughout China, Mandarin is the official language and most universally spoken in the country. As a written language, it is universal to all the dialects. Chinese writing does not use letters; it uses ideographic symbols called characters. Each character is one syllable. There is a phonetic system for the characters that uses letters. This system, called pinyin, allows one to learn pronunciation without much difficulty. Looking at the example below, it is apparent that learning to speak Chinese is much easier than learning to read or write the language.

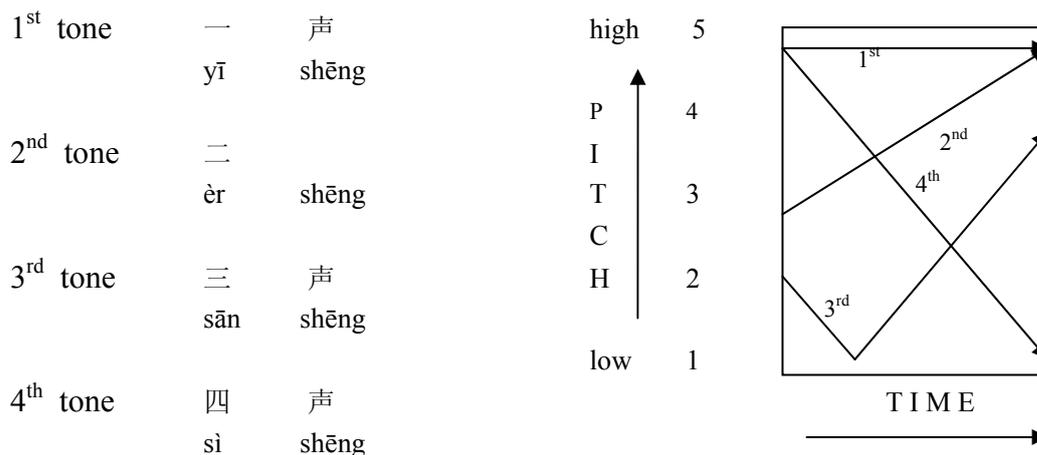
Chinese Characters	Pinyin Phonetic Representation	English Meaning
餐厅	cān tīng	cafeteria

### Tones

In the example above, notice that each pinyin syllable has a mark over it. In the pinyin pronunciation system, tones are accounted for by tone marks above each syllable. If no tone mark is used, the tone is neutral. A neutral tone is spoken lightly. The tone marks are shown below.

first tone	second tone	third tone	fourth tone
—	ˊ	ˇ	ˋ

Each tone has both pitch and inflection as the diagram below illustrates: 1st - a high, flat tone, 2nd - a rising tone, 3rd - a tone that combines a falling and a rising inflection, 4th - a falling tone and a neutral tone that is soft and light.



The example below shows how different tones distinguish words that are otherwise pronounced alike.

1 <sup>st</sup> tone	2 <sup>nd</sup> tone	3 <sup>rd</sup> tone	4 <sup>th</sup> tone
耷	答	打	大
dā	dá	dǎ	dà
to droop	to answer	to hit	big

In China, you will often see pinyin writing on signs under characters. Pinyin spellings are included on hotel signs, advertisements, road signs and buildings; however, tone marks are only used in books, not on signs. People's names as well as city names, such as “Beijing” and “Shanghai”, will appear in English writing as their pinyin spellings.

The importance of using correct tones when speaking cannot be overemphasized. Using incorrect tones makes it nearly impossible to understand what is being said. For example, in the sentence below, notice how changing the tone of “han” changes the meaning of the sentence.

Can you speak hànyǔ ? 4<sup>th</sup> tone means.... Can you speak Chinese?

Can you speak hányǔ ? 2<sup>nd</sup> tone means.... Can you speak Korean?

### Pronunciation

Most Chinese books for beginners have pinyin charts. All the sounds that are possible to speak are on the chart. The easiest way to master pronunciation is to learn all the sounds on the pinyin chart first. Learn to listen for them and learn to speak them. It helps to review the rules, which are quite simple, at the beginning of your program. This helps avoid confusion later on. For instance, the "uǎn" in 馆 "guǎn" is not pronounced the same as the "uǎn" in 选 "xuǎn". An explanation of this chart is given in the first appendix of this book.

After that, practice by repeating audio material and reading sentences aloud. First, listening is improved, particularly in getting used to hearing tones. Additionally, speaking the texts helps in two ways. First, speaking develops the mouth muscles needed to say sounds that are unfamiliar. For instance, English has no equivalent sound for the (uè) in 月 (yuè) (month). Making this sound requires drawing in the cheek muscles in a way not familiar to native English speakers. After speaking a sound several times, the mouth muscles get used to it, and in time, it is gets easier. Second and most importantly, English speakers aren't used to using tones. Repeating the texts helps develop the habit of speaking the tones.



After understanding how pinyin works, it is tempting to simply ignore characters in your Chinese study program. While pinyin is indispensable when studying Mandarin, Chinese characters are not the same as words. Very few spoken Chinese programs rely solely on pinyin. This is true because a working knowledge of characters simplifies all grammar explanations as well as vocabulary acquisition. While it isn't necessary to learn to read or write proficiently, knowing how characters are manipulated to form words and grammatical structures makes learning to speak Chinese much easier.

## Characters

Each character represents a word or an idea. Many characters, in their monosyllabic form, have meaning - but are not typically used alone. For instance, 夏 (xià) means "summer". However, "I like summer" is expressed as "I like 夏天 (xià tiān)". In this case, their monosyllabic forms are only used when listing them.

北京	有	四个	季节,	春、	夏、	秋、	冬。
Běijīng	yǒu	sìgè	jìjié,	chūn、	xià、	qiū、	dōng.
Beijing	has	four	seasons	spring,	summer,	autumn,	winter

When listing things, in general, it is common to see or hear monosyllabic word forms. On buses and subways there is usually a sign that says, "please offer your seat to 老弱病残孕 (lǎo ruò bìng cán yùn)" (old, sick, weak, disabled, pregnant). Each of these individual characters has meaning when used alone, but are only used alone when in a list. If one of these groups of people were mentioned, separately, they would use the following multi-syllabic phrases:

老年人	<b>lǎo</b> nián rén	senior citizens
身体虚弱的人	shēn tǐ xū <b>ruò</b> de rén	weak people
生病的人	shēng <b>bìng</b> de rén	sick people
残疾人	<b>cán</b> jí rén	disabled
怀孕的妇女	huái <b>yùn</b> de fù nǚ	pregnant women

Consider the following mono-syllabic words:

老	lǎo	old	中	zhōng	middle
年	nián	year	人	rén	person(s)

The following multi-syllabic words seem fairly intuitive

中年人	zhōng nián rén	middle aged person(s)
老年人	lǎo nián rén	old aged person(s)

If both groups are referred to at the same time, a multi-syllabic phrase is used to express the combination of the groups as:



中老年人 zhōng lǎo nián rén both old age and middle aged person(s)

"Tea is enjoyed by many 中老年人(zhōng lǎo nián rén)."

Another example: the two syllable word for China is 中国(zhōng guó), the two syllable word for France is 法国(fǎ guó). When referring to relations between the two countries the first syllable of each word is used form the multi-syllabic phrase, "中法(zhōng fǎ)", as in the sentence, "中法(zhōng fǎ) (Sino-French) relations are very good". The word for "desk" is 桌子(zhuō zi) and the word for "chair" is 椅子(yǐ zi) but when referring to "desks and chairs" 桌椅(zhuō yǐ) is used as in the sentence "This room has no桌椅(zhuō yǐ)."

The examples above illustrate the tendency of the language to be brief. Chinese have a penchant for brevity and often shorten expressions. Similar to when people in the U.S. are discussing a state university, it isn't uncommon to hear the word "state" being used in place of a university's name. This is much more common in Chinese than in English. For example, 北京图书馆(Běi jīng tú shū guǎn) [Beijing library] becomes 北图(běi tú) or when referring to the bus stop for students going to the national college entrance exams, 高考的学生车站(gāo kǎo de xué shēng chē zhàn) [college entrance exam student bus stop] you will hear, 考生站(kǎo shēng zhàn). This way of making phrases, by dropping characters and combining them, is also how words are formed.

To create a single multi-syllabic word, single characters are taken from other multi-syllabic words and combined in the same way as the phrases discussed above. For instance, 洗衣店(xǐ yī diàn), is a multi-syllabic word that means "laundry shop". The words for "shop" and "clothes" are have two characters each; however, only one character from each word is used to form the words "laundry shop".

wash	clothes	shop	laundry shop
洗(xǐ)	衣服(yī fu)	商店(shāng diàn)	
洗(xǐ)	衣(yī)	店(diàn)	洗衣店(xǐ yī diàn)

The list below further illustrates how this works. Knowing these associations helps simplify learning new words. Notice that in the word 衣服(yī fu), 服(fú) is spoken in the neutral tone and in the word 服务(fú wù), 服(fú) is spoken in the 2<sup>nd</sup> tone.

雨		yǔ	rain
下	雨	xià yǔ	to rain
	雨 衣	yǔ yī	raincoat
	衣	yī	clothes
大		dà	big

大	衣	dà yī	coat
	服	yī fu	clothes
	服	fú	serve, serve as
	务	wù	to be engage in
	服	fú wù	service
	务	fú wù yuán	service person
	医	yī wù	medical matters
	医	yī	medicine, doctor
	医	yī wù shì	clinic
	务	shì	room

In the word list above, knowing that the character 员(yuán) in the word 服务员(fú wù yuán) indicates a kind of job title, makes learning new words such as the ones below easier.

打字	dǎ zì	to type
打字 <b>员</b>	dǎ zì <b>yuán</b>	typist
飞行	fēi xíng	to fly
飞行 <b>员</b>	fēi xíng <b>yuán</b>	pilot
商店	shāng diàn	store, shop
店 <b>员</b>	diàn <b>yuán</b>	sales clerk
海	hǎi	sea
海 <b>员</b>	hǎi <b>yuán</b>	sailor

However, ignoring the characters altogether, simply studying the language using pinyin, increases the chances of making wrong associations when learning new words. For instance, the character 员(yuán) (service person) has the same pronunciation as the character that means "an area of land for growing plants" or "a place for public recreation", 园(yuán). Limited to only using pinyin, a beginner might mistakenly assume the word for "garden", 花园(huā yuán), to mean "gardener".

花	园	huā yuán	garden
动	物	dòng wù yuán	zoo
公	园	gōng yuán	public park
校	园	xiào yuán	campus

The examples above illustrate that including characters in Chinese study programs simplifies vocabulary acquisition, by showing associations that make learning new

words easier, as well as avoiding confusion through wrong associations.

While it isn't necessary to learn to read or write proficiently, when learning to speak Chinese, a familiarity with characters helps immensely in understanding the language and avoiding confusion. Deciding to include characters in a course of study brings up the question "how can a beginner remember new characters?"

## Radicals

When people try to remember unfamiliar things, such as Chinese characters, it is necessary to associate this new information with something familiar, to develop memory hooks. Native English speakers have little experience in remembering, what appear to be, pictures. In an effort to remember characters, a common mistake many beginners make is to create their own "personal" memory associations or memory hooks. They construct mental images that help them remember the complexities of each character. For instance, "This looks like a house and that looks like a pillow, so this character looks like a pillow on a house." Do not do this! This leads to remembering a very complicated set of pictures that becomes very difficult to manage. There is an easier way deal with remembering characters. To simplify reading characters, it is important to understand that each character is composed of common elements that are called radicals. There are around 241 radicals. Using radicals makes recognizing and remembering characters much easier. In the example below, notice how each radical on the left is used in the characters on the right. Also notice that the radicals may not always appear exactly the same in different characters.

Radical	Characters
王	国 班 玩 望 全 球 现
刀	刂 兔 分 解 切 绍 照

Sometimes, knowing the meaning of a radical makes understanding the meaning of a character it is used in easier to remember. For instance, 氵 is the radical for water. It is called "three dot water". In the example below, knowing the meaning of this radical makes it easier to remember the meaning of the characters that it is in.

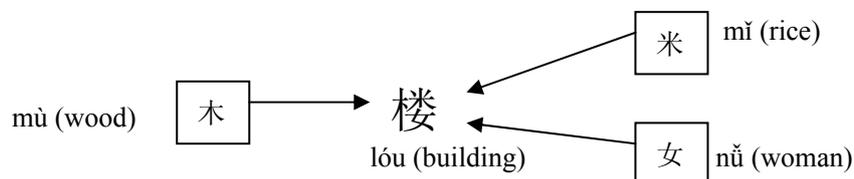
(xǐ) wash	(hǎi) sea	(hé) lake	(jiāng) river
洗	海	河	江

In the following example, 木 is the radical for wood, which is in the characters that mean "tree" and "forest".

(mù) wood	(shù) tree	(lín) forest
木	树	林

Understanding radicals makes recognizing characters much easier and systematic. As in the examples above, there are some radicals that help reveal a character's meaning.

In the example below, the meaning of the radicals do not reveal the meaning of the character; however, remembering the character for the word "building" isn't so hard if you know the radicals.



Understanding radicals makes it possible to become familiar with characters in a systematic way. As in the example above, the character for "building" breaks down into its component parts, radicals. Using these radicals allows learners to have a consistent set of memory hooks when dealing with characters.

As we have seen, while characters seem difficult, learning to recognize them is manageable. Knowing how characters are used to form words as well as how radicals form characters makes remembering this new kind of information much easier. Relying solely on pinyin when learning to speak can make it more difficult than it needs to be; having a familiarity with Chinese characters makes learning new words easier.

Grammar is also simplified by understanding characters. While Chinese grammar is not difficult, the sentence structures are much easier to understand if characters are not ignored. This is evident from the beginning. The following unit is a summary of the contents of this book. These examples make it clear how understanding characters helps in understanding basic grammar.

## Summary of this Book

For English speakers, the Chinese language appears quite difficult. Since it is character based and uses tones, it seems that nothing is familiar. However, there are some similarities between the languages. Both Chinese and English have a subject-verb-object (SVO) sentence structure within their grammar rules. Furthermore, Chinese basic sentence structures, such as those that express numbers, places, directions, measure words, prepositions, comparisons, time durations and conditional statements are very dependent on word order. This makes it fairly easy to understand and learn Chinese grammar. The units at the end of the book explain directional compliments, 把 (bǎ) sentences, which are OSV (object-subject-verb), and 被 (bèi) sentences, which are passive voice sentences.

## Summary of Verbs

One of the main differences between Chinese and English is that Chinese is a verb-centered language and English is noun-centered. In Chinese, there are more kinds of verbs and prepositions are used much less. The examples below will help new learners understand how characters work and how Chinese verbs are used.

Basic SVO sentence:

Subject	Verb	Object
我	吃	烤鸭。
wǒ	chī	kǎoyā
I	eat	roast duck.

**(Unit 1)** To make a sentence negative, add no/not, 不 (bù) in front of the verb:

Subject	Verb	Object
我	不吃	烤鸭。
wǒ	bùchī	kǎoyā
I	don't eat	roast duck.

To make the statement into a question, add 'ma 吗' at the end.

This sentence means “Do you eat roast duck?”

你	吃	烤鸭	吗?
nǐ	chī	kǎoyā	ma?
You	eat	roast duck	(question)

### **(Unit 2)** 'To Be' Verb Sentences

The 'to be' verb, 是 (shì), is used the same way in both Chinese and English. Notice that common nouns do not have plural forms, only a few pronouns have plural forms.

我	是	老师。	我们	是	老师。
wǒ	shì	lǎoshī。	wǒ men	shì	lǎoshī。
I	am	teacher	We	are	teachers.

我	不是	老师。	我们	不是	老师。
wǒ	bú shì	lǎoshī.	wǒ men	bú shì	lǎoshī.
I	am not	teacher.	We	are not	teacher(s).

**(Unit 5) No Verb - 'to be' Verb Sentences**

If the entire predicate is an adjective, then no verb is needed.

我	忙。	我	不	忙。
wǒ	máng.	wǒ	bù	máng.
I	busy	I	not	busy.

In these kinds of sentences, an adverb of degree is usually used to modify the adjective. If 很 (hěn) is used it does not carry any meaning, it simply makes the sentence grammatically correct. In the sentences below, 非常 (fēi cháng) does carry the meaning “very”.

我	很	忙。	我	非常	忙。
wǒ	hěn	máng.	wǒ	fēi cháng	máng.
I		busy.	I	very	busy.

**(Unit 14) No Verb - 'to be' Verb Sentences**

If a place name follows 在 (zài) then it carries the 'to be' meaning, which means “to be at a [place name]”

<b>Subject</b>	<b>Verb</b>	<b>Object</b>	Other verbs that carry the meaning “to be” are covered in <b>Unit 1</b> :
他	在	图书馆	姓 xìng to be named
tā	zài	túshūguǎn.	叫 jiào to be called
He	is at	library.	
他	不在	图书馆	
tā	bú zài	túshūguǎn.	
He	is not at	library	

**(Unit 14) Prepositions**

在 (zài) may function as a preposition in sentences with other verbs.

<b>Subject</b>	(at place)	<b>Verb</b>	<b>Object</b>
他	在 图书馆	看	报纸。
tā	zài túshūguǎn	kàn	bàozhǐ.
He	at library	read	newspaper

**(Unit 7) “to have” verbs**

In sentences below, 有 (yǒu) is used to express 'to have'.



我	有	一些	英文	书。
wǒ	yǒu	yìxiē	yīngwén	shū.
I	have	some	English	book(s).

#### (Unit 4) Measure Words

There are no articles (a, an, the) in Chinese. When specifying a number of nouns, measure words (MW) (量词, liàng cí), sometimes called 'classifiers', are used. In English, this is comparable to "piece" in a "piece of cake" or "sheet" in a "sheet of paper". There are over 140 measure words and they are required for almost all nouns in Mandarin. The measure word 个 (gè) can be used to refer to almost anything. It isn't considered fluent Chinese but it will get your meaning across. Therefore, one (of something) is 一个 (yí gè), two is 两个(liǎng ge) and three is 三个(sān ge). In the example below, 本 (běn) is the measure word for books.

我	有	三	本	英文	书。
wǒ	yǒu	sān	běn	yīng wén	shū.
I	have	three	MW	English	book(s).

In action verb sentences, measure words are used between the verb and the object:

Subject		Verb	number	MW	Object
我	每天	吃	三	顿	饭。
wǒ	měitiān	chī	sān	dùn	fàn.
I	everyday	eat	three		meals.

#### (Unit 18) How Often / How Many Times

The words that express the number of occurrences are also placed between the verb and the object.

Subject		Verb	number	MW	Object
我	每天	看	两	次	新闻。
wǒ	měitiān	kàn	liǎng	cì	xīnwén.
I	everyday	watch	two	times	news.

#### (Unit 15) There is / are

English sentences beginning with 'there is', meaning 'there exists', are expressed using 有(yǒu), 在(zài), and 是(shì).

在 (zài) There is a chair on the left side of the desk.

椅子	在	桌子	的	左边。
yǐ zi	zài	zhuō zi	de	zuǒ biān.
Chair	is at	desk's		right side

有 (yǒu) There is a dormitory beside the library.

图书馆 的	旁边	有	一个	宿舍。
tú shū guǎn de	páng biān	yǒu	yí gè	sù shè.
Library's	side	has	one (MW)	dormitory

是 (shì) There is a chair behind the desk.

桌子的	后边	是	一把	椅子。
zhuō zi de	hòu biān	shì	yì bǎ	yǐ zi.
Desk's	backside	is	one (MW)	chair.

### (Unit 10 - 12) Action Verbs

The examples below illustrate how word order is fixed concerning time. The time an action occurs must go at the beginning of the sentence or directly after the subject.

<b>Subject</b>	<b>Time</b>	<b>Verb</b>	<b>Object</b>
我	明天	吃	烤鸭。
wǒ	míngtiān	chī	kǎoyā
I	tomorrow	eat	roast duck

<b>Time</b>	<b>Subject</b>	<b>Verb</b>	<b>Object</b>
明天	我	吃	烤鸭。
míngtiān	wǒ	chī	kǎoyā
tomorrow	I	eat	roast duck

Action verbs can be used alone, but they usually have an object. For example, 看 (kàn) can mean to look, see, watch or read, depending on the object that follows it. The examples below illustrate how 看(kàn) is used in several different verb-object phrases. The first example, 看书 (kàn shū) usually refers to the general idea of reading, as in “I like to read.” Action verbs may also be used alone as one word answers.

	<b>Verb-Object Phrase</b>	<b>English Meaning</b>
看书	kàn shū	read books, reading (in general)
看电影	kàn diàn yǐng	watch movies
看朋友	kàn péng you	see friends
看报纸	kàn bào zhǐ	read newspapers
看杂志	kàn zá zhì	read magazines

<b>Subject</b>	<b>Time</b>	<b>Verb</b>	<b>Object</b>
我	每天	看 两 本	杂志。
wǒ	měi tiān	kàn liǎng běn	zázhì.
I	everyday	read two MW	magazine(s).



**(Unit 10) Habitual or Intentional Actions (Action Verbs)**

Units 10 – 12 explain that, in Chinese, there are no verb tenses. Verbs are habitual / intentional, in progress or completed. Context determines if the verb indicates a habitual or intentional action.

What do you do on weekends? 我 看书。 I read. (habitual)  
What will you do tonight? 我 看书。 I will read. (intentional)  
wǒ kàn shū.

**(Unit 11) Actions in Progress (Action Verbs)**

Using 正在 (zhèng zài) or 在 (zài) before an action verb are two ways, of several, that may be used to express an action in progress.

我 正在 看书。 I am reading.  
wǒ zhèng zài kàn shū. (action is in progress)  
I (in progress) read.

This is not the same as English present tense, an action in progress may occur in a future or past time frame. In the sentences below, example sentence 1 shows a continuing action in the past, and example sentence 2 shows a continuing action in the future.

Example 1: At 9 pm last night, he was doing homework.

昨天 晚上 九点 他 正在 做 作业。  
zuó tiān wǎn shàng jiǔ diǎn tā zhèng zài zuò zuò yè  
Yesterday evening 9 o'clock he (in progress) do homework.

Example 2: When you come to the school tomorrow, we could be having class.

明天 你 来 学校 的时候,  
míng tiān nǐ lái xué xiào de shíhòu,  
Tomorrow you come school (when)  
我们 可能 正在 上课。  
wǒ men kě néng zhèng zài shàng kè。  
we possible (action in progress) have class

## (Unit 12) Completed Actions (Action Verbs)

The particle 了(le) is used to express that actions have been completed.

我	看	了	三	本	书。	
wǒ	kàn	le	sān	běn	shū.	I have read 3 books.
I	read	(completed	3	MW	books.	
		action)				

Using the particle 了(le) is not the same as using past tense in English, it indicates an actions completion, which may occur in a future time frame.

Example: After we eat breakfast we will go.

明天	吃了	早饭	以后	我们	就	走。
míng tiān	chī le	zǎo fàn	yǐ hòu	wǒ men	jiù	zǒu.
Tomorrow	eat	breakfast	after	we	then	go.
	(completed					
	action)					

When indicating a completed action, 了 (le) means different things depending on where it is in the sentence. Placing 了 (le) after the verb, places more emphasis on the specific action. For example, after noticing someone has walked away, the speaker would say 他去了哪儿? (tā qù le nǎr?) – “Where did he GO?”. Placing 了 (le) at the end of the sentence places more emphasis on the overall situation. For example, after a prolonged search for someone, the speaker would say 他去哪儿了? (tā qù nǎr le?) – “Where has he gone?”.

## (Unit 13) When 了 (le) is used to indicate a Change of State

When using 了(le) to indicate a change of state, it indicates that (1) the state has actually changed, (2) it has changed relative to what a person (speaker or listener) thought it was or (3) that someone has made a new discovery.

(1) 下雨 (xià yǔ) means rain. In this sentence, 下雨了 (xià yǔ le) (It is raining), 了 (le) is used to express a change of state. It wasn't raining before and the speaker saying that it is raining now.

(2) In the sentence below, the listener did not realize that the speaker was going out of town on Monday. 了 (le) is placed at the end of the sentence because this is a change of state that the listener was not aware of. The speaker realizes that the listener didn't realize this new information, so the speaker adds 了(le).

下个星期一	我	就	出差	了。
xià gè xīngqīyī	wǒ	jiù	chūchāi	le.
next Monday	I	(emphasis)	travel on business	<b>change of state</b>

(3) 他很高 (tā hěn gāo) means “he is tall”. However, if a relative had not seen a child

for a long time, the speaker could say 他高了 (tā gāo le). In this case, 了 (le) indicates a discovery has been made.

**(Unit 17)** 着 (zhe) is used to indicate a state or action is continuing.

The door is open.			The teacher is standing.		
<b>subject</b>	<b>predicate verb</b>	着	<b>subject</b>	<b>predicate verb</b>	着
门	开	着	老师	站	着
mén	kāi	zhe	lǎo shī	zhàn	zhe
the door	open	continuing state	teacher	stand	continuing action

Mother is carrying a child.

<b>subject</b>	<b>predicate verb</b>	着	<b>object</b>
妈妈	抱	着	孩子
māmā	bào	zhe	hái zi
Mother	carry	continuing action	child

**(Units 24 and 25) Auxiliary Verbs**

Auxiliary verbs are used before verb-object phrases to show intention, desire or ability. In this case the verb-object phrase becomes the object.

<b>Subject</b>	<b>Verb</b>	<b>Object</b>
Subject	Auxiliary Verb	Verb - Object
我	想	吃饭。
wǒ	xiǎng	chī fàn。
I	would like to	eat a meal

**(Unit 22) Verb “Compliments of Results”**

Verb compliments are adjectives and verbs that are attached to verbs to complete their meanings. There are many kinds of compliments including those that express duration, quantity, degree, direction, possibility or result. A compliment of result completes the meaning of a verb by indicating what results the action produced. For instance, adding 完 (wán) (to finish) after the verb 吃 (chī) (to eat) becomes 吃完 (chī wán) (finish eating).

我	每天	七点	吃 完	饭。
wǒ	měitiān	qīdiǎn	chī wán	fàn。
I	everyday	7 o'clock	eat (finish)	meal.



**Unit 22** covers 7 verbs that are commonly used as “compliments of results”,

懂	见	完	到	在	给	开
understand	see	finish	arrive	to be at	give	start

For example: If someone can read Chinese 看懂 (kàn dǒng) would be used. means “to understand through reading”. 看 (kàn) means to read and 懂 (dǒng) means to understand.

**Unit 22** also covers 5 adjectives are also used as compliments of results.

对	错	清楚	干净	好
duì	cuò	qīngchū	gānjìng	hǎo

For example, if someone made a mistake when speaking, 说错 (shuō cuò) would be used. 说(shuō) means “to speak” and 错 (cuò) means “incorrect”.

### (Unit 23) Directional Verbs

上 (shàng) and 下 (xià) are used as the first character of verb-object phrases that indicate direction. 上 (shàng) is used for actions that involve: ‘going up’, ‘going in’, or ‘getting started’; 下 (xià) is used for actions: ‘going down’, ‘going out’, or ‘finishing’. For instance, 楼 (lóu) means “floor (of a building)”, 上楼 (shàng lóu) refers to the action of going upstairs and 下楼 (xià lóu) means the action of going downstairs.

上	车	shàng	chē	get in a vehicle
下	车	xià	chē	get out of a vehicle
上	汽车	shàng	qì chē	get in a car
上	公共汽车	shàng	gōng gong qì chē	get on a bus
上	班	shàng	bān	start work
下	班	xià	bān	get off work
上	课	shàng	kè	start class
下	课	xià	kè	end class

我	每天	七点	上	公共汽车。
wǒ	měitiān	qīdiǎn	shàng	gōng gòng qì chē。
I	everyday	7 o'clock	get on	public bus

Note: In **Unit 16**, 上 (shàng) and 下 (xià) are the second character used in location words, for instance, 楼上 (lóu shàng) (upstairs) and 楼下 (lóu xià) (downstairs).



### (Unit 30) 去(qù) and 来(lái) - USED AS - Simple Compliments of Direction

A directional compliment indicates the direction of the action in a sentence (relative to the speaker). In sentences 1, 2 and 3 the verbs 去(qù) (go), 来(lái) (come) and 到(dào) (arrive) are used as verbs. There is no compliment of direction in these sentences.

	Subject	Time	Verb-Object	English
1.	他 tā	明天 míng tiān	去 北京。 qù Běijīng。	He will go to Beijing tomorrow.
2.	他 tā	明天 míng tiān	来 北京。 lái Běijīng。	He will come to Beijing tomorrow.
3.	他 tā	明天 míng tiān	到 北京。 dào Běijīng。	He will arrive in Beijing tomorrow.

In sentences 4 and 5, 去 (qù) (go) and 来 (lái) (come) are used as simple compliments of direction and are not the main verbs of the sentences.

	Subject	Time	Verb-Object	Compliment of Direction
4.	他 tā	明天 míng tiān	到 北京。 dào Běijīng	去。 qù。
5.	他 tā	明天 míng tiān	到 北京。 dào Běijīng	来。 lái。

4. He will arrive in Beijing tomorrow. (Speaker is not in Beijing)  
5. He will arrive in Beijing tomorrow. (Speaker is in Beijing)

### (Unit 30) 去(qù) and 来(lái)- USED IN - Compound Compliments of Direction

去(qù) (go) and 来(lái) (come) are used with other verbs, that indicate direction, to form compound compliments of direction which are used to compliment other verbs.

Verbs that express direction:

上	下	进	出	回	过	起
shàng	xià	jìn	chū	huí	guò	qǐ
go up/on	go out/down	enter	exit	return	pass	rise

When 去(qù) and 来(lái) are combined with the above verbs, they form the following compound compliments of directions.

### Compound Compliments of Direction

上来	shàng lái	come up	进来	jìn lái	come in
上去	shàng qù	go up	进去	jìn qù	go in
下来	xià lái	come down	出来	chū lái	come out
下去	xià qù	go down	出去	chū qù	go out
回来	huí lái	come back	起来	qǐ lái	start and continue
回去	huí qù	go back			
过来	guò lái	come across			
过去	guò qù	go across			

They may stand alone as verbs. In the sentence below, 出来 (chū lái) is used alone as a verb with no object.

太阳	从	东边	出来。
tàiyáng	cóng	dōng biān	<b>chū lái</b>
Sun	from	east	<b>comes up.</b>

However, they are most commonly used to compliment other verbs. In the sentence below, 出来 (chū lái) is used to compliment the verb 走 (zǒu) to indicate "come out".

他	从	里边	走	出来	了。
tā	cóng	lǐ biān	zǒu	<b>chū lái</b>	le。
He	from	inside	walking	<b>come out</b>	(completed action)

### (Unit 31) Duration of Actions

This unit covers 10 sentence patterns used to express how long actions take, depending on a variety of circumstances. For instance, if the verb can or cannot indicate a continuous action or if the action is still occurring at the time of speaking which all use different sentence patterns depending on if the verb does or does not have an object. It is important to understand how 了 (le) is used in sentences when lengths of time are stated. Comparing lengths of time are also covered in this unit.

This sentence means "He has been out of bed for 15 minutes".

他	起床	十五分钟	了。
tā	qǐ chuáng	shí wǔ fēn zhōng	
He	get out of bed	15 minutes	grammar particle

This sentence means "It took him 15 minutes to get up".

他	起床	了	十五分钟。
tā	qǐ chuáng		shí wǔ fēn zhōng
He	get out of bed	grammar particle	15 minutes



**(Unit 32) Modifying Verbs to the manner in which actions are done (着)(zhe)**

This unit shows how 着 (zhe) and 地 (de) are used to indicate the manner in which something is done as well as how adjectives are reduplicated to show the manner in which actions are done.

He sits to read. / He is sitting while reading.

subject	verb (to show manner)	着	predicate verb	object
他	坐	着	看	书
tā	zuò	zhe	kàn	shū
He	sit		read	book

**(Unit 33) 把 (bǎ) Sentences**

This unit introduces how 把 (bǎ) is used to create Subject - Object -Verb sentences that stress the change in the disposition of the object. This sentence pattern may not be used unless there is a change in the disposition of the object. Extensive usage examples are given.

Subject doer of the action	把 把	Object receiver of the action	Predicate Verb the action	+ other elements
我	把	礼物	包上	了
wǒ	bǎ	lǐ wù	bāo shàng	le
I	bǎ	gift / gifts	wrap	completed action

**(Unit 34) 被 (bèi) Sentences**

This unit introduces how 被 (bèi) is used to create passive sentences that use the Subject - Object -Verb sentence pattern. Extensive usage examples are given.

My bicycle was stolen by a thief.

Subject receiver of the action	被 被	Object (of 被) doer of the action	Predicate Verb the action	+ other elements
我的自行车	被	小偷	偷	了
wǒ de zìxíngchē	bèi	xiǎo tōu	tōu	le
My bicycle		thief	steal	completed action



## Unit 1

### Greetings, Names, Titles

This unit teaches common ways of saying hello, asking simple questions and how titles are used.

#### New Words

1.	不	bù	no
2.	贵	guì	expensive, honorable, to be named (family name)
3.	好	hǎo	good
4.	花	huā	flower
5.	叫	jiào	to be called
6.	老	lǎo	old (people and animals - not objects)
7.	老师	lǎo shī	teacher
8.	李	Lǐ	plum, a common surname
9.	吗	ma	modal particle used at the end of a sentence to change a statement into a question
10.	明	Míng	bright, a given name
11.	名字	míng zi	name
12.	你	nǐ	you
13.	您	nín	you (formal, indicating respect)
14.	女士	nǚ shì	Madam, lady, respectful way to address a woman that is older than yourself
15.	请	qǐng	please
16.	什么	shén me	what
17.	是	shì	is, are, am
18.	王	Wáng	king, a common surname
19.	伟	Wěi	great, a common given name
20.	问	wèn	ask
21.	我	wǒ	I, me
22.	先生	xiān sheng	mister, gentleman
23.	小	xiǎo	little, small
24.	小姐	xiǎo jiě	young lady, Miss (title)
25.	姓	xìng	surname
26.	再见	zài jiàn	good bye
27.	张	Zhāng	a common surname



### Addressing friends, family, and coworkers

Names are written and spoken using surnames first. In China, when women marry they do not change their surnames. Children have the same surnames as their fathers, a few have the same surnames as their mothers. Family names are usually one character, but may be two characters. Given names are usually one or two characters. Friends will address each other by their full names. At work, colleagues address each other using surnames preceded by titles or sometimes full names are used. Sometimes young adults may be addressed by 小 (xiǎo) preceding their surnames and old people by 老 (lǎo) preceding their surnames. Superiors are addressed by their surnames followed by their titles. For instance, "Hello, Wang Teacher" is a common greeting used by students when addressing their teachers.

王先生	Wáng xiān sheng	Mr. Wang
老王	lǎo Wáng	Old Wang
李小姐	Lǐ xiǎo jiě	Miss Li
小王	xiǎo Wáng	Little Wang
王老师	Wáng lǎo shī	Teacher Wang
张明明	Zhāng Míng Míng	Zhang Ming Ming (full name)
王女士	Wáng nǚ shì	Madam Wang (respectful way to address a woman older than yourself)

### Hello!

Whether meeting an old acquaintance or a friend, a common greeting in China is 你好 (nǐ hǎo). This literally means "you good" but conveys the meaning of "hello". 再见 (zài jiàn), which literally means "again see", is used to say good bye.

### Statements

您好!	nín hǎo!	Hello! (respectful)
你好!	nǐ hǎo!	Hello! (familiar)
再见!	zài jiàn!	Goodbye!

Names may be stated in three ways:

我是。 。 。	wǒ shì (full name)	I am (full name)
我叫。 。 。	wǒ jiào (full name)	I am called (full name)
我姓。 。 。	wǒ xìng (surname)	My surname name is (surname)

### Negative Statements

To make a negative statement, place 不 (bú) before 是 (shì). In the examples below, note that 不 (bù) is spoken in the second tone. This character changes tones when it precedes a fourth tone character. (refer to Appendix A)

我不是。 。 。	wǒ bú shì (full name)	I am not (full name).
我不叫。 。 。	wǒ bú jiào (full name)	I am not called (full name)
我不姓。 。 。	wǒ bú xìng (surname)	My surname name is not (surname)

### Questions

您 (nín) is used to show respect for a person's position, age, or simply an extra show of politeness. The following questions are polite, show respect, and could be used in professional environments.

1. 请问，您贵姓？      May I ask, your honorable surname?
2. 我姓李。您贵姓？      My surname is Lǐ. What is your honorable family name?

1. qǐng wèn, nín guì xìng ?
2. wǒ xìng. Lǐ. nín guì xìng ?

To ask someone their name in the following way is very informal, used in casual social situations, it should not be used in professional environments.

1. 你叫什么名字？      What is your name?

1. nǐ jiào shénme míngzi ?

### 吗 questions

Adding 吗 (ma) to the end of a statement creates a yes-no question.

1. 你好吗？      How are you?
2. 请问,您是王先生吗？      May I ask, are you Mr. Wáng?
3. 您是王先生吗？      Are you Mr. Wang?
4. 您是李小姐吗？      Are you Miss Lǐ?
5. 您是王老师吗？      Are you Teacher Wang?

1. nǐ hǎo ma?
2. qǐng wèn, nín shì Wáng xiānsheng ma?
3. nín shì Wáng xiānsheng ma?
4. nín shì Lǐ xiǎo jiě ma?
5. nín shì Wáng lǎoshī ma?



## Unit 2

### 'To Be' Sentences

This unit introduces 'to be' sentences that deal with nouns as well as several kinds of questions. In these sentences, 是 (shì) is used to express 'to be'.

#### New Words

1.	都	dōu	all, both
2.	对	duì	correct
3.	还是	hái shì	or (in a question - not used in a statement)
4.	和	hé	and
5.	或者	huò zhě	or (in a statement - not used in a question)
6.	美国	měi guó	the USA
7.	美国人	měi guó rén	American citizen
8.	们	men	a suffix added to pronouns indicating plural
9.	哪	nǎ	which
10.	呢	ne	modal particle used at the end of a sentence to create a question in a soft tone
11.	你们	nǐ men	you (plural)
12.	人	rén	person
13.	谁	shuí (shéi)	who (commonly pronounced shéi)
14.	他	tā	he
15.	她	tā	she
16.	他们	tā men	they (for a group of both females and males)
17.	她们	tā men	they (females)
18.	我们	wǒ men	we
19.	学生	xué sheng	student
20.	也	yě	also
21.	英国	yīng guó	England
22.	英国人	yīng guó rén	British citizen
23.	咱们	zán men	we
24.	中国	zhōng guó	China
25.	中国人	zhōng guó rén	Chinese citizen

In this text, we have used the more common pronunciation (shéi) for the character 谁 instead of (shuí).



### 'To Be' - a noun

Pronouns, 我 (wǒ), 他 (tā), 你 (nǐ) and 您 (nín), can be made plural by adding 们 (men) immediately after them. In the examples below, 我 (wǒ) may be replaced by 你 (nǐ), 她 (tā), 他 (tā), or by the name of a person; 我们 (wǒ men) may be replaced by 咱们(zán men), 你们 (nǐ men), 她们 (tā men) or 他们 (tā men). 咱们(zán men) is used to indicate that "we" only refers the people involved in the immediate conversation.

### And / Also / All (Statements)

There is no special word for "both" in Chinese. 都 (dōu) is used to express "both" as well as "all". In the examples below, 都 (dōu) is optional.

- |                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| 1. 我是学生。        | I am a student.                         |
| 2. 我是张明明。       | I am Zhāng Míng Míng.                   |
| 3. 我也是学生。       | I am also a student.                    |
| 4. 我们是学生。       | We are students.                        |
| 5. 我们也是学生。      | We are also students.                   |
| 6. 我们都是学生。      | We are (all / both) students.           |
| 7. 他和我都是学生。     | He and I are students.                  |
| 8. 他和我都是学生。     | He and I are both students.             |
| 9. 李小姐和王先生都是老师。 | Miss Li and Mr. Wang are teachers.      |
| 10. 李小姐和王先生是老师。 | Miss Li and Mr. Wang are both teachers. |
| 11. 李小姐和我们都是老师。 | Miss Li and us are all teachers.        |
- 
- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. wǒ shì xuésheng.                             |  |
| 2. wǒ shì Zhāng Míngmíng.                       |  |
| 3. wǒ yě shì xuésheng.                          |  |
| 4. wǒmen shì xuésheng.                          |  |
| 5. wǒmen yě shì xuésheng.                       |  |
| 6. wǒmen dōu shì xuésheng.                      |  |
| 7. tā hé wǒ shì xuésheng.                       |  |
| 8. tā hé wǒ dōu shì xuésheng.                   |  |
| 9. Lǐ xiǎojiě hé Wáng xiānsheng dōu shì lǎoshī. |  |
| 10. Lǐ xiǎojiě hé Wáng xiānsheng shì lǎoshī.    |  |
| 11. Lǐ xiǎojiě hé wǒmen dōu shì lǎoshī.         |  |

### OR - Statements

To make a statements that use "or", 或者 (huò zhě) is used, 还是 (hái shì) is only used for forming questions which are discussed below.



1. 她或者是学生或者是老师。 She is a teacher or a student.
2. 他或者是英国人或者是美国人。 He is British or American.

1. tā huòzhě shì xuésheng huòzhě shì lǎoshī.
2. tā huòzhě shì yīngguó rén huòzhě shì měiguó rén.

### Negative Statements

To make a negative statement, place 不 (bú) before 是 (shì). In the examples below, 我 (wǒ) may be replaced by 你 (nǐ), 她 (tā), 他 (tā), or by the name of a person; 我们 (wǒmen) may be replaced by 咱们(zán men), 你们 (nǐmen), 她们 (tāmen) or 他们 (tāmen).

1. 我不是学生。 I am not a student.
2. 我也不是学生。 I am not a student either.
3. 我们不是学生。 We are not students.
4. 我们也不是学生。 We are not students either.
5. 我们都不是学生。 (None / neither) of us are students.

1. wǒ bú shì xuésheng.
2. wǒ yě bú shì xuésheng.
3. wǒmen bú shì xuésheng.
4. wǒmen yě bú shì xuésheng.
5. wǒmen dōu bú shì xuésheng.

### Questions

#### 吗 (ma) questions

吗 (ma) is placed at the end of a statement to create a yes-no question.

1. 你是学生吗? Are you a student?
2. 他是学生吗? Is he a student?
3. 她是老师吗? Is she a teacher?
4. 他也是学生吗? Is he a student also?
5. 他们都是学生吗? Are they all students?

1. nǐ shì xuésheng ma?
2. tā shì xuésheng ma?
3. tā shì lǎoshī ma?
4. tā yě shì xuéshēng ma?
5. tāmen dōu shì xuéshēng ma?



### 呢 (ne) questions

呢 (ne) is placed at the end of a sentence to ask a yes-no question about the beginning of the sentence.

1. 我是学生，你呢？ I am a student, what about you?
2. 他是学生，李伟呢？ He is a student, is Lǐ Wěi?

1. wǒ shì xuésheng, nǐ ne ?
2. tā shì xuésheng, Lǐ Wěi ne ?

### 'question-word' questions

Questions, that use question words, use the same word order as statements; except the question word is used in place of expected answer. In the examples below, question words 谁 (shéi / shuí) and 哪 (nǎ) are used to create questions in this way.

1. 他是谁？ Who is he?
2. 你是哪国人？ What is your nationality?
3. 谁是王先生？ Who is Mr. Wang?

1. tā shì shéi?
2. nǐ shì nǎ guó rén?
3. shéi shì Wáng xiānshēng?

### 'affirmative - negative' questions

Statements using 是 (shì) may be changed into affirmative-negative pattern questions by replacing 是 (shì) with 是不是 (shì bu shì). In this sentence pattern, 吗 (ma) may not be used. (Notice that 不 (bu) is spoken using the neutral tone.)

你是不是学生？ nǐ shì bu shì xuésheng? Are you a student?

### 'confirmation' questions

If speakers make statements they think are true, and want to confirm that they are true; 是不是 (shì bu shì) or 对不对 (duì bu duì) are added to the end of statements. Both phrases have the same meaning. This is true for any positive or negative statements. (Notice that 不 (bu) is spoken using the neutral tone.)

1. 你是学生，是不是？ You are a student, aren't you?
2. 你不是老师，对不对？ You are not a teacher, are you?
3. 他是学生，是不是？ He is not a student, is he?



1. nǐ shì xuésheng, shì bu shì ?
2. nǐ bú shì lǎoshī, duì bu duì ?
3. tā shì xuésheng, shì bu shì ?

### 'or' questions

To make questions that use "or", 还是 (hái shì) is used, 或者 (huò zhě) is not used in questions, it is only used in statements which are discussed above.

1. 他是学生还是老师 ?                      Is he a teacher or a student?
2. 他是英国人还是美国人 ?                Is he British or American?

1. tā shì xuésheng hái shì lǎoshī ?
2. tā shì yīngguó rén hái shì měiguó rén ?



## Unit 3

### Showing Possession 的 (de)

This unit introduces how to express possessive conditions and family relationships. Notice the syllables that have no tone marks, they are spoken in the neutral tone.

#### New Words

1.	爸爸	bà ba	father
2.	的	de	particle to indicate possession
3.	弟弟	dì di	younger brother
4.	电脑	diàn nǎo	computer
5.	哥哥	gē ge	older brother
6.	教室	jiāo shì	classroom
7.	姐姐	jiě jie	older sister
8.	姐妹	jiě mèi	sister
9.	妈妈	mā ma	mother
10.	妹妹	mèi mei	younger sister
11.	那	nà	that
12.	男朋友	nán péng you	boyfriend
13.	女朋友	nǚ péng you	girlfriend
14.	朋友	péng you	friend
15.	书	shū	book
16.	同学	tóng xué	classmate
17.	校长	xiào zhǎng	headmaster, school principle
18.	兄弟	xiōng dì	brother
19.	学校	xué xiào	school
20.	这	zhè	this

#### Showing Possession

The particle 的 (de) is placed after a person or thing that posses something to express a possessive condition.

我的书	wǒ de shū	my book
我们的学校	wǒmen de xuéxiào	our school
学校的电脑	xuéxiào de diànnǎo	school's computer
这是我的书。	zhè shì wǒ de shū.	This is my book.
这是我们的学校。	zhè shì wǒmen de xuéxiào.	This is our school.

When referring to close family relationships, 的 (de) is often omitted

1. 这是我姐姐。 This is my (older) sister.
2. 这是我姐姐的书。 This is my sister's book.

1. zhè shì wǒ jiějie.
2. zhè shì wǒ jiějie de shū.

If there are several possessive relationships in one sentence and it is obvious from the context what the possessive relationships are, then 的 (de) is often omitted. In sentence number 1 below, 的 (de) is not used between 我们 (wǒ men) and 学校 (xué xiào). In sentence 2 below, 的 (de) is not used between 我 (wǒ) and 朋友 (péng you).

1. 这是我们学校的电脑。 This is our school's computer.
2. 这是我朋友的电脑。 This is my friends's computer.

1. zhè shì wǒmen xuéxiào de diànnǎo.
2. zhè shì wǒ péngyou de diànnǎo.

When Chinese speakers are trying to clarify which character they are speaking; for instance when reading a list of names over the telephone, they will use 的 (de) in the following way.

朋友的朋 péngyou de péng

In English this would be the same as - “朋(péng) as in 朋友 (péng you)”

### Negative Statements

To say that the state of possession does not exist, place 不 (bù) before 是(shì).

王先生不是我们学校的校长。 Mr. Wang is not our school's headmaster.

Wáng xiānsheng bú shì wǒmen xuéxiào de xiàozhǎng.

### Questions

吗 questions

1. 这是你姐姐的书吗? Is this your big sister's book.
2. 这是你们的教室吗? Is this your (plural) classroom?

1. zhè shì nǐ jiějie de shū ma?
2. zhè shì nǐmen de jiāoshì ma?



**'question word' questions**

那是谁的书?      nà shì shéi de shū?      Whose book is that?

**'affirmative - negative' questions**

这是不是你的书?      zhè shì bu shì nǐ de shū?      Is this your book?

**'confirmation' questions**

1. 这是你的书,是不是?      This is your book, isn't it?

2. 这是你的书,对不对?      This is your book, isn't it?

1. zhè shì nǐ de shū, shì bu shì?

2. zhè shì nǐ de shū, duì bu duì?

**'or' questions**

这是你的书还是他的书?      Is this your book or his book?

zhè shì nǐ de shū háishi tā de shū?

## Unit 4

### Numbers and Measure Words

This unit introduces counting numbers up to 100 and how measure words are used. (For very large and very small numbers refer to Appendix E. For using measure words to express “one half”, “one and a half”, and indeterminate quantities refer to Appendix B)

#### New Words

1.	报纸	bào zhǐ	newspaper
2.	本	běn	measure word for books
3.	词典	cí diǎn	dictionary
4.	个	gè	general purpose measure word
5.	俩	liǎ	equivalent to 两个(liǎng gè)
6.	辆	liàng	measure word for vehicles and bicycles
7.	铅笔	qiān bǐ	pencil
8.	圆珠笔	yuán zhū bǐ	ballpoint pen
9.	张	zhāng	measure word for newspapers and pieces of paper
10.	支	zhī	measure word for pens and pencils
11.	自行车	zì xíng chē	bicycle

#### Numbers

0	零	líng	6	六	liù	13	十三	shí sān
1	一	yī	7	七	qī	14	十四	shí sì
2	二	èr	8	八	bā	15	十五	shí wǔ
2	两	liǎng	9	九	jiǔ	16	十六	shí liù
3	三	sān	10	十	shí	17	十七	shí qī
4	四	sì	11	十一	shí yī	18	十八	shí bā
5	五	wǔ	12	十二	shí èr	19	十九	shí jiǔ

For numbers from 21 to 99, state the ten's place then add the one's place directly after.

20	二十		21	二十一	.....	29	二十九
	èr shí			èr shí yī			èr shí jiǔ

30	三十	sān shí	70	七十	qī shí
40	四十	sì shí	80	八十	bā shí
50	五十	wǔ shí	90	九十	jiǔ shí
60	六十	liù shí	100	一百	yī bǎi



### The number one

When speaking telephone numbers and bus numbers that are over three digits; the number 'one' (一) (yī) is pronounced "yāo". This avoids confusion with the number seven (七) (qī).

### The number two

Notice in the numbers above, there are two ways to say the number two. When specifying a quantity of two, 两 (liǎng) is used. When "two" appears in the one's or ten's place, 二 (èr) is used. When two appears in the hundreds place, either 二 (èr) or 两 (liǎng) may be used.

2	二	èr
12	十二	shí èr
20	二十	èr shí
200	二百 / 两百	èr bǎi / liǎng bǎi

### Measure Words

There are no articles (a, an, the) in Chinese. When specifying a number of nouns, measure words (量词, liàng cí), sometimes called 'classifiers', are used. In English, this is comparable to "piece" in a "piece of cake" or "sheet" in a "sheet of paper". There are over 140 measure words and they are required for almost all nouns in Mandarin. The measure word 个 (gè) can be used to refer to anything. It isn't considered good Chinese but it will get your meaning across. To indicate a quantity of two, 两 (liǎng) is used, 二 (èr) is not used with measure words. Therefore, one (of something) is 一个 (yí gè), two is 两个 (liǎng gè) and three is 三个 (sān gè).

两支铅笔	liǎng zhī qiānbǐ	two pencils
三本书	sān běn shū	three books
四辆自行车	sì liàng zìxíngchē	four bicycles
五个学生	wǔ gè xuésheng	five students
两张报纸	liǎng zhāng bàozhǐ	two newspapers
十二个月	shí èr gè yuè	12 months
二十四个小时	èr shí sì gè xiǎoshí	24 hours

When a noun being referred to is obvious, sometimes measure words are used alone. For instance, when answering the question "How many books do you have?" A person might answer “两本 (liǎng běn)”. A customer might point to a newspaper and tell a store clerk, “一张 (yì zhāng)”. No measure word is used if a possessive pronoun is used immediately before a noun as in the sentence, "This is my book." 这是我的书. (zhè shì wǒde shū). 俩 (liǎ) has the same meaning as 两个 (liǎng gè) as in this sentence, “Those two are good friends.”, 他们俩是好朋友. (tāmen liǎ shì hǎo péngyou.)”



## Unit 5

### Adjectives

This unit deals with how to use adjectives to modify nouns. It describes one sentence pattern that does not use a verb and also introduces multi-syllabic words in affirmative-negative questions.

#### New Words

1.	矮	ǎi	short
2.	大	dà	big
3.	大衣	dà yī	coat
4.	德国	dé guó	Germany
5.	方	fāng	square
6.	非常	fēi cháng	very, extremely
7.	高	gāo	tall
8.	高兴	gāo xìng	happy, pleased
9.	很	hěn	very
10.	红	hóng	red
11.	件	jiàn	measure word for articles of clothing
12.	旧	jiù	old (things – not people or animals)
13.	懒	lǎn	lazy
14.	楼	lóu	building
15.	忙	máng	busy
16.	那些	nà xiē	those
17.	难看	nán kàn	ugly
18.	漂亮	piào liang	pretty
19.	勤快	qín kuài	diligent, hardworking
20.	日本	rì běn	Japan
21.	水果	shuǐ guǒ	fruit
22.	太	tài	too
23.	新	xīn	new
24.	新鲜	xīn xiān	fresh
25.	英文	yīng wén	English language
26.	圆	yuán	round
27.	这些	zhè xiē	these
28.	桌子	zhuō zi	table
29.	座	zuò	measure word for buildings

**Note:** Some two character words appear to be adjective-noun combinations, but they



are not; for instance: 大人 (dà rén) (adult) and 大衣 (dà yī) (coat) are two-character nouns.

### 'To Be' – an Adjective

If the entire predicate is an adjective, then no verb is needed in the sentence and the predicate adjective must be modified to show degree. In sentences of this kind the adverb 很 (hěn) is used for grammatical correctness but does not carry any meaning. In these kinds of sentences, to clearly modify the adjective to express “very”, other adverbs such as 太 (tài) and 非常 (fēi cháng) are used (sentences 2 and 3).

我 (wǒ) may be replaced by 你 (nǐ), 她 (tā), 他 (tā), or by the name of a person; 我们 (wǒ men) may be replaced by 咱们(zán men), 你们 (nǐ men), 她们 (tā men) or 他们 (tā men).

- |              |                        |
|--------------|------------------------|
| 1. 我很忙。      | I am busy.             |
| 2. 我们非常忙。    | We are very busy.      |
| 3. 我非常忙。     | I am very busy.        |
| 4. 我也很忙。     | I am also busy.        |
| 5. 我们都很忙。    | We all are busy.       |
| 6. 我的桌子很圆。   | My table is round.     |
| 7. 我们的桌子很旧。  | Our table is old.      |
| 8. 我的大衣很难看。  | My coat is ugly.       |
| 9. 你的大衣很漂亮。  | Your coat is pretty.   |
| 10. 这辆自行车很大。 | This bicycle is big.   |
| 11. 这辆自行车很小。 | This bicycle is small. |

1. wǒ hěn máng.
2. wǒ fēicháng máng.
3. wǒ fēicháng máng.
4. wǒ yě hěn máng.
5. wǒmen dōu hěn máng.
6. wǒde zhuōzi hěn yuán.
7. wǒmen de zhuōzi hěn jiù.
8. wǒde dàyī hěn nánkàn.
9. nǐde dàyī hěn piàoliang.
10. zhè liàng zìxíngchē hěn dà.
11. zhè liàng zìxíngchē hěn xiǎo.



If the entire predicate is an adjective, the adjective may remain unmodified if a direct comparison is being made.

- |            |         |
|------------|---------|
| 1. 他勤快。    | 他懒。     |
| 2. 这本书大。   | 那本书小。   |
| 3. 我的桌子旧。  | 你的桌子新。  |
| 4. 我的桌子圆。  | 你的桌子方。  |
| 5. 我的大衣难看。 | 你的大衣漂亮。 |

- |                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. He is diligent.    | He is lazy.           |
| 2. This book is big.  | That book is small.   |
| 3. My table is old.   | Your table is new.    |
| 4. My table is round. | Your table is square. |
| 5. My coat is ugly.   | Your coat is pretty.  |

- |                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. tā qínkuài.       | tā lǎn.              |
| 2. zhè běn shū dà.   | nà běn shū xiǎo.     |
| 3. wǒde zhuōzi jiù.  | nǐde zhuōzi xīn.     |
| 4. wǒde zhuōzi yuán. | nǐde zhuōzi fāng.    |
| 5. wǒde dàyī nánkàn. | nǐde dàyī piāoliàng. |

### Negative Statements

If the entire predicate is an adjective, then 不 (bù) goes before the adjective. The adjective does not need to be modified to show degree, but it can be. In negative statements, unlike positive statements, 很 (hěn) does carry meaning.

- |             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| 1. 我不忙。     | I am not busy.            |
| 2. 我也不忙。    | I am not busy either.     |
| 3. 我们不太忙。   | We are not too busy.      |
| 4. 我们都不忙。   | None of us are busy.      |
| 5. 中国不小。    | China is not small.       |
| 6. 日本不大。    | Japan is not big.         |
| 7. 我的桌子不圆。  | My table is not round.    |
| 8. 我的桌子不太旧。 | My table is not very old. |
| 9. 我的大衣不难看。 | My coat is not ugly.      |

1. wǒ bù máng.
2. wǒ yě bù máng.
3. wǒmen bú tài máng.



4. wǒmen dōu bù máng.
5. zhōngguó bù xiǎo.
6. rìběn bú dà.
7. wǒde zhuōzi bù yuán.
8. wǒde zhuōzi bù tài jiù.
9. wǒde dàyī bù nánkàn.

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

When asking 吗 (ma) questions, if the entire predicate is an adjective, 很 (hěn) does carry meaning but is optional.

- |           |                         |
|-----------|-------------------------|
| 1. 你忙吗?   | Are you busy?           |
| 2. 你不忙吗?  | You aren't busy?        |
| 3. 你很忙吗?  | Are you very busy?      |
| 4. 你也很忙吗? | Are you also very busy? |

1. nǐ máng ma?
2. nǐ bù máng ma?
3. nǐ hěn máng ma?
4. nǐ yě hěn máng ma?

#### 呢 questions

- |              |                                |
|--------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. 我不忙，你呢?   | I am not busy, what about you? |
| 2. 我们很忙，你们呢? | We are busy, and you (plural)? |

1. wǒ bù máng, nǐ ne?
2. wǒmen hěn máng, nǐmen ne?

#### 'affirmative – negative' questions

##### Single Character Adjectives

Questions using adjectives may also be created using the affirmative-negative pattern. In this case, adverb modifiers such as 很 (hěn) may not be used. Likewise, 吗 (ma) may not be used.

- |       |                  |               |
|-------|------------------|---------------|
| 你忙不忙? | nǐ máng bu máng? | Are you busy? |
| 他高不高? | tā gāo bu gāo?   | Is he tall?   |

##### Two Character Adjectives

If the entire predicate is a two character adjective, then there are two ways to create 'affirmative-negative' questions. In the first sentence below, both characters of the adjective are repeated. In the second sentence, only the first character is repeated.

你高兴不高兴?      nǐ gāoxìng bu gāoxìng?      Are you happy?  
 你高不高兴?      nǐ gāo bu gāoxìng?      Are you happy?

**confirmation questions**

1. 你忙，是不是?      You are busy, aren't you?
  2. 你不忙，对不对?      You aren't busy, are you?
- 
1. nǐ máng, shì bu shì ?
  2. nǐ bù máng, duì bu duì ?

**'or' questions**

1. 他高还是矮?      Is he tall or short?
  2. 你的电脑新还是旧?      Is your computer old or new?
- 
1. tā gāo hái shì ǎi?
  2. nǐde diànnǎo xīn hái shì jiù?

**General Rules for Modifying Nouns**

**Absolute Condition**

This sentence pattern is used to state an absolute condition, such as “true”, “false” or “square”. A monosyllabic or multi-syllabic adjective may be used. The adjective may not be modified. This sentence means, “My table is round.”

<b>subject</b>	<b>是(shì)</b>	<b>adjective</b>	<b>的(de)</b>
我的 桌子	是	圆	的。
wǒde zhuōzi	shì	yuán	de.

**Negative Statements**

When making a negative statement, using the 是(shì)。。。的(de) sentence pattern, place 不 (bù) before 是(shì).

1. 我的桌子不是圆的。      My table is not round.
  2. 我的桌子不是旧的。      My table is not old.
  3. 她的大衣不是新的。      Her coat is not pretty.
- 
1. wǒde zhuōzi bú shì yuán de.
  2. wǒde zhuōzi bú shì jiù de.
  3. tāde dàyī bú shì xīn de.



## Questions

### 吗 (ma) questions

你的桌子是圆的吗? Is your table round?

nǐde zhuōzi shì yuán de ma?

### 呢 (ne) questions

我的桌子是旧的, 你的呢? My table is old, and yours?

wǒde zhuōzi shì jiù de, nǐde ne?

### 'affirmative – negative' questions

你的桌子是不是圆的? Is your table round?

nǐde zhuōzi shì bu shì yuán de?

### confirmation questions

是不是(shì bu shì) and 对不对(duì bu duì) are not be used with the 是(shì)。。。的(de) sentence pattern.

### 'or' questions

你的电脑是新的还是旧的? Is your computer old or new?

nǐde diànnǎo shì xīn de háishi jiù de?

## Using 的 with Adjectives

### Absolute Condition

The following examples show how to use 的(de), when an absolute condition is being stated. In these sentences the adjective is not modified to show degree, for example, when referring to a specific thing, such as “the tall building” or “the pretty coat”. In these kinds of sentences, measure words precedes the adjectives.

IF the adjective is a single character 的(de) is not used.

高楼 gāo lóu tall building

IF the adjective consists of more than one character 的(de) is usually used

漂亮的大衣 piàoliang de dàyī pretty coat

1. 这座高楼是我们公司的。 This tall building is our company's.

2. 那件漂亮的大衣是她的。 That pretty coat is hers.

1. zhè zuò gāo lóu shì wǒmen gōngsī de.

2. nà jiàn piàoliang de dàyī shì tāde.

### Adjectives that are Modified by Degree

When 很 (hěn), 太 (tài), 非常 (fēi cháng) or other adverbs that express degree are used, 的(de) is always needed. In this case, 很 (hěn) carries meaning.

IF the adjective consists of one or two-characters 的(de) is used.

非常高的楼 fēicháng gāo de lóu very tall building

很漂亮的大衣 hěn piàoliang de dàyī very pretty coat

1. 这座非常高的楼是我们公司的。

2. 那件漂亮的大衣是她的。

1. This very tall building is our company's.

2. That pretty coat is hers.

1. zhè zuò fēicháng gāo de lóu shì wǒmen gōngsī de.

2. nà jiàn piàoliang de dàyī shì tāde.

### Using 的 with Adjectives

(的 is optional)

As discussed above 的(de) is usually used with two syllable adjectives, however, there are situations where 的(de) is optional. If the topic of conversation or context of the statement makes it very clear that the adjective modifies the noun after it, 的(de) is not used. For instance, if the topic of conversation were “cars” – “德国车 (déguó chē)” would be used to say “German cars”.

### Measure Words and Adjectives

When measure words are used with nouns that are modified with an adjective, the word order is:

**number – measure word – adjective – noun.**

1. 两支新铅笔

liǎng zhī xīn qiānbǐ

2. 三本英文书

sān běn yīngwén shū

3. 四辆旧自行车

sì liàng jiù zìxíngchē

4. 五个高兴的学生

wǔ ge gāoxìng de xuésheng



1. two new pencils
2. three English books
3. four old bicycles
4. five happy students

### Example Sentences

When referring to “that” or “this” (thing) measure words are needed (sentences 3-6).  
 When referring to “these” or “those” (things) (sentences 7 and 8) measure words are not needed.

- |                 |                                 |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. 你的桌子是旧的。     | Your table is old.              |
| 2. 她的大衣是红的。     | Her coat is red.                |
| 3. 那台旧电脑是我的。    | That old computer is mine.      |
| 4. 那件难看的大衣是我的。  | That ugly coat is mine.         |
| 5. 那台很旧的电脑是我的。  | That very old computer is mine. |
| 6. 那件很漂亮的大衣是她的。 | That very pretty coat is hers.  |
| 7. 那些电脑是我们的。    | Those computers are ours.       |
| 8. 这些电脑是我们的。    | These computers are ours.       |

1. nǐde zhuōzǐ shì jiù de.
2. tāde dàyī shì hóng de.
3. nà tái jiù diànnǎo shì wǒde.
4. nà jiàn nánkàn de dàyī shì wǒde.
5. nà tái hěn jiù de diànnǎo shì wǒde.
6. nà jiàn hěn piāoliang de dàyī shì tāde.
7. nàxiē diànnǎo shì wǒmende.
8. zhèxiē diànnǎo shì wǒmende.



## Unit 6

### Comparisons

This unit introduces the sentence patterns used to compare things that are different, state that two things are the same, express “relatively / comparatively” and state progressive changes.

#### New Words

1.	杯子	bēi zi	cup
2.	比	bǐ	(something) compared to (something)
3.	比较	bǐ jiào	relatively, comparatively
4.	不如	bù rú	not as (comparison standard) as
5.	长	cháng	long, length
6.	城市	chéng shì	city
7.	大小	dà xiǎo	size
8.	得多	de duō	a lot
9.	低	dī	low
10.	地图	dì tú	map
11.	冬天	dōng tiān	winter
12.	度	dù	degree (temperature)
13.	多了	duō le	a lot
14.	房间	fáng jiān	room
15.	房子	fáng zi	house,apartment,building,room
16.	哈尔滨	Hā ěr bīn	a city in northeastern China
17.	孩子	hái zi	child
18.	杭州	Háng zhōu	a city in southeastern China
19.	价钱	jià qián	price
20.	今天	jīn tiān	today
21.	经验	jīng yàn	to be experienced
22.	棵	kē	measure word for trees
23.	宽	kuān	wide
24.	冷	lěng	cold
25.	那么	nà me	that much
26.	纽约	niǔ yuē	New York
27.	便宜	pián yi	inexpensive
28.	苹果	píng guǒ	apple
29.	热	rè	hot
30.	人口	rén kǒu	population



31.	声音	shēng yīn	voice, sound
32.	树	shù	tree
33.	天气	tiān qì	weather
34.	条	tiáo	measure word for roads
35.	夏天	xià tiān	summer
36.	香蕉	xiāng jiāo	banana
37.	幸福	xìng fú.	happiness
38.	一点儿	yì diǎnr	a little bit
29.	一些	yì xiē	some
40.	一样	yí yàng	the same
41.	音乐	yīn yuè	music
42.	越来越	yuè lái yuè	used to state a progression
43.	这么	zhè me	this much
44.	专业	zhuān yè	university major
45.	昨天	zuó tiān	yesterday

### Sentence Patterns for Comparisons

#### Comparing two things

<b>A is greater than B</b>	A 比 B	comparison standard	
<b>A is greater than B</b>	A 比 B	comparison standard	degree
<b>A is not greater than B</b>	A 不比 B	comparison standard	
<b>A is not greater than B</b>	A 不如 B	comparison standard	
<b>A is as _____ as B</b>	A 有 B	comparison standard	
<b>A is not as _____ as B</b>	A 没有 B	comparison standard	

#### Stating two things are the same

<b>A is the same as B</b>			
A 跟 / 和 B	一样		
A 跟 / 和 B	一样	comparison standard	

#### Stating two things are not the same

<b>A is the not same as B</b>			
A 跟 / 和 B	不一样		
A 跟 / 和 B	不一样	comparison standard	

#### Stating a relative condition

##### **A is relatively (standard of comparison)**

A	比较	standard
---	----	----------

#### Stating a progressive condition

##### **A is progressing in (standard of comparison)**

A	越来越	standard
---	-----	----------



### Comparing Two Things (比)

When using 比 (bǐ) to compare two things (A and B), the first thing mentioned, is the greater of the two. The standard of comparison is stated last. Adverbs such as 很 (hěn) and 非常 (fēi cháng) cannot be used to modify the comparison standard. The degree of difference may be stated but is optional. When stating the degree of difference, an exact number or an approximation may be used. When stating an approximation, 一点儿 (yì diǎnr) and 一些 (yì xiē) are used for small differences while 得多 (de duō) and 多了 (duō le) are used for relatively large differences.

	A	比	B	comparison standard	degree
1.	今天	比	昨天	冷	
2.	今天	比	昨天	冷	五度。
3.	今天	比	昨天	冷	得多。
4.	今天	比	昨天	冷	一点儿。

- |    |   |                                   |
|----|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. | Today is colder than yesterday.           | jīntiān bǐ zuótiān lěng.          |
| 2. | Today is 5 degrees colder than yesterday. | jīntiān bǐ zuótiān lěng wǔ dù.    |
| 3. | Today is much colder than yesterday.      | jīntiān bǐ zuótiān lěng de duō.   |
| 4. | Today is a little colder than yesterday.  | jīntiān bǐ zuótiān lěng yì diǎnr. |

- |    |             |                                   |
|----|-------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. | 王先生比我高。     | Mr. Wang is taller than me.       |
| 2. | 他的声音比我的声音低。 | His voice is lower than mine.     |
| 3. | 苹果比香蕉便宜。    | Apples are cheaper than bananas.  |
| 4. | 他比我有经验。     | He is more experienced than I am. |

1. Wáng xiānsheng bǐ wǒ gāo.
2. tāde shēngyīn bǐ wǒde shēngyīn dī.
3. píngguǒ bǐ xiāngjiāo piányi.
4. tā bǐ wǒ yǒu jīngyàn.

To compare two things (A and B) and the first thing mentioned (A), is the lesser of the two, 不比 (bù bǐ) is used; however, this pattern is only used to express disagreement or refutation. The standard of comparison is stated last. Adverbs such as 很 (hěn) and 非常 (fēi cháng) cannot be used to modify the comparison standard.

A	不比	B	comparison standard
王先生	不比	我	高。

Mr. Wang is not taller than me.

Wáng xiānsheng bù bǐ wǒ gāo.

1. 他不比我有经验。
2. 他的汉语不比你的汉语好。
3. 北京的夏天不比上海的夏天热。
4. 这件大衣不比那件新。

1. He is not more experienced than I am.
2. His Chinese is not better than yours.
3. Winter in Beijing is not warmer than Shanghai.
4. This coat is not newer than that one.

1. tā bùbǐ wǒ yǒu jīngyàn.
2. tāde hànyǔ bùbǐ nǐde hànyǔ hǎo.
3. Běijīng de xiàtiān bùbǐ Shànghǎi de xiàtiān rè.
4. zhè jiàn dàyī bùbǐ nà jiàn xīn.

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

Adding 吗 (ma) to the end of a 比 (bǐ) statement creates a question.

今天比昨天冷吗?

Is today colder than yesterday?

jīntiān bǐ zuó tiān lěng ma?

#### 'affirmative – negative' questions

Statements using 比 (bǐ) may be changed into affirmative-negative questions by replacing 比 (bǐ) with 比不比 (bǐ bu bǐ). In this sentence pattern, 吗 (ma) cannot be used.

北京的冬天比不比纽约的冬天冷?

Is winter in Beijing colder than in New York?

Běijīng de dōngtiān bǐbubǐ niǚyuē de dōngtiān lěng?

### Comparing Two Things (不如)

To compare two things (A and B) and the first thing mentioned (A), is the lesser of the two, 不如 (bù rú) is normally used. The standard of comparison is stated last. Adverbs such as 很 (hěn) and 非常 (fēi cháng) cannot be used to modify the comparison standard.

A	不如	B	comparison standard
我	不如	他	高。

I am not as tall as him.      wǒ bùrú tā gāo.

1. 这个杯子不如那个杯子大。      This cup isn't as big as that one.
2. 这条路不如那条路宽。      This street is not as wide as that street.

1. zhè ge bēizi bùrú nà ge bēizi dà.
2. zhè tiáo lù bùrú nà tiáo lù kuān.

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

Adding 吗 (ma) to the end of a 不如 (bù rú) statement creates a question.

这条路不如那条路宽吗?      This street is not as wide as that street (is it)?

zhè tiáo lù bùrú nà tiáo lù kuān ma?

### Comparing Two Things

#### A is equal to or greater than B (有)

#### A is less than B (没有)

When comparing two things (A and B), and the first thing mentioned (A), is equal to or greater than (B); 有 (yǒu) is used. The standard of comparison is stated last.

Adverbs such as 很 (hěn) and 非常 (fēi cháng) cannot be used to modify the comparison standard. In this sentence pattern, 那么 (nà me) and 这么 (zhè me) are optional and may be used before the comparison standard.

He is at least as tall as you.

A	有	B	comparison standard
他	有	你	高。
tā	yǒu	nǐ	gāo。

1. 那棵小树有那座房子那么高。      That tree is at least as tall that building.



- |                |   |
|----------------|---|
| 2. 他弟弟有我这么高。   | His little brother is at least as tall as I am.     |
| 3. 这座楼有那座楼那么高。 | This building is at least as tall as that building. |
| 4. 上海有北京这么冷。   | Shanghai is as cold as this (in Beijing).           |
| 5. 上海有北京那么冷。   | Shanghai is as cold as that (in Beijing).           |

1. nà kē xiǎo shù yǒu nà zuò fángzi nàme gāo.
2. tā didi yǒu wǒ zhème gāo.
3. zhè zuò lóu yǒu nà zuò lóu nàme gāo.
4. Shànghǎi yǒu Běijīng zhème lěng.
5. Shànghǎi yǒu Běijīng nàme lěng.

### 没有 A is less than B

When comparing two things, the following pattern is used to express A is less than B, 没 (méi) or 没有 (méi yǒu) may be used. The standard of comparison is stated last. Adverbs such as 很 (hěn) and 非常 (fēi cháng) cannot be used with the comparison standard.

He is not as tall as me.

A	没(有)	B	comparison standard
他	没(有)	我	高。
tā	méi(yǒu)	wǒ	gāo。

- |                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| 1. 北京的冬天没有哈尔滨冷。 | Winter in Beijing is not as cold as Harbin.       |
| 2. 杭州的人口没有北京多。  | Hangzhou's population is not as big as Beijing's. |
| 3. 我妹妹没有我高。     | My little sister is not as tall as I am.          |

1. Běijīng de dōngtiān méiyǒu Hāěrbīn lěng.
2. Hángzhōu de rénkǒu méiyǒu Běijīng duō
3. wǒ mèimei méiyǒu wǒ gāo.

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

Adding 吗 (ma) to the end of a 有 (yǒu) statement creates a question.

他有你高吗? Is he as tall as you? tā yǒu nǐ gāo ma?

1. 这个房间有那个房间大吗? Is this room as big as that one?



- |               |   |
|---------------|---|
| 2. 上海有北京冷吗?   | Is Shanghai as cold as Beijing?           |
| 3. 上海有北京这么冷吗? | Is Shanghai as cold as this (in Beijing)? |
| 4. 上海有北京那么冷吗? | Is Shanghai as cold as that (in Beijing)? |

- zhè ge fángjiān yǒu nà ge fángjiān dà ma?
- Shànghǎi yǒu Běijīng lěng ma?
- Shànghǎi yǒu Běijīng zhème lěng ma?
- Shànghǎi yǒu Běijīng ame lěng ma?

**‘affirmative – negative’ questions**

Statements using 有 (yǒu) or 没有 (méi yǒu) may use the 有没有 (yǒu méi yǒu) affirmative-negative question pattern. In this sentence pattern, 吗 (ma) may not be used.

他有没有你高?                      Is he as tall as you?      tā yǒu méi yǒu nǐ gāo?

- 上海有没有北京这么冷?      Is Shanghai as cold as this (in Beijing)?
- 上海有没有北京那么冷?      Is Shanghai as cold as that (in Beijing)?

- Shànghǎi yǒu méi yǒu Běijīng zhème lěng ma?
- Shànghǎi yǒu méi yǒu Běijīng ame lěng ma?

**Stating Two Things are the Same (跟 / 和 ..... 一样)**

When stating that two things are the same, A and B, both things are linked with 跟 (gēn) or 和 (hé) followed by 一样 (yí yàng). This means that (A is the same as B). The comparison standard is optional. A measure word may be used alone, without a noun, in the second phrase of (sentence 2).

A	跟/和	B	一样	comparison standard
1. 这张地图	跟	那张地图	一样	
2. 这张地图	和	那张	一样	
3. 这张地图大小	和	那张地图	一样	
4. 这张地图	跟	那张地图	一样	大。
5. 这张地图	跟	那张地图价钱	一样	

- This map is the same as that map.
- This map is the same as that map.
- This map’s size is the same as that map’s size.
- This map is the same size as that map.



5. This map's price is the same as that map's price.

1. zhè zhāng dìtú gēn nà zhāng dìtú yíyàng.
2. zhè zhāng dìtú hé nà zhāng yíyàng.
3. zhè zhāng dìtú dàxiǎo hé nà zhāng dìtú yíyàng.
4. zhè zhāng dìtú gēn nà zhāng yíyàng dà.
5. zhè zhāng dìtú gēn nà zhāng dìtú jiàqián yíyàng.

1. 你的书和他的一样。 Your book is the same as his.
2. 这张桌子跟那张桌子一样。 This table is the same as that one.
3. 我们的孩子跟他们的一样多。 We have the same number of children as they do.
4. 我跟他一样高。 I am the same height as he is.

1. nǐde shū hé tāde yíyàng.
2. zhè zhāng zhuōzi gēn nà zhāng zhuōzi yíyàng.
3. wǒmen de háiizi gēn tāmen de yíyàng duō.
4. wǒ gēn tā yíyàng gāo.

#### Stating Two Things are the not Same (跟..... 不一样)

When stating that two things are not the same, both things are linked with 跟 (gēn) or 和 (hé) and followed by 不一样 (bù yí yàng). These sentences mean : A is not the same as B.

A	跟/和	B	不一样	comparison standard
1. 这张地图	跟	那张地图	不一样	
2. 这张地图	和	那张地图	不一样	大。

1. This map is the not the same as that map.
2. This map is the not the same size as that map.

1. zhè zhāng dìtú gēn nà zhāng dìtú bù yíyàng.
2. zhè zhāng dìtú hé nà zhāng dìtú bù yíyàng dà.

3. 今天和昨天不一样。 Today is not the same as yesterday.
4. 海南的气候跟北京不一样。 Hainan's weather is not the same as Beijing's.
5. 他学的专业和我不一样。 His major is not the same as mine.
6. 这件西服跟那件西服不一样长。 This suit is not the same length as that one.
7. 小张跟小王不一样高。 Little Zhang is not the same height as little Wang.



3. jīntiān hé zuótiān bù yíyàng.
4. Hǎinán de qìhòu gēn Běijīng bù yíyàng.
5. tā xué de zhuānyè hé wǒ bù yíyàng.
6. zhè jiàn xīfu gēn nà jiàn xīfu bù yíyàng cháng.
7. xiǎo Zhāng gēn xiǎo Wáng bù yíyàng gāo.

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

Adding 吗 (ma) to the end of a statement creates a yes-no question.

- |                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| 1. 这张地图跟那张地图一样吗?   | Is this map the same as that map?      |
| 2. 这个地图跟那个地图不一样大吗? | Is this map the same size as that map? |
- 
1. zhè zhāng dìtú gēn nà zhāng dìtú yíyàng ma?
  2. zhè ge dìtú gēn nà ge dìtú bù yíyàng dà ma?

#### ‘affirmative – negative’ questions

In statements ending with 一样 (yí yàng) or 不一样 (bù yí yàng), putting 一样不一样 (yí yàng bù yí yàng) at the end of a the sentence creates a yes-no question.

The word 衣服 (yīfu) means “clothing” but, if it is clear to the listener what article of clothing is being discussed, it can be used for any specific article of clothing. In sentence 1, 大衣 (dàyī) (coat) could replace 衣服 (yīfu).

- |                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| 1. 这件衣服和那件衣服一样不一样?   | Are this coat and that coat the same?              |
| 2. 这张地图和那张地图一样不一样?   | Are these maps the same?                           |
| 3. 这两本书的价钱一样不一样?     | Are these two books the same price?                |
| 4. 北京的天气和上海的天气一样不一样? | Is the weather in Beijing the same as in Shanghai? |
- 
1. zhè jiàn yīfu hé nà jiàn yīfu yíyàng bu yíyàng?
  2. zhè zhāng dìtú hé nà zhāng dìtú yíyàng bu yíyàng?
  3. zhè liǎng běn shū de jiàqián yíyàng bu yíyàng?
  4. Běijīng de tiānqi hé Shànghǎi de tiānqi yíyàng bu yíyàng?



### Relatively / Comparatively (比较)

To state that something (A) is relatively (standard of comparison), the following sentence pattern is used:

A	比较	standard of comparison
1. 这个城市	比较	大。
2. 他的汽车	比较	贵。
1. zhè ge chéngshì bǐjiào dà.		This is a relatively big city.
2. tāde qìchē bǐjiào guì.		His car is relatively expensive.

### Progression

越来越 (yuè lái yuè) is used to show that something (A) changes as time goes on.

A	越来越	standard of comparison
1. 天气	越来越	冷。
2. 他们的书	越来越	多。
3. 我们生活	越来越	幸福。
1. tiānqì yuèláiyuè lěng.		
2. tāmen de shū yuèláiyuè duō.		
3. wǒmen shēnghuó yuèláiyuè xìngfú.		
1. The weather is getting colder.		
2. They are getting more and more books.		
3. Our lives are getting happier.		

## Unit 7

### ‘To Have’ (有) Sentences

This unit introduces 有 (yǒu) as it is used to express “to have”. How to make statements and questions that express “to have” and “do not have” are given. Stating quantities such as “some” and “a few” as well as asking questions such as, “how much?” are covered.

#### New Words

1.	多少	duō shao	how many? how much?
2.	法文	fǎ wén	French (language)
3.	很多	hěnn duō	many
4.	几	jǐ	several, how many?
5.	没有	méi yǒu	do not have
6.	有	yǒu	have
7.	中文	zhōng wén	Chinese (language)

### ‘To Have’ (有) Sentences

#### Measure Words

In sentences below, 有 (yǒu) is used to express ‘to have’. Measure words are used with, “this” [这 (zhè)], “that” [那 (nà)] or “several” [几 (jǐ)]. 几 (jǐ) indicates a relatively small quantity, usually 10 or less.

- |    |          |                         |
|----|----------|-------------------------|
| 1. | 我有一本书。   | I have a book.          |
| 2. | 他有两本书。   | He has two books.       |
| 3. | 我有几本书。   | I have several books.   |
| 4. | 我有一本英文书。 | I have an English book. |

1. wǒ yǒu yì běn shū.
2. tā yǒu liǎng běn shū.
3. wǒ yǒu jǐ běn shū.
4. wǒ yǒu yì běn yīngwén shū.

Measure words are not used when expressing “some” [一些 (yì xiē)], “these” [这些 (zhè xiē)], “those” [那些 (nà xiē)] or “many” [很多 (hěnn duō)].

- |    |           |                               |
|----|-----------|-------------------------------|
| 1. | 我有一些英文书。  | I have some English books.    |
| 2. | 我有很多书。    | I have many books.            |
| 3. | 这些中文书是我的。 | These Chinese books are mine. |
| 4. | 那些书是他的。   | Those books are his.          |

1. wǒ yǒu yìxiē yīngwén shū.

2. wǒ yǒu hěnduō shū.
3. zhèxiē zhōngwén shū shì wǒde.
4. nàxiē shū shì tāde.

### Negative Statements

To express “don’t have” place 没 before 有. In this case, measure words are not used.

1. 我没有书。 I do not have any books.
2. 我没有自行车。 I do not have a bicycle.

1. wǒ méiyǒu shū.
2. wǒ méiyǒu zìxíngchē.

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

To ask the question, “Do you have any?” a measure word is not used. If a number is stated a measure word must be used.

你有书吗? Do you have any books? nǐ yǒu shū ma?

#### 呢 questions

我有一本书, 你呢? wǒ yǒu yì běn shū, nǐ ne?

I have a book, do you?

#### ‘question word’ questions

几 (jǐ) not only means “several”, it is also a question word, meaning “how many?”. When using 几 (jǐ) in a question, a measure word is used between 几 (jǐ) and the noun. 几 (jǐ) questions have the same word order as statements; except the question word 几 (jǐ) is used in place of the expected answer. This means that 他有几本书 (tā yǒu jǐ běn shū) could mean “He has several books.” or “How many books does he have?”, depending on the context of the sentence. In 几 (jǐ) questions, 吗 (ma) is not used.

你有多少本书? nǐ yǒu jǐ běn shū? How many books do you have?  
我有多少本书。 wǒ yǒu jǐ běn shū. I have several books.



When asking “how many”, 多少 (duō shao) may be used for any number; however, is usually used for numbers over 10. When using 多少 (duō shao) the measure word is optional. In 多少 (duō shao) questions, 吗 (ma) is not used. Both questions below mean “How many students does your school have?”

1. 你们学校有多少个学生?
2. 你们学校有多少学生?

1. nǐmen xuéxiào yǒu duōshao ge xuésheng?
2. nǐmen xuéxiào yǒu duōshao xuésheng?

#### **‘affirmative – negative’ questions**

有没有 (yǒu méi yǒu) is used to create a question that asks, “do you have any?”, in these questions numbers and measure words are not used.

你有没有书? nǐ yǒu méi yǒu shū? Do you have any books?

#### **‘confirmation’ questions**

你没有中文书, 对不对? You don’t have a Chinese book, do you?

nǐ méiyǒu zhōngwén shū, duì bu duì?

#### **‘or’ questions**

你有铅笔还是圆珠笔? Do you have a pencil or a ballpoint pen?

nǐ yǒu qiānbǐ háishi yuánzhūbǐ.



## Unit 8

### Days and Dates

This unit introduces statements and questions concerning days, days, weeks, months, years and dates.

#### New Words

1.	号	hào	number (expressing a day)
2.	今年	jīn nián	this year
3.	礼拜	lǐ bài	week
4.	明年	míng nián	next year
5.	明天	míng tiān	tomorrow
6.	年	nián	year
7.	去年	qù nián	last year
8.	日	rì	day
9.	上个星期	shàng ge xīng qī	last week
10.	上个月	shàng ge yuè	last month
11.	生日	shēng rì	birthday
12.	天	tiān	day
13.	下个星期	xià ge xīng qī	next week
14.	下个月	xià ge yuè	next month
15.	星期	xīng qī	week
16.	学期	xué qī	term, semester
17.	月	yuè	month
18.	这个星期	zhè ge xīng qī	this week
19.	这个月	zhè ge yuè	this month
20.	周	zhōu	week

#### Months and Days

The names of the 12 months are formed by combining the numbers 1 to 12 with 月 (yuè). (Note: 月份 (yuè fèn) may also be used) The numbers from 1 to 6 follow 星期 (xīng qī), 礼拜 (lǐ bài) or 周 (zhōu) to express the days of the week from Monday to Saturday. Sunday is spoken using 星期天 (xīng qī tiān), 礼拜天 (lǐ bài tiān) or 周天 (zhōu tiān) and written as 星期日 (xīng qī rì), 礼拜日 (lǐ bài rì) or 周日 (zhōu rì).

一月	January	七月	July
二月	February	八月	August
三月	March	九月	September
四月	April	十月	October

五月	May	十一月	November
六月	June	十二月	December

星期一	礼拜一	周一	Monday
星期二	礼拜二	周二	Tuesday
星期三	礼拜三	周三	Wednesday
星期四	礼拜四	周四	Thursday
星期五	礼拜五	周五	Friday
星期六	礼拜六	周六	Saturday
星期天	礼拜天	周天	Sunday (spoken)
星期日	礼拜日	周日	Sunday (written)

### Dates and Years

When expressing the date - the day follows the month. The day is expressed by combining numbers 1 to 31 with 号 (hào) (spoken form) or 日 (rì) (written form).

八月八号	bā yuè bā hào	August 8	(spoken)
八月八日	bā yuè bā rì	August 8	(written)

The four figures making up the a year are read out as four separate numbers with 年 (nián) at the end. While 零 (líng) is the character for "zero", the numeral is usually used when writing the year. When expressing a year, 二 (èr) is used, 两 (liǎng) cannot be used.

2010年	èr líng yī líng nián	the year 2010
-------	----------------------	---------------

The word order for expressing the complete date goes from largest unit to smallest. Friday, August 8, 2008 would be expressed as follows:

2008年8月8号 星期五

èr líng líng bā nián bā yuè bā hào xīngqīwǔ

Note: The words “year” [年 (nián)], “week” [周 (zhōu)], “day” [天 (tiān)], “minute” [分 (fēn)], and “second” [秒 (miǎo)] are nouns of quantity and are not used with measure words. The words “month” [月 (yuè)], “week” [星期 (xīng qī)], “week” [礼拜 (lǐbài)] and “hour” [小时 (xiǎo shí)] are not nouns of quantity and require measure words. (Refer to Appendix B – Advanced Measure Words)



两年	liǎng nián	2 years
五天	wǔ tiān	5 days
四个星期	sì ge xīngqī	4 weeks
四周	sì zhōu	4 weeks
三个月	sān ge yuè	3 months

In the examples below, 几 (jǐ) could mean "a few" or "how many?", depending on the context.

几年	jǐ nián	a few years / how many years?
几天	jǐ tiān	a few days / how many days?
几个星期	jǐ ge xīngqī	a few weeks / how many weeks?
几个月	jǐ ge yuè	a few months / how many months?

- |               |   |
|---------------|---|
| 1. 昨天是十月十八号。  | Yesterday was October 18 <sup>th</sup> .    |
| 2. 今天是十月十九号。  | Today is October 19 <sup>th</sup> .         |
| 3. 明天是十月二十二号。 | Tomorrow will be October 20 <sup>th</sup> . |
| 4. 今年是2010年。  | The year is 2010.                           |
| 5. 明天是我的生日。   | Tomorrow is my birthday.                    |

1. zuótiān shì shíyuè shíbā hào.
2. jīntiān shì shíyuè shí jiǔ hào.
3. míngtiān shì shíyuè èrshíèr hào.
4. jīnnián shì èr líng yī líng nián.
5. míngtiān shì wǒde shēngrì.

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

- |              |  |
|--------------|--|
| 1. 今天是二月一号吗? | Is today is February 1 <sup>st</sup> ? |
| 2. 十四号是星期三吗? | Is the 14 <sup>th</sup> on Wednesday?  |

1. jīntiān shì èr yuè yī hào ma?
2. shísi hào shì xīngqīsān ma?

#### 'question word' questions

几 (jǐ) is used as a question word to ask "what day", "what date" or "what month".  
多少 (duō shao) may not be used for this. However, 多少 (duōshao) or 几 (jǐ) may be used to ask the number of days, weeks, months or years.



- |                      |                                       |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. 今天 是 几月 几号? 星期 几? | What is today's month, date, and day? |
| 2. 一个 星期 有 几天?       | How many days does a week have?       |
| 3. 一周 有 几天?          | How many days does a week have?       |
| 4. 一年 有 几个 月?        | How many months does a year have?     |
| 5. 一年 有 多少 个 星期?     | How many weeks does a year have?      |
| 6. 一个 学期 有 多少 个 星期?  | How many weeks does a semester have?  |

1. jīntiān shì jǐyuè jǐhào? xīngqījǐ?
2. yí gè xīngqī yǒu jǐ tiān?
3. yí zhōu yǒu jǐ tiān?
4. yì nián yǒu jǐ ge yuè?
5. yì nián yǒu duōshao ge xīngqī?
6. yí gè xuéqī yǒu duōshao ge xīngqī?

**'affirmative - negative' questions**

今天 是 不是 二 月 一 号。                      Is today February 1st ?

jīntiān shì bu shì èryuè yīhào?

**'confirmation' questions**

今天 是 二 月 一 号, 是 不 是?                      Today February 1st, isn't it?

jīntiān shì èryuè yīhào, shì bu shì?

**'or' questions**

今天 是 星 期 三 还 是 星 期 四?                      Is today Wednesday or Thursday?

jīntiān shì xīngqīsān hái shì xīngqīsì?



## Unit 9

### Time

This unit introduces questions and statements about lengths of time and stating the (clock) time.

#### New Words

1.	半	bàn	half
2.	差	chà	short of
3.	点钟	diǎn zhōng	o'clock
4.	多长	duō cháng	how long? (time)
5.	分钟	fēn zhōng	minute
6.	几点	jǐ diǎn	what time?
7.	刻	kè	a quarter of an hour
8.	快	kuài	fast, quick
9.	上午	shàng wǔ	morning
10.	时间	shí jiān	time
11.	晚上	wǎn shang	evening, late, night time
12.	下午	xià wǔ	afternoon
13.	小时	xiǎo shí	hour
14.	早上	zǎo shang	morning
15.	中午	zhōng wǔ	noon

#### Stating the Time

To express AM, 早上 (zǎo shang) is generally used to discuss early morning hours such as before one goes to work or school. When discussing one's workday, 上午 (shàng wǔ) is more commonly used to talk about things that happen before lunch. To express PM, 下午 (xià wǔ) is used for times in the afternoon and 晚上 (wǎn shang) is used for evening times. These expressions are placed before the (clock) time is stated. These may be omitted if it is already clear what part of the day it is. For early morning hours, when most people are asleep, 晚上 (wǎn shang) is commonly used because it is considered to be night time. When stating the time, as in "It is 2 o'clock"; 两 (liǎng) is used. When stating the time, the minutes place, as in "2 minutes after 10"; 二 (èr) is used. When stating the time of day, 快 (kuài) is used to express 'almost' and 差 (chà) is used to say "until" the hour. 刻 (kè) may be used to state the 15 or 45 minute "quarter hour" times but is not used for half hour times. 半 (bàn) may be used to state "half past". When stating the time, 钟 (zhōng) is optional; however, it is not used after 刻 (kè) or 半 (bàn). Time phrases always are stated from the largest unit of time to the smallest unit.



1.	上午十点 (钟)	10:00 am
2.	上午十点一刻	10:15 am
3.	上午十点半	10:30 am
4.	上午十点三十分	10:30 am
5.	上午十点三刻	10:45 am
6.	上午十点四十五分	10:45 am
7.	中午十二点 (钟)	noon
8.	下午十二点一分	12:01 pm
9.	下午两点二分	2:02 pm
10.	晚上十二点 (钟)	midnight
11.	快两点 (钟)	almost 2 o'clock
12.	差一刻一点 (钟)	a quarter to 1 o'clock
13.	差十分一点 (钟)	10 minutes until 1 o'clock
14.	两点三刻	2:45
15.	三点一刻	3:15

1. shàngwǔ shí diǎn (zhōng)
2. shàngwǔ shí diǎn yí kè
3. shàngwǔ shí diǎn bàn
4. shàngwǔ shí diǎn sānshí fēn
5. shàngwǔ shí diǎn sān kè
6. shàngwǔ shí diǎn sìshíwǔ fēn
7. zhōngwǔ shíèr diǎn (zhōng)
8. xiàwǔ shíèr diǎn yī fēn
9. xiàwǔ liǎng diǎn èr fēn
10. wǎnshàng shíèr diǎn (zhōng)
11. kuài liǎng diǎn (zhōng)
12. chà yí kè yī diǎn (zhōng)
13. chà shí fēn yī diǎn (zhōng)
14. liǎng diǎn sān kè
15. sān diǎn yí kè

In China, public places that have digital clocks, such as subway stations, it is common to have the time displayed in 24 hour time format. Radio time announcements are commonly spoken in 24 hour format. 十四点 (shí sì diǎn ) would be used to express 2 pm.



## Length of Time

To express a length of time in minutes, measure words are not used. For a number of hours, the measure word 个 (gè) is used. (The words “minute” [分 (fēn)] and “second” [秒 (miǎo)] are nouns of quantity and are not used with measure words. The word “hour” [小时 (xiǎo shí)] is not a noun of quantity and requires a measure words. Refer to Appendix B – Advanced Measure Words)

两分钟	liǎng fēn zhōng	two minutes
两个小时	liǎng ge xiǎoshí	two hours

## Questions

### 吗 questions

十点 (钟) 吗?	shí diǎn (zhōng) ma?	Is it 10 o'clock? (now)
-----------	----------------------	-------------------------

### 'question word' questions

几点 (钟) ?	jǐ diǎn (zhōng)?	What time is it? (now)
多长时间 ?	duōcháng shí jiān?	how long? (length of time)
多少个小时 ?	duōshao ge xiǎoshí?	how many hours?
几个小时 ?	jǐ ge xiǎoshí?	how many hours?
多少分钟 ?	duōshao fēn zhōng?	how many minutes?
几分钟 ?	jǐ fēn zhōng?	how many minutes?

## Unit 10

### 'Action Verb' Sentences

#### Habitual / Intentional Actions

This unit introduces how to express statements and questions about actions that are habitual or intentional. It shows examples of how multisyllabic verbs are used in affirmative-negative questions.

#### New Words

1.	北京	Běijīng	the capital of China
2.	地方	dì fang	a place or location
3.	电视	diàn shì	television
4.	干	gàn	to do
5.	喝	hē	drink
6.	饺子	jiǎo zi	Chinese dumpling
7.	咖啡	kā fēi	coffee
8.	看	kàn	to see, to watch
9.	来	lái	come
10.	每	měi	every
11.	哪儿	nǎr	where?
12.	去	qù	go
13.	商店	shāng diàn	store, shop
14.	上海	Shàng hǎi	Shanghai (a major city in China)
15.	什么时候	shén me shí hòu	when?
16.	图书馆	tú shū guǎn	library
17.	现在	xiàn zài	now
18.	学习	xué xí	study
19.	英语	yīng yǔ	English language
20.	做	zuò	to do

#### Action Verbs

There are no verb tenses in Chinese, actions are expressed as habitual / intentional, in progress, completed, or to be part of a past experience. The times actions occur are apparent from context or are specified by time phrases at the beginning of sentences.

#### Habitual / Intentional Actions

This example does not refer to a specific time. The context tells the listener if the statement refers to a habitual or intentional action.



### Habitual actions

Question: What do you do after school everyday?

Answer: 我去图书馆。 wǒ qù túshūguǎn. I go to the library.

### Intentional actions

Question: (as someone walks out the door) Where are you going (now)?

Answer: 我去图书馆。 wǒ qù túshūguǎn. I am going to the library.

Question: Where will you go tomorrow?

Answer: 我去图书馆。 wǒ qù túshūguǎn. I will go to the library.

### Time Phrases

To express the time that actions occurs, time phrases are always placed at the beginning of sentences or immediately following the subject. In the examples below, 我 (wǒ) is the subject.

### Habitual actions

Both sentences below express, "I go to the library every afternoon."

每天下午我去图书馆。 měitiān xiàwǔ wǒ qù túshūguǎn.  
我每天下午去图书馆。 wǒ měitiān xiàwǔ qù túshūguǎn.

### Intentional actions

I am going to the store tomorrow afternoon. (sentences 1, 2)

He is going to come to Beijing tomorrow morning. (sentences 3, 4)

1. 明天下午我去商店。 míngtiān xiàwǔ wǒ qù shāngdiàn.
2. 我明天下午去商店。 wǒ míngtiān xiàwǔ qù shāngdiàn.
3. 明天早上他来北京。 míngtiān zǎoshang tā lái Běijīng.
4. 他明天早上来北京。 tā míngtiān zǎoshang lái Běijīng.

In the example 现在 (xiànzài) below, means "now". However, based on the context of the question, the sentence still refers to an action that is intentional.

Question: (as someone prepares to walk out the door) Where are you going (now)?

Answer: 我现在去图书馆。 I am going to the library.

wǒ xiànzài qù túshūguǎn.



## Negative Statements

In habitual or intentional action sentences 不(bù) is always before the verb to make a negative statement. In the examples below, 我(wǒ) is the subject. As in the examples above, context is needed to determine the speaker's meaning.

### Habitual Actions

Question: Do you drink coffee?

Answer: 我不喝咖啡。 I don't drink coffee. wǒ bù hē kāfēi.

### Intentional Actions

Question: Will you go to the library tomorrow?

Answer: 我不去图书馆。 I will not go to the library.

wǒ bú qù túshūguǎn.

### Negative Statements - with Time Phrases

In both sentences below, 我(wǒ) is the subject and the sentences express, "I am not going to the store on Friday" or "I do not go to the library on Fridays"; depending on context.

星期五下午我不去商店。 xīngqīwǔ xiàwǔ wǒ bú qù shāngdiàn.

我星期五下午不去商店。 wǒ xīngqīwǔ xiàwǔ bú qù shāngdiàn.

## Questions

### 吗 questions

As in the above examples, context is needed to determine the exact meaning of the question.

### Habitual Actions

"I notice you leave the cafeteria at one o'clock everyday. Do you go to the library?"

你去图书馆吗? nǐ qù túshūguǎn ma? Do you go to the library?

### Intentional Actions

"Mark told me you are going to school tomorrow. Are you going to the library?"

你去图书馆吗? nǐ qù túshūguǎn ma? Are you going to the library?

### 吗 questions with time phrases:

In the questions below, the time phrases may go at the beginning of the sentence or after the subject. In the sentences below, 你(nǐ) is the subject.

- |              |  |
|--------------|--|
| 1. 你明天去商店吗?  | Are you going to the store tomorrow?     |
| 2. 星期五你去上海吗? | Are you going to Shanghai on Friday?     |
| 3. 你九点钟去上海吗? | Are you going to the store at 9 o'clock? |

1. nǐ míngtiān qù shāngdiàn ma?
2. xīngqīwǔ nǐ qù Shànghǎi ma?
3. nǐ jiǔ diǎnzhōng qù shāngdiàn ma?

### 'question word' questions

- |             |  |
|-------------|--|
| 1. 你去什么地方?  | Where are you going?                     |
| 2. 你去什么商店?  | What store are you going to?             |
| 3. 你学习什么?   | What do you study?                       |
| 4. 谁去商店?    | Who is going to the store?               |
| 5. 你去哪儿?    | Where are you going?                     |
| 6. 你干什么?    | What are you doing?                      |
| 7. 你做什么?    | What are you doing?                      |
| 8. 你星期五干什么? | What do you do on Fridays?               |
| 9. 你下午做什么?  | What are you going to do this afternoon? |
| 10. 你几点去商店? | What time are you going to the store?    |

1. nǐ qù shénme dìfang?
2. nǐ qù shénme shāngdiàn?
3. nǐ xuéxí shénme?
4. shéi qù shāngdiàn?
5. nǐ qù nǎr?
6. nǐ gàn shénme?
7. nǐ zuò shénme?
8. nǐ xīngqīwǔ gàn shénme?
9. nǐ xiàwǔ zuò shénme?
10. nǐ jǐdiǎn qù shāngdiàn?

### 'question word' questions with time phrases

In the questions below, the subject 你 (nǐ) could go at the beginning of the questions or after the time phrases.

- |              |                                  |
|--------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. 你每天下午去哪儿? | Where do you go every afternoon? |
| 2. 明天你去什么地方? | Where are you going tomorrow?    |



- |               |  |
|---------------|--|
| 3. 你星期五去什么商店? | What store are you going to on Friday?       |
| 4. 明天下午你干什么?  | What are you going to do tomorrow afternoon? |
| 5. 你什么时候喝咖啡?  | When do you drink coffee?                    |
| 6. 你什么时候去上海?  | When are you going to Shanghai?              |
| 7. 你几点钟去商店?   | What time are you going to the store?        |

1. nǐ měitiān xiàwǔ qù nǎr?
2. míngtiān nǐ qù shénme dìfāng?
3. nǐ xīngqīwǔ qù shénme shāngdiàn?
4. míngtiān xiàwǔ nǐ gàn shénme?
5. nǐ shénme shíhou hē kāfēi?
6. nǐ shénme shíhou qù Shànghǎi?
7. nǐ jǐdiǎnzhōng qù shāngdiàn?

#### 'affirmative - negative' questions

In this example, as in the above examples, context is needed to determine the exact meaning of the question.

- |                        |                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 你去不去商店?                | Do you go to the store?     |
|                        | Are you going to the store? |
| nǐ qù bu qù shāngdiàn? | Will you go to the store?   |

#### 'affirmative - negative' questions that use two character verbs

There are two ways to express 'affirmative-negative' questions that have two-character verbs. In the first sentence below, both characters of the verb, 学习 (xué xí), are repeated. In the second sentence, only the first character is repeated. Both sentences have the same meaning, "Do you study Chinese?"

1. 你学习不学习中文? nǐ xuéxí bu xuéxí zhōngwén?
2. 你学不学习中文? nǐ xué bu xuéxí zhōngwén?

#### 'affirmative - negative' questions with time phrases

1. 你明天去不去商店? Are you going to the store tomorrow?
2. 明年你学不学习中文? Are you going to study Chinese next year?

1. nǐ míngtiān qù bu qù shāngdiàn?
2. míngnián nǐ xué bu xuéxí zhōngwén?

#### 'or' questions

- |                                     |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 你学习汉语还是学习英语。                        | Do you study Chinese or English? |
| nǐ xuéxí hànyǔ háishi xuéxí yīngyǔ? |                                  |



## Unit 11

### 'Action Verb' Sentences - Actions in Progress

This unit introduces how to express actions that are in progress.

#### New Words

1.	爱人	ài rén	husband or wife
2.	擦	cā	wipe
3.	唱歌	chàng gē	to sing
4.	打电话	dǎ diàn huà	a phone call
5.	打篮球	dǎ lán qiú	play basketball
6.	的时候	de shí hou	when something happens
7.	等	děng	wait
8.	电影	diàn yǐng	movie
9.	东西	dōng xi	things
10.	给	gěi	to give
11.	工作	gōng zuò	a job, to work
12.	黑板	hēi bǎn	blackboard
13.	会	huì	will
14.	家	jiā	home (a place), family (people)
15.	开会	kāi huì	start a meeting, have a meeting
16.	里	lǐ	inside
17.	聊天儿	liáo tiānr	chit chat
18.	买	mǎi	buy
19.	买东西	mǎi dōng xi	go shopping
20.	呢	ne	a particle that indicates an action in progress
21.	身体	shēn tǐ	health, body
22.	睡觉	shuì jiào	sleep
23.	讨论	tǎo lùn	discuss
24.	洗	xǐ	wash
25.	写	xiě	write
26.	休息	xiū xi	rest, break, a day off
27.	一起	yìqǐ	together
28.	因为	yīn wèi	because
29.	在	zài	an adverb that indicates an action in progress
30.	找	zhǎo	to look for
31.	正在	zhèng zài	an adverb that indicates an action in progress

32. 这儿 zhèr here  
 33. 最近 zuì jìn recently

In order to show that an action is in progress, place one of the adverbs 在 (zài), 正 (zhèng) or 正在 (zhèng zài) before the predicate verb or place 呢 (ne) at the end of the sentence. 在 (zài), 正 (zhèng) and 正在 (zhèng zài) are often used together with 呢 (ne) to express that an action is in progress.

The sentences below show 7 possible ways to say: “Mother is doing the laundry”.

	subject	正在 / 正 / 在	predicate verb	object	呢
1.	妈妈	正在	洗	衣服	
2.	妈妈	正	洗	衣服	
3.	妈妈	在	洗	衣服	
4.	妈妈	正在	洗	衣服	呢
5.	妈妈	正	洗	衣服	呢
6.	妈妈	在	洗	衣服	呢
7.	妈妈		洗	衣服	呢
	māmā		xǐ	yīfu	ne
	Mother	<i>action in progress</i>	wash	clothes	<i>action in progress</i>

Some verbs do not require objects. For instance, in the examples below the word for “rest” [休息 (xiū xi)] does not need an object. The sentences below show 7 possible ways to say: “He is resting”.

	subject	正在 / 正 / 在	predicate verb	呢
1.	他	正在	休息	
2.	他	正	休息	
3.	他	在	休息	
4.	他	正在	休息	呢
5.	他	正	休息	呢
6.	他	在	休息	呢
7.	他		休息	呢
	tā		xiū xi	ne
	He	<i>action in progress</i>	rest	<i>action in progress</i>



If the speaker wants to indicate *a place* that an action (in progress) is occurring then 在 (zài) is followed by a place and is used as the preposition “at”. (Unit 14). In this case, 正 (zhèng) and 呢 (ne) are used to indicate the action is in progress. The sentences below mean, “Mother is washing clothes at home.”

妈妈正在家里洗衣服。      māmā zhèng zài jiā lǐ xǐ yīfu。  
妈妈正在家里洗衣服呢。      māmā zhèng zài jiā lǐ xǐ yīfu ne。  
妈妈在家里洗衣服呢。      māmā zài jiā lǐ xǐ yīfu ne。

### Actions in progress with time phrases

Without more context or time words, it is assumed that the actions in the above sentences are occurring at the present time. However, actions in progress may occur in the future or in the past. In sentence 2, 会 is used as an auxiliary verb. This is covered in greater detail in Unit 25.

- 1a. 昨天九点钟我在看电视。
- 1b. 我昨天九点钟在看电视。
2. 明天九点钟我会在看电影。

- 1a. zuótiān jiǔ diǎn zhōng wǒ zài kàn diànshì。
- 1b. wǒ zuótiān jiǔ diǎn zhōng zài kàn diànshì。
2. míngtiān jiǔ diǎn wǒ huì zài kàn diànyǐng。

- 1a / 1b Yesterday at 9 o'clock I was watching TV.
2. Tomorrow at 9 o'clock I will be watching a movie.

现在 (xiànzài) which means “now” may also be used with 正在, 正 or 在 in the same way as time phrases as in : 我现在在等你 (wǒ xiànzài zài děng nǐ) (I am waiting for you now.)

These sentences may also have phrases that contain other elements. In the sentence below, since 在 (zài) does not come before a place, we know it indicates an action in progress. This sentence means, “They are shopping (together).”

他们在一起买东西呢。      tāmen zài yìqǐ mǎi dōngxi ne。

### Negative Statements

To state that an action is not in progress, 没 (méi) or 没有 (méi yǒu) are placed before 在 (zài). However, in spoken Chinese, it is not common to hear people use 没有 (méi yǒu) before 在 (zài). 正 (zhèng) and 呢 (ne) are not used in negative sentences.



1. 我没在看电视。 wǒ méi zài kàn diànshì.
2. 他没在喝咖啡。 tā méi zài hē kāfēi.

1. I am not watching television.
2. He is not drinking coffee.

### Questions

To ask if an action is in progress, add 吗 (ma) to the end of the sentence. To answer affirmatively, 是 (shì) or 对 (duì) are used. Answering questions negatively only requires that the speaker say 没有 (méi yǒu). When answering questions in full sentences, 在 (zài) is often omitted as in example sentences 1d and 2d below.

- |     |                             |                |
|-----|-----------------------------|----------------|
| 1.  | Question                    | 他们在看电视吗?       |
| 1a. | Affirmative answer          | 是 or 对         |
| 1b. | Negative answer             | 没有。            |
| 1c. | Negative answer             | 他们没在看电视。       |
| 1d. | Negative answer (在 omitted) | 他们没看电视。        |
| 2.  | Question                    | 你们在讨论吗?        |
| 2a. | Affirmative answer          | 是 or 对         |
| 2b. | Negative answer             | 没有。            |
| 2c. | Negative answer             | 我们没在讨论，我们聊天儿呢。 |
| 2d. | Negative answer (在 omitted) | 我们没讨论，我们聊天儿呢。  |

1. tā men zài kàn diànshì ma?
- 1a. shì / duì
- 1b. méi yǒu
- 1c. tāmen méi zài kàn diànshì.
- 1d. tāmen méi kàn diànshì.
2. nǐ men zài tāolùn ma?
- 2a. shì / duì
- 2b. méi yǒu
- 2c. wǒ men méi zài tāolùn, wǒ men liáotiānr ne.
- 2d. wǒ men méi tāolùn, wǒ men liáotiānr ne.

1. Are they watching TV?
- 1a. Yes
- 1b. No.
- 1c / 1d. They are not watching TV.
2. Are you discussing? (something important)
- 2a. Yes



- 2b. No  
2c / 2d We are not in the middle of a serious discussion,  
we are (only) chit chatting.

### ‘question word’ questions

1. 谁正在喝咖啡? shéi zhèngzài hē kāfēi ma?
  2. 他正在喝什么? tā zhèngzài hē shénme?
- 
1. Who is drinking coffee? (now)
  2. What is he drinking? (now)

To ask what action is in progress, 做什么 (zuò shén me) or 干什么(gàn shén me) may be used. Example sentences 1-4 below have the same meaning: “What are they doing?”

1. 他们在干什么? tā men zài gàn shénme?
2. 他们正在做什么? tā men zhèng zài zuò shénme?
3. 他们在做什么呢? tā men zài zuò shénme ne?
4. 他们正在干什么呢? tā men zhèng zài gàn shénme ne?

In some questions a verb is used with 什么 (shén me). Example sentences 1-4 below have the same meaning: “What is she writing?”

1. 她在写什么? tā zài xiě shénme?
2. 她正在写什么? tā zhèng zài xiě shénme?
3. 她在写什么呢? tā zài xiě shén me ne?
4. 她正在写什么呢? tā zhèng zài xiě shénme ne?

In the answers below, 写书 (xiě shū) or 写一本书 (xiě yī běn shū) could be used to say “She is writing a book”.

1. 她在写书。 tā zài xiě shū。
2. 她正在写一本书。 tā zhèng zài xiě yī běn shū。
3. 她在写书呢。 tā zài xiě shū ne。
4. 她正在写一本书呢。 tā zhèng zài xiě yī běn shū ne。

### Example Sentences

1. 他们在开会。 They are having a meeting.
2. 他正在等他的爱人呢。 He is waiting on his wife.
3. 他正休息。 He is resting.



4. 他正在给朋友打电话呢。 She is talking on the phone to a friend.  
5. 他们在打篮球。 They are playing basketball.

1. tāmen zài kāihuì。  
2. tā zhèng zài dēng tā de ài rén ne。  
3. tā zhèng xiūxi。  
4. tā zhèng zài gěi péngyou dǎ diànhuà ne。  
5. tā men zài dǎ lánqiú。

6. 他正在擦黑板呢。  
7. 她睡觉呢。  
8. 因为他身体不好，这几天他正在家里休息。  
9. 她正在唱歌呢。  
10. 他最近在找工作呢。

6. She is erasing the blackboard.  
7. She is sleeping.  
8. Because he is sick, he has been at home resting for last few days.  
9. She is singing.  
10. Recently, he has been looking for a job.

6. tā zhèng zài cā hēibǎn ne。  
7. tā shuì jiào ne。  
8. yīn wèi tā shēntǐ bù hǎo, zhè jǐ tiān tā zhèng zài jiā lǐ xiūxi。  
9. tā zhèng zài chàng gē ne。  
10. tā zuìjìn zài zhǎo gōngzuò ne。



**Unit 12**  
**'Action Verb' Sentences**  
**Completed Actions (了)**

**Actions (as part of past experience) (过)**

This unit introduces how to express actions that have been completed as well as how to express actions that occurred as part of an experience in the past.

**New Words**

1.	毕业	bì yè	graduate
2.	吃	chī	to eat
3.	从	cóng	from (a place)
4.	大学	dà xué	university
5.	桂林	Guìlín	a province of China
6.	过	guò	particle for indicating past experience
7.	家	jiā	measure word for shops and stores
8.	借	jiè	borrow
9.	就	jiù	then
10.	了	le	particle for indicating completed action
11.	毛衣	máo yī	sweater
12.	宿舍	sù shè	dormitory
13.	下课	xià kè	to end a class
14.	以后	yǐ hòu	after
15.	以前	yǐ qián	before
16.	友谊商店	yǒu yì shāng diàn	Friendship Store
17.	早饭	zǎo fàn	breakfast
18.	走	zǒu	walk, to leave a place
19.	住	zhù	live

**Completed Actions (了)**

Note: 了 (le) has many complex grammatical functions. This unit explains some of them, but does not cover every way 了 (le) can be used. For this reason, some of the explanations below will state that “it is always correct” to use 了 (le) in the way shown. For a complete explanation of 以前 (yǐ qián) (before) and 以后 (yǐ hòu) (after), refer to Unit 27.

When the verb is followed directly by the object (there is no pronoun, attributive, or numeral-measure word following the verb) then 了 (le) may be placed at the end of the sentence or after the verb to indicate the action of the verb has been completed.



- |           |            |                          |
|-----------|------------|--------------------------|
| 1. 我借词典了。 | 1a. 我借了词典。 | I borrowed a dictionary. |
| 2. 我看电影了。 | 2a. 我看了电影。 | I saw a movie.           |
| 3. 我去商店了。 | 3a. 我去了商店。 | I went to the store.     |

- |                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. wǒ jiè cídiǎn le.   | 1a. wǒ jiè le cídiǎn.   |
| 2. wǒ kàn diànyǐng le. | 2a. wǒ kàn le diànyǐng. |
| 3. wǒ qù shāngdiàn le. | 3a. wǒ qù le shāngdiàn. |

To indicate a completed action, when there is a pronoun, attributive or number between the verb and the object, then it is always correct to place 了(le) directly after the verb.

- |             |                            |               |
|-------------|----------------------------|---------------|
| 4. 我借了他的词典。 | I borrowed his dictionary. | (pronoun)     |
| 5. 我看了中国电影。 | I saw a Chinese movie.     | (attributive) |
| 6. 我去了两家商店。 | I went to two stores.      | (number)      |

4. wǒ jiè le tāde cídiǎn.  
 5. wǒ kàn le zhōngguó diànyǐng.  
 6. wǒ qù le liǎng jiā shāngdiàn.

**Using 了(le) to indicate a specific action has been completed:**

In these examples, the aspect particle 了 is put after the verb to emphasize that an action is completed. (Questions are explained at the end of this unit.)

- |                            |                                  |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Question 1: 你买了什么东西?    | What did you buy?                |
| Answer 1: 我买了一件毛衣。         | I bought a sweater.              |
| 2. Question 2: 你看了今天的报纸没有? | Have you read today's newspaper? |
| Answer 2: 我看了。             | I read (the newspaper)           |

- |   |
|---|
| 1. Question 1: nǐ mǎi le shén me dōngxi?            |
| Answer 1: wǒ mǎi le yí jiàn máoyī.                  |
| 2. Question 2: nǐ kàn le jīntiān de bàozhǐ méi yǒu? |
| Answer 2: wǒ kàn le.                                |

**Using 了(le) to indicate a situation has already occurred:**

In these examples, the modal particle 了 is put at the end of a sentence to emphasize that a situation has already occurred.



1. 昨天你去哪儿了?                      Where did you go yesterday?
2. 我去友谊商店了。                      I went to the Friendship store.

1. zuótiān nǐ qù nǎr le?
2. wǒ qù yǒuyì shāngdiàn le。

**The difference between 了 (le) when used to indicate specific actions have occurred and when 了 (le) is used to indicate that situations have occurred.**

In example sentence 1 below, 了 (le) is used after the verb to indicate the completion of the specific action of having class. Without further context, it is not certain that the class has taken place already. This sentence could refer to a future action, because the action is sure to be completed, or a habitual action. In example sentence 2 below, we know that the class has taken place (the situation has already occurred) because the sentence ends with 了. It is clear that the person has already gone home.

1. 他下了课就回家。
2. 他下了课就回家了。

1. tā xià le kè jiù huí jiā。
2. tā xià le kè jiù huí jiā le。

1. After class he goes home. / After class he will go home.
2. He went home after class.

Questions are covered later on in this unit; however, to further illustrate the difference between a specific action and a situation, consider the difference between the questions (1) 他去了哪儿? (tā qù le nǎr ?) and (2) 他去哪儿了? (tā qù nǎr le?)

Suppose a young couple and their son were walking through a mall doing some shopping. Suddenly, one of the parents notices their son is missing. One parent says, 他去了哪儿? (tā qù le nǎr ?) (Where did he GO?), the sentence refers to the specific action of “going”.

Suppose the mother and the son had gone into one store and the father had gone into a different store. The father was suppose to meet his wife and son at an appointed time. The father fails to show up. The mother and son start to look for the father in places they think he may have gone to. The mother would say 他去哪儿了? (tā qù nǎr le?) (Where could he have gone?). Perhaps after they meet again, the mother would say 你去哪儿了? (nǐ qù nǎr le?) (Where did you go?) In this case, the sentence refers to the overall situation, not specifically the action of the verb “going”.



### Completed actions with time phrases:

Time phrases are always placed at the beginning of sentences or immediately following the subject. In the examples below, 我 (wǒ) is the subject. Since there is no pronoun, attributive or number between the verb and the object, it is always correct to place 了 (le) at the end of the sentence or after the verb.

- |              |                                    |
|--------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. 我星期五借词典了。 | I borrowed a dictionary on Friday. |
| 2. 星期五我借了词典。 | I borrowed a dictionary on Friday. |
| 3. 我星期五看电影了。 | I saw a movie on Friday.           |
| 4. 星期五我看了电影。 | I saw a movie on Friday.           |
| 5. 我星期五去商店了。 | I went to the store on Friday.     |
| 6. 星期五我去了商店。 | I went to the store on Friday.     |

1. wǒ xīngqīwǔ jiè cídiǎn le.
2. xīngqīwǔ wǒ jiè le cídiǎn.
3. wǒ xīngqīwǔ kàn diànyǐng le.
4. xīngqīwǔ wǒ kàn le diànyǐng.
5. wǒ xīngqīwǔ qù shāngdiàn le.
6. xīngqīwǔ wǒ qù le shāngdiàn.

Since there is a pronoun, attributive or number between the verb and the object, then it is always correct to place 了 (le) directly after the verb.

- (pronoun)
- |                |                                      |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. 我星期五借了他的词典。 | I borrowed his dictionary on Friday. |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|
- (attributive)
- |                |                                  |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
| 2. 星期五我看了中国电影。 | I saw a Chinese movie on Friday. |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
- (number)
- |                |                                 |
|----------------|---------------------------------|
| 3. 我星期五去了两家商店。 | I went to two stores on Friday. |
|----------------|---------------------------------|

1. wǒ xīngqīwǔ jiè le tāde cídiǎn.
2. xīngqīwǔ wǒ kàn le zhōngguó diànyǐng.
3. wǒ xīngqīwǔ qù le liǎng jiā shāngdiàn.

Note: Using the particle 了 (le) is not the same as using past tense in English, it indicates an actions completion, which may occur in a future time frame.

明天	吃	了	早饭	以后	我们	就	走。
míngtiān	chī	le	zǎofàn	yǐhòu	wǒmen	jiù	zǒu。
Tomorro	eat	(completion)	breakfast	after	we	then	go.



## Negative Statements

To express an action that has not occurred, 了 (le) is not used, 没 (méi) or 没有 (méi yǒu) are placed directly before the verb and 了 (le) is omitted. In these type sentences 不 (bù) may not be used.

- |           |             |                                |
|-----------|-------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. 我没借词典。 | 1a. 我没有借词典。 | I did not borrow a dictionary. |
| 2. 我没看电影。 | 2a. 我没有看电影。 | I did not see a movie.         |
| 3. 我没去商店。 | 3a. 我没有去商店。 | I did not go to the store.     |

- |                         |                             |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. wǒ méi jiè cídiǎn.   | 1a. wǒ méiyǒu jiè cídiǎn.   |
| 2. wǒ méi kàn diànyǐng. | 2a. wǒ méiyǒu kàn diànyǐng. |
| 3. wǒ méi qù shāngdiàn. | 3a. wǒ méiyǒu qù shāngdiàn. |

No numeral-measure word examples are given below since it would be uncommon to express an idea such as "I did not go to two stores." This thought would be expressed in an affirmative way, for example, "I only went to one store."

- |                |                                  |               |
|----------------|----------------------------------|---------------|
| 4. 我没(有)借他的词典。 | I did not borrow his dictionary. | (pronoun)     |
| 5. 我没(有)看中文电影。 | I did not see a Chinese movie.   | (attributive) |

- |                                  |
|----------------------------------|
| 4. wǒ méi jiè tāde cídiǎn.       |
| 5. wǒ méi kàn zhōngwén diànyǐng. |

### negative statements with time phrases

- |              |                                     |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. 星期五我没去商店。 | I didn't go to the store on Friday. |
| 2. 我星期五没去商店。 | I didn't go to the store on Friday. |

- |                                  |
|----------------------------------|
| 1. xīngqīwǔ wǒ méi qù shāngdiàn. |
| 2. wǒ xīngqīwǔ méi qù shāngdiàn. |

## Questions

### 吗 questions

Since the verb is not followed by a pronoun, attributive or number; 了 (le) may be placed directly after the verb or just before 吗 (ma).

- |            |             |                              |
|------------|-------------|------------------------------|
| 1. 你借词典了吗? | 1a. 你借了词典吗? | Did you borrow a dictionary? |
| 2. 你看电影了吗? | 2a. 你看了电影吗? | Did you see a movie?         |
| 3. 你去商店了吗? | 3a. 你去了商店吗? | Did you go to the store?     |

- |                           |                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. nǐ jiè cídiǎn le ma?   | 1a. nǐ jiè le cídiǎn ma?   |
| 2. nǐ kàn diànyǐng le ma? | 2a. nǐ kàn le diànyǐng ma? |
| 3. nǐ qù shāngdiàn le ma? | 3a. nǐ qù le shāngdiàn ma? |

Since there is a pronoun, attributive or number between the verb and the object, then it is always correct to place 了 (le) directly after the verb.

- |               |  |
|---------------|--|
| 1. 你借了他的词典吗?  | Did you borrow his (pronoun) dictionary?   |
| 2. 你看了中文电影吗?  | Did you see a Chinese (attributive) movie? |
| 3. 你去了那两家商店吗? | Did you go to those two (number) stores?   |

1. nǐ jiè le tāde cídiǎn ma?
2. nǐ kàn le zhōngwén diànyǐng ma?
3. nǐ qù le nà liǎng jiā shāngdiàn ma?

#### 吗 questions with time phrases

Time phrases are always placed at the beginning of sentences or immediately following the subject. In the examples below, 你 (nǐ) is the subject.

- |                |  |
|----------------|--|
| 1. 昨天你去商店了吗?   | Did you go to the store yesterday?     |
| 2. 你昨天去了商店吗?   | Did you go to the store yesterday?     |
| 3. 你昨天看了中文电影吗? | Did you see a Chinese movie yesterday? |
| 4. 昨天你看了中文电影吗? | Did you see a Chinese movie yesterday? |
1. zuótiān nǐ qù shāngdiàn le ma?
  2. nǐ zuótiān qù le shāngdiàn ma?
  3. nǐ zuótiān kàn le zhōngwén diànyǐng ma?
  4. zuótiān nǐ kàn le zhōngwén diànyǐng ma?

#### 没有 (méi yǒu) questions

Adding 没有 (méi yǒu) to the end of a statement creates a yes-no question.

- |               |                                |
|---------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. 你借词典了没有?   | Did you borrow a dictionary?   |
| 2. 你借了词典没有?   | Did you borrow a dictionary?   |
| 3. 你借了他的词典没有? | Did you borrow his dictionary? |
1. nǐ jiè cídiǎn le méi yǒu?
  2. nǐ jiè le cídiǎn méi yǒu?



3. nǐ jiè le tāde cídiǎn méi yǒu?

### 没有 (méi yǒu) questions with time phrases

- |                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| 1. 昨天你去商店了没有?   | Did you go to the store yesterday?     |
| 2. 你昨天去了商店没有?   | Did you go to the store yesterday?     |
| 3. 你昨天看了中文电影没有? | Did you see a Chinese movie yesterday? |
| 4. 昨天你看了中文电影没有? | Did you see a Chinese movie yesterday? |

1. zuótiān nǐ qù shāngdiàn le méiyǒu?
2. nǐ zuótiān qù le shāngdiàn méiyǒu?
3. nǐ zuótiān kàn le zhōngwén diànyǐng méiyǒu?
4. zuótiān nǐ kàn le zhōngwén diànyǐng méiyǒu?

### 'question word' questions

- |                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| 1. 昨天下午你干什么了?   | What did you do yesterday afternoon?          |
| 2. 昨天下午你看什么电影了? | What movie did you watch yesterday afternoon? |
| 3. 昨天下午你看了什么电影? | What movie did you watch yesterday afternoon? |
1. zuótiān xiàwǔ nǐ gàn shénme le?
  2. zuótiān xiàwǔ nǐ kàn shénme diànyǐng le?
  3. zuótiān xiàwǔ nǐ kàn le shénme diànyǐng?

### Questioning the time an action was completed

When questioning the time an action occurred, use the same word order as statements that express time; except (time) question words are used in place of the time.

- |                |  |
|----------------|--|
| 1. 你什么时候去了上海?  | When did you go to Shanghai?                 |
| 2. 你什么时候去上海了?  | When did you go to Shanghai?                 |
| 3. 你几点钟去了商店?   | What time did you go to the store?           |
| 4. 你几点钟去商店了?   | What time did you go to the store?           |
| 5. 你昨天几点钟去了商店? | What time did you go to the store yesterday? |
| 6. 你昨天几点钟去商店了? | What time did you go to the store yesterday? |

1. nǐ shénmeshíhòu qù le Shànghǎi?
2. nǐ shénmeshíhòu qù Shànghǎi le?
3. nǐ jǐdiǎnzhōng qù le shāngdiàn?



4. nǐ jǐdiǎnzhōng qù shāngdiàn le?
5. nǐ zuótiān jǐdiǎnzhōng qù le shāngdiàn?
6. nǐ zuótiān jǐdiǎnzhōng qù shāngdiàn le?

#### 'affirmative - negative' questions

1. 他去没去上海? Did he go to Shanghai?
2. 他星期五去没去上海? Did he go to Shanghai on Friday?
3. 星期五你看没看电影? Did you watch a movie on Friday?

1. tā qù méi qù Shànghǎi?
2. xīngqīwǔ tā qù méi qù Shànghǎi?
3. xīngqīwǔ nǐ kàn méi kàn diànyǐng?

#### When 了 (le) isn't used when expressing completed actions

It is not always necessary to use 了 (le) to indicate a actions have been completed. For example, if a past action is a habitual one (example 1), when it there is no need to emphasize the completion of an action (examples 2 and 3) nor is it used in describing the circumstances in which something took place (example 4).

1. 以前他常常来看我。
  2. 去年他在学生宿舍住。
  3. 李明 2005 年大学毕业。
  4. 我去看他时候，他在家休息呢。
- 
1. yǐ qián tā cháng cháng lái kàn wǒ。
  2. qù nián tā zài xuéshēng sùshè zhù。
  3. Lǐ míng 2005 nián dàxué bìyè。
  4. wǒ qù kàn tā de shíhòu, tā zài jiā xiūxi ne。
- 
1. In the past, he often visited me.
  2. Last year, he lived in the student dormitory.
  3. Li Ming graduated from university in 2005.
  4. When I went to see him, he was at home resting.



## Action Verbs

### Actions (as part of past experience) (过)

过 (guò) goes directly after the verb and indicates that an action or experience took place in the past, but does not emphasize the completion of a specific action.

1. 我去过上海。 I have been to Shanghai.
2. 我看过这个电影。 I have seen this movie.

1. wǒ qù guò Shànghǎi.
2. wǒ kàn guò zhè gè diànyǐng.

### Past Actions with time phrases

To illustrate the difference between 了 (le) and 过 (guò) consider the following. In the first sentence, 过 (guò) is used to express the action (go) took place as part of a past action.

我今年去过上海。 I went to Shanghai this year. (However, I am back now.)

wǒ jīnnián qù guò Shànghǎi.

When 了 (le) is used, it expresses that the specific action (go) was completed.

他今年去了上海。 He went to Shanghai this year. (He is still there.)

tā jīnnián qù le Shànghǎi.

## Negative Statements

To express that an action has not occurred in the past, 过 (guò) is used with either 没 (méi) or 没有 (méi yǒu). 没 (méi) or 没有 (méi yǒu) are placed before the verb and 过 (guò) is placed directly after the verb.

1. 我没去过上海。 I have not been to Shanghai.
2. 我没有去过上海。 I have not been to Shanghai.

1. wǒ méi qù guò Shànghǎi.
2. wǒ méiyǒu qù guò Shànghǎi.

## Questions

过 (guò) is most commonly used to express “Have you ever ...” questions.

你吃过饺子吗? Have you (ever) eaten Chinese dumplings?

nǐ chī guò jiǎozi ma?

When more specific information is asked for, a 了 (le) sentence is used.

什么时候你去上海了?      When did you go to Shanghai?

shénme shíhòu nǐ qù Shànghǎi le?

### 吗 questions

你去过上海吗?      Have you (ever) been to Shanghai?

nǐ qù guò Shànghǎi ma?

### 没有 questions

When using 过 (guò), 没有(méi yǒu) may be added to the end of a statement to create a question.

你去过上海没有?      Have you (ever) been to Shanghai?

nǐ qù guò Shànghǎi méiyǒu?

### 'question word' questions

1. 你去过哪儿?      Where have you been?
2. 你去过什么地方?      What place(s) have you been to?
3. 你学习过什么?      What have you studied?
4. 谁去过上海?      Who has been to Shanghai?

1. nǐ qù guò nǎr?
2. nǐ qù guò shénme dìfang?
3. nǐ xuéxí guò shénme?
4. shéi qù guò Shànghǎi?

### 'affirmative - negative' questions

你去没去过上海?      Have you (ever) been to Shanghai?

nǐ qù méi qù guò Shànghǎi?



### Describing a situation

#### 是... 的 (shì... de)

The 是... 的 (shì... de) pattern is used to characterize a situation or to clarify an assumption. For instance, both of the sentences below mean: “He came to China yesterday.” The difference in usage is that sentence 2 addresses the situation:

Sentence 1 would be used to answer the question: “When did he arrive?”

Sentence 2 would be used to answer the question: “Why can’t he speak Chinese?”

1. 他昨天来中国了。 tā zuótiān lái zhōngguó le。
2. 他是昨天来中国的。 tā shì zuótiān lái zhōngguó de。

If a person had an unfamiliar accent, the question (3) and answer (4) below could be used:

3. 你是从哪儿来的? nǐ shì cóng nǎ lǐ lái de?
4. 我是从桂林来的。 wǒ shì cóng guīlín lái de。

Anytime this pattern is used with action, it always refers to some action that has already occurred. The sentence below, must refer to a past event. Sentence 5 below means, “When did you arrive in Beijing?”

5. 你是什么时候到北京的? nǐ shì shénme shíhòu dào běijīng de?

This sentence pattern is also used to ask about jobs. The sentence below means, “What is your job?”

6. 你是做什么工作的? nǐ shì zuò shénme gōng zuò de ?

## Unit 13

### Using 了(le) to indicate a change of state

#### New Words

1.	出差	chū chāi*	travel on business
2.	发烧	fā shāo	to have a fever
3.	饭	fàn	meal
4.	回来	huí lái**	come back
5.	卖	mài	sell
6.	卖完	mài wán	sell out of something
7.	票	piào	ticket
8.	下雨	xià yǔ	to rain

\* To express traveling for pleasure, 旅行 (lǚ xíng) or 旅游 (lǚ yóu) are used.

\*\* 回来 (huí lái) is a compound compliment of direction. For a detailed explanation of compound compliments refer to Unit 30.

In the examples below, 了(le) is used to indicate the state of affairs has changed. This usage is much more common in the spoken language than in the written form because the change of state is relative to the current situation of the speaker and listener. For instance, a person may look out the window and notice that it has started to rain and say, "下雨了 (xià yǔ le)", "it is raining" (it wasn't before). At dinner time you will hear, "饭好了! (fàn hǎo le!)", "dinner is ready!". The context of these sentences is very important. When using 了(le) to indicate a change of state, it indicates that (1) the state has actually changed, (2) it has changed relative to what a person thought it was or (3) that someone has made a new discovery.

If a mother has taken her son's temperature and announces that he has a fever, 了(le) would be used to indicate the change of state.

他发烧了。 tā fā shāo le。 He has a fever.

Suppose a child's parents were under the impression that their son was in his room doing his homework, and one of the parents realized that he was sleeping.

他睡觉了。 tā shuì jiào le。 He is sleeping.

Suppose two people usually play tennis on Monday afternoon but, unexpectedly, one of them has to go out of town on business. In this case, 了(le) would added to the end of the sentence to indicate the situation has changed, relative to what the listener had thought.

下个星期一我就出差了。 I will be going out town on business this next Monday.

xià gè xīngqīyī wǒ jiù chū chāi le。

If the person who didn't leave town ran into the traveling person on the following Wednesday, but didn't think the business trip would be so short, 了 (le) would be used to indicate surprise at seeing the traveling person.

你回来了! nǐ huí lái le。 You're back!.

If someone were describing their classmate to a friend, they may say, "He is tall" (sentence 1). If a relative had not seen a child for a long time and the child had gotten taller since their relatives had seen them, they would say "He has gotten taller." (sentence 2)

1. 他很高。 tā hěn gāo。 He is tall.
2. 他高了。 tā gāo le。 He has gotten taller.

If a person entered a room with a pot of tea and someone did not intend to drink tea, they would use the first sentence. If, after drinking some tea, they were offered a refill but didn't want to drink anymore tea, they could use the second sentence.

1. 我不喝。 wǒ bù hē。 I am not having any tea.
2. 我不喝了。 wǒ bù hē le。 I am not having any more tea.

**When 了 is used to indicate a change of state and a completed action:**

Sometimes, 了 (le) indicates both a completed action and a change of state. The occurrence of the tickets selling out has occurred and the state of the situation has changed, there are now no tickets and there were before.

上个星期票都卖完了。 Last Monday the tickets all sold out.

shàng gè xīngqī piào dōu mài wán le。

In the example above, 卖完 (mài wán) is a verb that is followed by a compliment of completion. 卖 (mài) is a verb, which means "to sell". 卖 (mài) is immediately followed 完 (wán), which is used as a verb 'compliment of results' to indicate the action of the verb has reached a state of completion. (Refer to Unit 22 for a full explanation of (verb compliments of results'.)



## Unit 14

### 'To Be' at a Place

This unit introduces how 在 (zài) is used as a verb to express “being at” a location and how it is used as the preposition “at”.

#### New Words

1. 书店            shū diàn            bookstore
2. 在                zài                    in, at

### 在 as a Verb

#### 'To Be' at a place

When used as a verb, 在 (zài) carries the “to be” meaning. Since there is a place following 在 (zài) and no action verb in the sentence, we know that 在 (zài) means “to be at” a location.

他在图书馆。      tā zài túshūguǎn.                    He is at the library.

If there were an action verb in the sentence, for example, 看 (kàn) (to read) as in the sentence 他在图书馆看报纸。(tā zài túshūguǎn kàn bàozhǐ.) then 在 (zài) would be the preposition “at”, which is explained in the next section of this unit.

#### Negative Statements

When 在 (zài) carries the meaning “to be”, the rules for placing 没 (méi) or 不 (bù) are the same as action verbs.

他不在图书馆。      tā bú zài túshūguǎn.                    He is not at the library.  
他没在图书馆。      tā méi zài túshūguǎn.                    He was not at the library.

If context allows, the place may be omitted, as in the answer below.

他在图书馆吗?      tā zài túshūguǎn ma?                    Is he at the library?  
他不在。              tā bú zài.                                      He is not.

If a completed action is being discussed, then 没 (méi) is used in the answer:

1. 昨天你在图书馆吗?      Were you at the library yesterday?
2. 我没在。                      I was not.

1. zuótiān nǐ zài túshūguǎn ma?
2. wǒ méi zài.



## Questions

### 吗 questions

他在图书馆吗? tā zài túshūguǎn ma? Is he at the library?

### 'question word' questions

谁在图书馆? shéi zài túshūguǎn? Who is at the library?

他在哪儿? tā zài nǎr? Where is he?

### 'affirmative - negative' questions

他在不在图书馆? tā zài bu zài túshūguǎn? Is he at the library?

### 'or' questions

他在图书馆还是在书店? Is he at the library or the bookstore?

tā zài túshūguǎn háishi zài shūdiàn?

## 在 (zài...) as the preposition "at"

### Habitual or Intentional Actions

When expressing the location where an action happens, 在 functions as the preposition "at". In the example below, there is an action verb in the sentence, so 在图书馆 (zài túshūguǎn) is a prepositional phrase meaning "at the library". The prepositional phrase, 在...place (zài...place), must go after the subject.

他在图书馆看报纸。 He is at the library reading a newspaper.

He reads newspapers at the library.

tā zài túshūguǎn kàn bàozhǐ.

When "在...place" (zài...place) prepositional phrases are used in action verb sentences that have time phrases, they may directly follow the subject or the time words. They may not be placed after the action verbs or at the beginning of the sentences. Both sentences below mean, "I watch TV at home on Thursdays".

1. 我星期四在家看电视。 wǒ xīngqīsì zài jiā kàn diànshì.

2. 星期四我在家看电视。 xīngqīsì wǒ zài jiā kàn diànshì.



### Actions in Progress

In the sentence, 我正在看电视 (wǒ zhèngzài kàn diànshì.) ("I am watching TV"), we know that 正在(zhèngzài) is used to indicate that action is in progress because it comes before a verb. If 在(zài) comes before a place then "在...place" (zài...place) is a prepositional phrase and 正(zhèng) is used to indicate the action of the verb (看(kàn) is in progress. In the examples below, 在家(zài jiā) and 在图书馆(zài túshūguǎn) are prepositional phrases that indicate the locations of the actions and 正(zhèng) tells us that the action is in progress.

1. 我正在家看电视。 I am at home watching television.
  2. 他正在图书馆看书。 He is at the at the library reading.
- 
1. wǒ zhèng zài jiā kàn diànshì.
  2. tā zhèng zài túshūguǎn kànshū.

### Completed actions

In action verb sentences, the prepositional phrase, 在...place (zài...place), must go after the subject. The following example means, "I borrowed a book at the library."

我在图书馆借了书。 wǒ zài túshūguǎn jiè le shū.

When "在...place" (zài...place) prepositional phrases are used in action verb sentences that have time phrases, the prepositional phrase may directly follow the subject or the time phrase. It may not be after the action verb or at the beginning or the sentence. The following examples mean, "I borrowed two books at the library on Saturday."

1. 我星期六在图书馆借了两本书。
  2. 星期六我在图书馆借了两本书。
- 
1. wǒ xīngqīliù zài túshūguǎn jiè le liǎng běn shū.
  2. xīngqīliù wǒ zài túshūguǎn jiè le liǎng běn shū.

### Negative Statements

To make a negative statement, 不(bù) or 没(méi) is placed before the prepositional phrase beginning with 在(zài).

1. 我不在北京工作。 I don't work in Beijing.
2. 星期四我不在家看电视。 I don't watch TV at home on Thursdays.
3. 我昨天没在家看电视，我在朋友家看电视。 I didn't watch TV at home yesterday, I watched TV at my friend's home.



1. wǒ bú zài Běijīng gōngzuò.
2. xīngqīsi wǒ bú zài jiā kàn diànshì.
3. wǒ zuótiān méi zài jiā kàn diànshì, wǒ zài péngyou jiā kàn diànshì.

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

1. 他在图书馆看书吗? Is he at the library reading?  
Does he read at the library?
2. 他正在图书馆看书吗? Is he at the library reading (now)?
3. 你昨天在学校干什么了? What did you do at school yesterday?

1. tā zài túshūguǎn kànshū ma?
2. tā zhèngzài túshūguǎn kànshū ma?
3. nǐ zuótiān zài xuéxiào gàn shénme le?

#### 'question word' questions

1. 谁在图书馆看书? Who reads at the library?
2. 他在哪儿看书? Where does he read?
3. 你在什么地方看书? Where do you read?
4. 他正在哪儿看书? Where is he reading (now)?
5. 他正在什么地方看书? Where is he reading (now)?

1. shéi zài túshūguǎn kàn shū?
2. tā zài nǎr kàn shū?
3. nǐ zài shénme dìfang kànshū?
4. tā zhèngzài nǎr kànshū?
5. tā zhèngzài shénme dìfang kànshū?

#### 'affirmative - negative' questions

1. 他在不在图书馆? Is he at the library?
2. 星期四你在不在家看电视? Do you watch TV at home on Thursdays?
3. 你昨天在没在家看电视? Did you watch TV at home yesterday?

1. tā zài bu zài túshūguǎn?
2. xīngqīsi nǐ zài bu zài jiā kàn diànshì?
3. nǐ zuótiān zài méi zài jiā kàn diànshì?



## Unit 15

### There is (there exists) (有, 在, 是)

This unit introduces how to express locations. Relative locations are introduced as well as some place names.

#### New Words

1.	把	bǎ	measure word for chair
2.	北边	běi biān	north side
3.	北面	běi miàn	north side
4.	边	biān	side
5.	餐馆	cān guǎn	restaurant
6.	东边	dōng biān	east side
7.	东面	dōng miàn	east side
8.	对面	duì miàn	opposite
9.	俄罗斯	é luó sī	Russia
10.	后边	hòu biān	behind
11.	后面	hòu miàn	behind
12.	建筑	jiàn zhù	building (noun)
13.	课桌	kè zhuō	school desk for students
14.	面	miàn	side, surface
15.	南边	nán biān	south side
16.	南面	nán miàn	south side
17.	旁边	páng biān	beside
18.	前边	qián biān	front side
19.	前面	qián miàn	front side
20.	西边	xī biān	west side
21.	西面	xī miàn	west side
22.	学院	xué yuàn	campus
23.	医院	yī yuàn	hospital
24.	椅子	yǐ zi	chair
25.	右边	yòu biān	right side
26.	右面	yòu miàn	right side
27.	邮局	yóu jú	post office
28.	在	zài	at, there exists, there is
29.	张	zhāng	measure word for table
30.	中间	zhōng jiān	middle, between

- |     |    |          |           |
|-----|----|----------|-----------|
| 31. | 左边 | zuǒ biān | left side |
| 32. | 左面 | zuǒ miàn | left side |

### Additional Phrases

桌子的左边	zhuōzi de zuǒbiān	left side of the desk
桌子的右边	zhuōzi de yòu biān	right side of the desk
图书馆的旁边	túshūguǎn de pángbiān	next to the library
医院的北边	yīyuàn de běi biān	north of the library
学校的对面	xuéxiào de duìmiàn	opposite the school

### There is (there exists) (有, 在, 是)

English sentences that begin with 'there is', meaning 'there exists', are expressed using 有(yǒu), 在(zài), and 是(shì).

(person or thing)	(在)	(location)
(location)	(有 / 是)	(person or thing)

1. 椅子**在**桌子的左边。
2. 桌子的左边**有**一把椅子。
3. 桌子的后边**是**一把椅子。
4. 那把椅子**在**桌子的左边。
5. 你的桌子的前边**有**一把椅子。
6. 桌子的左边**是**你的椅子。
7. 中国的北边**是**俄罗斯。

1. There is a chair on the left side of the desk.
2. There is a chair on the left side of the desk.
3. There is a chair behind the desk.
4. That chair is on the left side of the desk.
5. There is a chair in front of your desk.
6. Your chair is on the left side of the desk.
7. Russia is north of China.

1. yǐzi **zài** zhuōzi de zuǒbiān.
2. zhuōzi de zuǒbiān **yǒu** yì bǎ yǐzi.
3. zhuōzi de hòubiān **shì** yì bǎ yǐzi.
4. nà bǎ yǐzi **zài** zhuōzi de zuǒbiān.
5. nǐde zhuōzi de qián biān **yǒu** yì bǎ yǐzi.
6. zhuōzi de zuǒbiān **shì** nǐde yǐzi.



7. zhōngguó de běibiān **shì** èluósī.

**Beside**

English sentences that say one thing or person is next to another thing or person use the following pattern.

(person or thing) (在) (person's or thing's side)

(person's or thing's side) (有 / 是) (person or thing)

1. 宿舍**在**图书馆的旁边。
2. 图书馆的旁边**有**一个宿舍。
3. 图书馆的旁边**是**一个宿舍。
4. 那个宿舍**在**图书馆的旁边。
5. 我们学校图书馆的旁边**有**一个宿舍。
6. 图书馆的旁边**是**我的宿舍。

1. There is a dormitory beside the library.
2. There is a dormitory beside the library.
3. There is a dormitory beside the library.
4. That dormitory is beside the library.
5. There is a dormitory beside our school's library.
6. My dormitory is beside the library.

1. sùshè **zài** túshūguǎn de pángbiān.
2. túshūguǎn de pángbiān **yǒu** yí gè sùshè.
3. túshūguǎn de pángbiān **shì** yí gè sùshè.
4. nà gè sùshè **zài** túshūguǎn de pángbiān.
5. wǒmen xuéxiào túshūguǎn de pángbiān **yǒu** yí gè sùshè.
6. túshūguǎn de pángbiān **shì** wǒde sùshè.

Usage note for 有 (yǒu) and 是 (shì): If there are several people or things at a place and the one you are talking about is one of many, 有 (yǒu) is used. If there is only one thing at a place, then 是 (shì) is used. For instance, If there were several people standing beside a car and the speaker wanted to say, "My teachers is beside that car." then then 有 (yǒu) is used. 车旁边有我的老师。(chē pángbiān yǒu wǒde lǎoshī。 ) If there was only one person standing by the car, 是 (shì) would be used. 车旁边是我的老师。(chē pángbiān shì wǒde lǎoshī。 )



## Opposite (对面)

在 is optional in the following sentence pattern.

在 (opposite a thing or person) (有 / 是) (thing or person)

1. 图书馆的对面 (有 / 是) 一个宿舍。
2. 在图书馆的对面 (有 / 是) 一个宿舍。
3. 我家的对面 (有 / 是) 一所学校。
4. 在我家的对面 (有 / 是) 一所学校。

1. There is a dormitory opposite the library.
2. There is a dormitory opposite the library.
3. There is a school opposite my home.
4. There is a school opposite my home.

1. túshūguǎn de duìmiàn (yǒu / shì) yí gè sùshè.
2. zài túshūguǎn de duìmiàn (yǒu / shì) yí gè sùshè.
3. wǒ jiā de duìmiàn (yǒu / shì) yì suǒ xuéxiào.
4. zài wǒ jiā de duìmiàn (yǒu / shì) yì suǒ xuéxiào.

## Between

Both example A and B mean: “There is a dormitory between the library and the cafeteria.”

Example A:

(person or thing)	在	(person or thing)	和	(person or thing)	中间
宿舍	在	图书馆	和	餐馆	中间
sùshè	zài	túshūguǎn	hé	cānguǎn	zhōngjiān

Example B:

在	(person or thing)	和	(person or thing)	中间是	(person or thing)
在	图书馆	和	餐馆	中间是	一个宿舍。
zài	túshūguǎn	hé	cānguǎn	zhōngjiān shì	yí ge sùshè

1. 在图书馆和餐馆中间是一个宿舍。
2. 那个宿舍在图书馆和餐馆中间。



1. My dormitory is between the library and the cafeteria.
2. My dormitory is between the library and the cafeteria.

1. **zài túshūguǎn hé cānguǎn zhōngjiān shì yí gè sùshè .**
2. **nà gè sùshè zài túshūguǎn hé cānguǎn zhōngjiān.**

### Negative Statements

To make negative statements, 没有(méi yǒu), 不在(bú zài), and 不是(bú shì) are used. In these cases, stating that something "is not" in a place, measure words are not used. \*When expressing that 'nothing' exists in a specific place, 不是(bú shì) is not used, 没有(méi yǒu) is used (sentence 8).

### There is not

(person or thing)	(不在)	(location)
(location)	(没有 / 不是)	(person or thing)

1. 椅子**不在**桌子的左边。
2. 桌子的左边**没有**椅子。
3. 桌子的后边**不是**椅子。
4. 那把椅子**不在**桌子的左边。
5. 你桌子的前边**没有**椅子。
6. 桌子的左边**不是**你的椅子。
7. 中国**不在**俄罗斯的北边。
- \*8. 桌子的左边**没有**东西。

1. There is not a chair on the left side of the desk.
2. There is not a chair on the left side of the desk.
3. There is not a chair behind the desk.
4. That chair is not on the left side of the desk.
5. There is not a chair in front of your desk.
6. Your chair is not on the left side of the desk.
7. China is not north of Russia.
- \*8. There is nothing on the left side of the desk.

1. yǐzi **búzài** zhuōzi de zuǒbiān.
2. zhuōzi de zuǒbiān **méiyǒu** yǐzi.
3. zhuōzi de zuǒbiān **bú shì** yǐzi.
4. nà bǎ yǐzi **búzài** zhuōzi de zuǒbiān.
5. nǐde zhuōzi de qiánbiān **méiyǒu** yǐzi.



6. zhuōzi de zuǒbiān **búshì** nǐde yǐzi.
7. zhōngguó **búzài** èluósī de běi biān.
- \*8. zhuōzi de zuǒbiān **méiyǒu** dōngxī.

### Is not beside

English sentences that say one thing or person is not next to another thing or person use the following pattern. \*When expressing that 'nothing' exists in a specific place, 不是 (bú shì) is not used, 没有(méi yǒu) is used (sentence 7).

<b>(person or thing)</b>	<b>(不在)</b>	<b>(location)</b>
<b>(location)</b>	<b>(没有 / 不是)</b>	<b>(person or thing)</b>

1. 宿舍**不在**图书馆的旁边。
2. 图书馆的旁边**没有**宿舍。
3. 图书馆的旁边**不是**宿舍。
4. 那个宿舍**不在**图书馆的旁边。
5. 我们学校图书馆的旁边**没有**宿舍。
6. 图书馆的旁边**不是**我的宿舍。
- \*7. 图书馆的旁边**没有**建筑。

1. There is not a dormitory beside the library.
2. There is not a dormitory beside the library.
3. There is not a dormitory beside the library.
4. That dormitory is not beside the library.
5. There is not a dormitory beside our school's library.
6. My dormitory is not beside the library.
7. There is nothing (no building) beside the library.

1. sùshè **búzài** túshūguǎn de pángbiān.
2. túshūguǎn de pángbiān **méiyǒu** sùshè.
3. túshūguǎn de pángbiān **búshì** sùshè.
4. nà ge sùshè **búzài** túshūguǎn de pángbiān.
5. wǒmen xuéxiào túshūguǎn de pángbiān **méiyǒu** sùshè.
6. túshūguǎn de pángbiān **búshì** wǒde sùshè.
7. túshūguǎn de pángbiān **méiyǒu** jiànzhù.

### Is not opposite

English sentences that say one thing or person is not opposite another thing or person use the following pattern. \*When expressing that 'nothing' exists in a specific place, 不是 (bú shì) is not used, 没有(méi yǒu) is used (sentence 5).



(opposite a thing or person) (没有 / 不是) (thing or person)

在 (opposite a thing or person) (没有 / 不是) (thing or person)

1. 图书馆的对面 (没有 / 不是) 宿舍。
2. 在图书馆的对面 (没有 / 不是) 宿舍。
3. 我家的对面 (没有 / 不是) 学校。
4. 在我家的对面 (没有 / 不是) 学校。
- \*5. 我家的对面没有建筑。

1. There is not a dormitory opposite the library.
2. There is not a dormitory opposite the library.
3. There is not a school opposite my home.
4. There is not a school opposite my home.
- \*5. There is nothing (no building) opposite my home.

1. túshūguǎn de duìmiàn (méiyǒu / búshì) sùshè.
2. zài túshūguǎn de duìmiàn (méiyǒu / búshì) sùshè.
3. wǒ jiā de duìmiàn (méiyǒu / búshì) xuéxiào.
4. zài wǒ jiā de duìmiàn (méiyǒu / búshì) xuéxiào.
- \*5. wǒ jiā de duìmiàn méiyǒu jiànzhù.

### Is not between

不在(bú zài) and 不是(bú shì) are used to express that something is "not" between two other things. \*In these sentence patterns, 没有(méiyǒu) is only used to express "nothing" is between two things (sentence 5).

(person or thing) (不在) (person or thing) (和) (person or thing) (中间)

(在) (person or thing) (和) (person or thing) (中间) (不是) (person or thing)

1. 宿舍不在图书馆和餐馆中间。
2. 在图书馆和餐馆中间不是宿舍。
3. 我的宿舍不在图书馆和餐馆中间。
4. 那个宿舍不在图书馆和餐馆中间。
- \*5. 在图书馆和餐馆中间没有建筑。

1. There is not a dormitory between the library and the cafeteria.
2. There is not a dormitory between the library and the cafeteria.
3. My dormitory is not between the library and the cafeteria.



4. That dormitory is not between the library and the cafeteria.
- \*5. There is nothing between the cafeteria and the library.

1. sùshè **bùzài** túshūguǎn **hé** cānguǎn **zhōngjiān**.
2. zài túshūguǎn **hé** cānguǎn **zhōngjiān** **búshì** sùshè.
3. wǒde sùshè **búzài** túshūguǎn **hé** cānguǎn **zhōngjiān**.
4. nà ge sùshè **búzài** túshūguǎn **hé** cānguǎn **zhōngjiān**.
- \*5. **zài** túshūguǎn **hé** cānguǎn **zhōngjiān** **méiyǒu** jiànzhù.

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

1. 学校西边**是**邮局吗? Is there a post office west of the school?
2. 医院**在**邮局的对面吗? Is the hospital opposite the post office?

1. xuéxiào xī biān **shì** yóujú ma?
2. yīyuàn **zài** yóujú de duìmiàn ma?

#### affirmative-negative questions

- 学校西边**是不是**邮局? Is there a post office west of the school?

xuéxiào xī biān **shì bu shì** yóujú?

#### question word questions

1. 图书馆**在**哪儿? Where is the library?
2. 学校的西边**是**什么地方? What (place) is west of the school?
3. 学校的旁边**有**什么? What is beside the school?

1. túshūguǎn **zài** nǎr?
2. xuéxiào de xī biān **shì** shénme dìfang?
3. xuéxiào de pángbiān **yǒu** shénme?



## Unit 16

### Over / On / Under / Below / In / Out

This unit introduces more ways to express locations.

#### New Words

1.	车	chē	vehicle (car, bike, bus)
2.	出租汽车	chū zū qì chē	taxi
3.	大门	dà mén	main gate
4.	地	dì	ground
5.	飞机	fēi jī	airplane
6.	公共汽车	gōng gòng qì chē	public bus
7.	火车	huǒ chē	train
8.	里边	lǐ biān	in, inside
9.	里面	lǐ mian	in, inside
10.	楼房	lóu fáng	multi-story building
11.	路	lù	road
12.	上边	shàng biān	top side
13.	上面	shàng miàn	top side
14.	书包	shū bāo	book bag, backpack
15.	书架	shū jià	bookshelf
16.	外边	wài biān	outside
17.	外面	wài miàn	outside
18.	下边	xià biān	under, below, bottom side
19.	下面	xià miàn	under, below, bottom side
20.	页	yè	page

#### Additional Phrases

在路上	zài lù shang	on the street (walking)
在车上	zài chē shang	in a vehicle / on a bike
在自行车上	zài zìxíngchē shang	on a bike
在出租汽车上	zài chūzūqìchē shang	in a taxi
在火车上	zài huǒchē shang	on a train
在楼上	zài lóu shang	upstairs
在楼下	zài lóu xià	downstairs
在地上	zài dì shang	on the (ground / floor)
在黑板上	zài hēibǎn shang	on the blackboard
在 88 页上	zài bāshíbā yè shang	on page 88



在书包里	zài shūbāo lǐ	in the book bag
在书店里	zài shūdiàn lǐ	in the bookstore
在大门外	zài dàmén wài	outside the main gate
在宿舍外	zài sùshè wài	outside the dormitory

### Over / On / Under / Below / In / Out

Depending on context, 上 (shàng) means on, over, or above and 下 (xià) means under or below. In the examples below, 边 (biān) and 面 (miàn) are optional because they are implied by context.

Since 在 (zài) is not followed by a verb we know that, in these examples, 在 (zài) means "to be at".

( person or thing )                      ( 在 )                      ( location )

1. 我的书在桌子上 (边/面)。
2. 书架在桌子上 (边/面)。
3. 书在桌子下 (边/面)。
4. 我的词典在书包里 (边/面)。
5. 老师在教室外 (边/面)。

1. My book is on the desk.
2. There is a bookshelf over/on the desk.
3. There are/is book(s) under/below the desk.
4. My dictionary is in the book bag.
5. There is a teacher outside the classroom.

1. wǒde shū zài zhuōzi shàng (biān/miàn).
2. shūjià zài zhuōzi shàng (biān/miàn).
3. shū zài zhuōzi xià (biān/miàn).
4. wǒde cídiǎn zài shū bāo lǐ (biān/miàn).
5. lǎoshī zài jiāoshì wài (biān/miàn).

In these examples, 有 (yǒu) is used to express 'there is', meaning 'there exists'.

( location )                      ( 有 )                      ( person or thing )

1. 桌子上 (边/面) 有我的书。
2. 桌子上 (边/面) 有书架。
3. 桌子下 (边/面) 有书。
4. 包里 (边/面) 有我的词典。



5. 教室外 (边/面) 有老师。

1. My book is on the desk.
2. There is a bookshelf over/on the desk.
3. There are/is book(s) under/below the desk.
4. My dictionary is in the book bag.
5. There is a teacher outside the classroom.

1. zhuōzi shàng (biān/miàn) yǒu wǒde shū.
2. zhuōzi shàng (biān/miàn) yǒu shūjià.
3. zhuōzi xià (biān/miàn) yǒu shū.
4. bāolǐ (biān/miàn) yǒu wǒde cídiǎn.
5. jiāoshì wài (biān/miàn) yǒu lǎoshī.

### Negative Statements

The make a negative statement, 不 (bù) is placed before 在 (zài).

( person or thing )                  (不在)                  ( location )

1. 你的书不在桌子上 (边/面)。
2. 书架不在桌子上 (边/面)。
3. 你的书不在桌子下 (边/面)。
4. 我的词典不在书包里 (边/面)。
5. 老师不在教室外 (边/面)。

1. Your book is not on the desk.
2. There is not a bookshelf over/on the desk.
3. Your book is not under the desk.
4. My dictionary is not in the book bag.
5. The teacher is not outside the classroom.

1. nǐde shū búzài zhuōzi shàng (biān/miàn).
2. shūjià búzài zhuōzi shàng (biān/miàn).
3. nǐde shū búzài zhuōzi xià (biān/miàn).
4. wǒde cídiǎn búzài shūbāo lǐ (biān/miàn).
5. lǎoshī búzài jiāoshì wài (biān/miàn).



The make a negative statement, 没 (méi) is placed before 有 (yǒu).

( location )

(没有)

( person or thing )

1. 桌子上 (边/面) 没有我的书。
2. 桌子上 (边/面) 没有书架。
3. 桌子下 (边/面) 没有你的书。
4. 包里 (边/面) 没有我的词典。
5. 教室外 (边/面) 没有老师。

1. My book is not on the desk.
2. There is not a bookshelf over/on the desk.
3. Your book is not under the desk.
4. My dictionary is not in the book bag.
5. There is not a teacher outside the classroom.

1. zhuōzi shàng (biān/miàn) méiyǒu wǒde shū.
2. zhuōzi shàng (biān/miàn) méiyǒu shūjià.
3. zhuōzi xià (biān/miàn) méiyǒu nǐde shū.
4. bāolǐ (biān/miàn) méiyǒu wǒde cídiǎn.
5. jiāoshì wài (biān/miàn) méiyǒu lǎoshī.

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

1. 我的书在桌子上 (边/面) 吗? Is my book is on the desk?
2. 桌子上 (边/面) 有我的书吗? Is my book is on the desk?

1. wǒde shū zài zhuōzi shàng (biān/miàn) ma?
2. zhuōzi shàng (biān/miàn) yǒu wǒde shū ma?

#### 'affirmative-negative' questions

1. 桌子上 (边/面) 有没有我的书? Is my book is on the desk?
2. 我的书在不在桌子上 (边/面)? Is my book is on the desk?

1. zhuōzi shàng (biān/miàn) yǒu méi yǒu wǒde shū?
2. wǒde shū zài bu zài zhuōzi shàng (biān/miàn)?



### 'questions word' questions

In the questions below, 东西 (dōng xi) is optional.

1. 桌子上 (边/面) 有什么东西?                      What is on the desk?
  2. 什么东西在桌子上 (边/面)?                      What is on the desk?
- 
1. zhuōzi shàng (biān/miàn) yǒu shénme dōngxi?
  2. shénme dōngxi zài zhuōzi shàng (biān/miàn)?



## Unit 17

### Actions in a Continuing State (着)

This unit discusses actions that have resulted in continuing states and actions that are continuing.

#### New Words

1.	摆	bǎi	to place things for the purpose decorating
2.	抱	bào	to carry (in one's arms)
3.	背	bēi	to carry on one's back
4.	草	cǎo	grass
5.	草地	cǎo dì	the ground covered with grass growing on it
6.	穿	chuān	to wear, to put on (clothing)
7.	床	chuáng	bed
8.	窗台	chuāng tái	window sill
9.	带	dài	to take, to lead
10.	戴	dài	to wear (hat, glasses, tie)
11.	放	fàng	to put something somewhere
12.	挂	guà	to hang something up
13.	关	guān	close
14.	句子	jù zi	sentence
15.	开	kāi	open, turn on
16.	姥姥	lǎo lao	maternal grandmother
17.	门	mén	door, gate
18.	门口	mén kǒu	door, gate
19.	念	niàn	to read aloud
20.	牌子	pái zi	sign
21.	墙	qiáng	wall
22.	裙子	qún zi	dress, skirt
25.	台灯	tái dēng	table lamp
26.	躺	tǎng	to lie down or recline
27.	贴	tiē	to stick something to another thing
28.	外衣	wài yī	coat
29.	眼镜	yǎn jìng	glasses
30.	爷爷	yéye	paternal grandfather
31.	站	zhàn	to stand

32.	照相机	zhào xiàng jī	camera
33.	着	zhe	aspect particle indicating a continuing state or action
34.	坐	zuò	to sit

The examples below show the difference between “actions in progress” and “continuing states”. In sentence 1, 在 (zài) indicates that an action is in progress, the subject is actively doing something. In sentence 2, 着 (zhe) indicates a state is continuing. For example:

- 他在穿外衣。 tā zài chuān wàiyī。
- 他穿着外衣。 tā chuān zhe wàiyī。

- He is putting on a coat.
- He is wearing a coat.

### **Actions that have resulted in a continuing state 着 (zhe)**

#### **Actions that are continuing 着 (zhe)**

To indicate that that an action is continuing or has resulted in a continuing state, the particle 着(zhe) is placed directly after the verb with nothing in between. If the verb takes an object, then the object must directly follow 着 (zhe) with nothing in between. The particle 了 and adverbs 正在 and 在 may not be used in these types of sentences. In these examples, the action of the verb has resulted in the subject being in a continuing state.

The door is open.

<b>subject</b>	<b>predicate verb</b>	<b>着</b>
门	开	着
mén	kāi	zhe
<b>the door</b>	<b>open</b>	<b>continuing state</b>

The dictionary has been put on the desk. (and is still there)

<b>subject</b>	<b>predicate verb</b>	<b>着</b>	<b>object</b>
桌子上	放	着	一本词典
zhuōzi shàng	fàng	zhe	yì běn cídiǎn
<b>On the desk</b>	<b>put</b>	<b>continuing state</b>	<b>a dictionary</b>



In the examples below, the action of the verb is continuing.

The teacher is standing.

<b>subject</b>	<b>predicate verb</b>	<b>着</b>	
老师	站	着	
lǎo shī	zhàn	zhe	
<b>teacher</b>	<b>stand</b>	continuing action	

Mother is carrying a child.

<b>subject</b>	<b>predicate verb</b>	<b>着</b>	<b>object</b>
妈妈	抱	着	孩子
māmā	bào	zhe	hái zi
<b>Mother</b>	<b>carry</b>	continuing action	<b>child</b>

Unless context or time words indicate otherwise, the action in these sentences is generally assumed to be happening at the current time. Continuing actions also may occur habitually, in the past or in the future; as in the examples below.

#### **Habitual :**

1. 早上七点图书馆的门开着。 The library door is opened at 7 am in the morning.
2. 晚上九点图书馆的门关着。 The library door is closed at 9 pm at night.

1. zǎo shang qī diǎn tú shū guǎn de mén kāi zhe。
2. wǎn shang jiǔ diǎn tú shū guǎn de mén guān zhe。

**Past :** I took a camera yesterday.

昨天我带着照相机。 zuótiān wǒ dài zhe zhàoxiàngjī。

**Future :** I will take a camera tomorrow.

明天我会带着照相机。 míngtiān wǒ huì dài zhe zhào xiàng jī。

#### **Negative Statements**

To state that an action is not continuing, 没 (méi) or 没有 (méi yǒu) are placed before the predicate verb.

1. 学生没站着，他们坐着。

2. 昨天我没有带着照相机。

1. xuéshēng méi zhàn zhe, tāmen zuò zhe。

2. zuótiān wǒ méi yǒu dài zhe zhàoxiàngjī。

1. The students are not standing, they are sitting.

2. Yesterday, I did not take a camera.

### Questions

To ask a yes-no question about a continuing action or a continuing state in a sentence that uses 着 (zhe), 没有 (méi yǒu) or 吗 (ma) are placed at the end of the sentence. To answer affirmatively, state the verb followed by 着呢 (zhe ne). 没有 (méi yǒu) questions may not be answered affirmatively using 对 (duì) or 是 (shì). 吗 (ma) questions may be answered affirmatively using 对 (duì) or 是 (shì), however, 对 (duì) or 是 (shì) may not be used as one-word answers. They are generally followed by a complete sentence.

Did you bring a Chinese dictionary?

你带着汉语词典没有?      nǐ dài zhe hànyǔ cídiǎn méi yǒu?

你带着汉语词典吗?      nǐ dài zhe hànyǔ cídiǎn ma?

negative answer      没有。      méi yǒu

negative answer      没有, 我没带着。      méi yǒu, wǒ méi dài zhe。

negative answer      没带。      méi dài。

affirmative answer      带着呢。      dài zhe ne。

The affirmative answers below are grammatically correct but they are too long to be used in common conversation. The two examples below mean, “Yes, I did bring a camera”.

对, 我带着汉语词典。      duì, wǒ dài zhe hànyǔ cídiǎn。

是, 我带着汉语词典。      shì, wǒ dài zhe hànyǔ cídiǎn。

### Example Sentences

1. 墙上贴着地图。      qiáng shàng tiē zhe dìtú。

2. 门口贴着一个牌子。      mén kǒu tiē zhe yí gè páizi。

3. 墙上挂着画。      qiáng shàng guà zhe huà。

4. 窗台上摆着花。      chuāng tái shàng bǎi zhe huā。

5. 窗台上放着花。      chuāng tái shàng fàng zhe huā。



1. A map is taped to the wall.
2. A sign is glued on the door.
3. A picture is hanging on the wall.
4. Some flowers are (displayed) on the window sill.
5. Some flowers are lying on the window sill.

In the above sentences 1 – 3, the character 贴 (tiē) is used to describe things that are “stuck” to other things, for instance, when something is glued or taped to another thing. To express “hanging” something, such as a picture or clock, 挂 (guà) is used. In sentences 4 and 5) the character 摆 (bǎi) is means “to be displayed” and the character 放 (fàng) means “to put”. If someone where to put a vase of flowers on a window sill with the intention of decorating, they would use 摆 (bǎi). If someone had laid down a bunch of flowers on the window sill, simply as a place to put them for the moment, 放 (fàng) would be used.

- |            |                         |
|------------|-------------------------|
| 6. 她穿着新裙子。 | tā chuān zhe xīn qúnzi。 |
| 7. 他戴着眼镜。  | tā dài zhe yǎnjìng。     |
| 8. 他戴着帽子。  | tā dài zhe màozi。       |
| 9. 窗户关着。   | chuāng hù guān zhe。     |
| 10. 台灯开着。  | tái dēng kāi zhe。       |

6. She is wearing a new dress.
7. He is wearing glasses.
8. He is wearing a hat.
9. The window is closed.
10. The table lamp is on.

In the above sentences 7 and 8), when expressing “to wear” articles of clothing, 穿 (chuān) is used; however, 穿 (chuān) is not used for everything one can wear. For wearing some things, such as hats, glasses, and gloves; 戴 (dài) is used. When referring to items that are worn, but are tied, for example a necktie, 戴 (dài) or 系 (jì) may used.

- |                |                                  |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
| 11. 学生们坐着。     | xuéshēng men zuò zhe。            |
| 12. 爷爷睡着。      | yéye shuì zhe。                   |
| 13. 门开着，电视也开着。 | mén kāi zhe, diànshì yě kāi zhe。 |
| 14. 那个学生背着书包。  | nà gè xuéshēng bēi zhe shūbāo。   |
| 15. 他走着去学校。    | tā zǒu zhe qù xuéxiào。           |

11. The students are sitting.
12. Grandpa (paternal) is sleeping.

13. The door is open, the TV is also on.
14. That student is carrying a book bag.
15. He is walking to school.

In sentence 14, 背 (bēi) is used to indicate someone is carrying something on their back, such as a backpack. In China, a backpack is usually referred to as a “bookbag” 书包 (shū bāo).

- |                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| 16. 老师坐着，休息。         | lǎoshī zuò zhe, xiūxi。                           |
| 17. 姥姥在床上躺着。         | lǎolao zài chuáng shàng tǎng zhe。                |
| 18. 姥姥躺着没有？          | lǎolao tǎng zhe méi yǒu?                         |
| 19. 她没在床上躺着，<br>她坐着。 | tā méi zài chuáng shàng<br>tǎng zhe, tā zuò zhe。 |
| 20. 门开着没有？           | mén kāi zhe méi yǒu?                             |

16. The teacher is sitting and resting.
17. Grandmother (maternal) is lying on the bed.
18. Is Grandmother (maternal) lying on the bed?
19. She isn't lying on the bed, she is sitting.
20. Is the door open?

- |                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| 21. 妈妈带着孩子们去商店。   | māmā dài zhe háizimen<br>qù shāngdiàn。         |
| 22. 他带着我们念黑板上的句子。 | tā dài zhe wǒmen niàn<br>hēibǎn shàng de jùzi。 |
| 23. 他在后面站着。       | tā zài hòumian zhàn zhe。                       |
| 24. 地图在墙上挂着。      | dìtú zài qiáng shàng<br>guà zhe。               |
| 25. 他们都在草地上坐着。    | tāmen dōu zài cǎodì<br>shàng zuò zhe。          |

21. Mother is taking the children to the store.
22. The teacher led us while we spoke the sentence on the board.
23. He is standing in the back.
24. The map is hanging on the wall.
25. They all are sitting on the grass.

In sentence 21, 带 (dài) means “to take” or “to lead”. For instance, if a person is giving another person a ride in their car or leading another person to a place (because they don't know where it is). In sentence 22, 带 (dài) is used to express that the students are repeating (aloud) what the teacher is saying.



## Unit 18

### How Often / How Many Times

This unit introduces statements and questions regarding "how often" actions or events occur as well as how to express "how many times" actions have occurred.

#### New Words

1.	常常	cháng cháng	often
2.	次	cì	(number of) times
3.	从不	cóng bù	never
4.	度假	dù jià	vacation
5.	锻炼	duàn liàn	to do physical exercise
6.	公园	gōng yuán	park
7.	很少	hěn shǎo	not much, not many, not often
8.	经常	jīng cháng	often
9.	旅游	lǚ yóu	to travel for pleasure
10.	跑步	pǎo bù	run
11.	跳舞	tiào wǔ	to dance
12.	通常	tōng cháng	regular, ordinary, normal
13.	药	yào	medicine
14.	运动	yùn dòng	sports, participating in sports
15.	周末	zhōu mò	weekend

#### Often

经常 (jīng cháng) and 常常 (cháng cháng) have the same meaning. Depending on context, they may mean "usually" or "often". They may not be placed at the beginning of a sentence. They must always go after the subject and before the verb. Prepositional phrases, (在..... location), may be placed directly after the subject (sentence 2) or after 经常 (jīng cháng) and 常常 (cháng cháng) (sentence 3).

1. 我经常看书。 / 我常常看书。 I often read.
2. 我常常在家看书。 I often read at home.
3. 我在家常常看书。 I often read at home.

1. wǒ jīngcháng kàn shū. / wǒ chángcháng kànshū.
2. wǒ chángcháng zài jiā kàn shū.
3. wǒ zài jiā chángcháng kàn shū.



## Negative Statements

The most common way to express "not often" or "seldom" is 很少 (hěn shǎo); however, 不经常 (bù jīng cháng) may be used. 常常(cháng cháng) is never used in a negative statement. 很少 (hěn shǎo) and 不经常 (bù jīng cháng) may not be placed at the beginning of a sentence. They must always go after the subject and before the verb. Prepositional phrases, (在..... location), may be placed directly after the subject (sentence 3) as well as after 很少 (hěn shǎo) or 不经常 (bù jīng cháng), (sentences 4).

1. 我很少看书。 I don't read often. / I seldom read.
2. 我不经常看书。 I don't read often. / I seldom read.
3. 我在家很少看书。 I seldom read at home.
4. 我很少在家看书。 I seldom read at home.
5. 我从不在家看书。 I never read at home.

1. wǒ hěn shǎo kàn shū.
2. wǒ bù jīngcháng kàn shū.
3. wǒ zài jiā hěn shǎo kàn shū.
4. wǒ hěn shǎo zài jiā kàn shū.
5. wǒ cóngbù zài jiā kàn shū.

## How Often

To express that something happens every day, week or month; time phrases are placed at the beginning of the sentence or after the subject.

1. 我每天去公园。 I go to the park everyday.
2. 每个星期我去公园。 I go to the park every week.
3. 我每个周末看电视。 I watch TV every weekend.

1. wǒ měitiān qù gōngyuán.
2. měi ge xīngqī wǒ qù gōngyuán.
3. wǒ měi ge zhōumò kàn diànshì.

When stating how often something happens within a specific time frame, the time frame is stated at the beginning of the sentence or after the subject. The number of times the thing happens within that time frame, is placed between the verb and the object. In the sentences below, 跳舞 (tiào wǔ) (dance), 度假 (dù jiǎ) (take a vacation), 看电视 (kàn diànshì) (watch TV), and 吃药 (chī yào) (eat medicine) are verb-object phrases. The number of times is expressed using 次 (cì), for example, 三次 (sān cì) means "3 times".



One of these two patterns is used:

I go on vacation once a year.

time frame	subject	verb	number of times	object
一年	我	度	一次	假。
yì nián	wǒ	dù	yí cì	jiǎ.

subject	time frame	verb	number of times	object
我	一年	度	一次	假。
wǒ	yì nián	dù	yí cì	jiǎ.

1. 我一个月跳两次舞。 I go dancing twice a month.
2. 一个星期我看三次电视。 I watch TV three times a week.
3. 我每天吃两次药。 I take medicine twice a day.
4. 我每年去一次上海。 I go to Shanghai once a year.
5. 我每个星期看一次老师。 I see my teacher once a week.

1. wǒ yí gè yuè tiào liǎng cì wǔ.
2. yí gè xīngqī wǒ kàn sān cì diànshì.
3. wǒ měitiān chī liǎng cì yào.
4. wǒ měi nián qù yí cì Shànghǎi.
5. wǒ měi gè xīngqī kàn yí cì lǎo shī.

When the **object** is a personal pronoun, as in, “I see/meet **him** twice a week.”, the sentence pattern is:

time frame	subject	verb	object	number of times
每个星期	我	见	他	一次
měi gè xīngqī	wǒ	jiàn	tā	yí cì

subject	time frame	verb	object	number of times
我	每个星期	见	他	一次
wǒ	měi gè xīngqī	jiàn	tā	yí cì

Some two character verbs cannot be divided, for instance 锻炼 (duàn liàn) (to physically exercise). In these cases, the sentence pattern below is used. It goes beyond the scope of this book to list these words.

I workout three time a week.

time frame	subject	verb	number of times
每个星期	我	锻炼	三次
měi gè xīngqī	wǒ	duànliàn	sān cì

subject	time frame	verb	number of times
我	每个星期	锻炼	三次
wǒ	měi gè xīngqī	duànliàn	sān cì

1. 我一年旅游一次。 I travel once a year.
2. 一个星期我运动三次。 I play sports three time a week.

1. wǒ yì nián lǚyóu yí cì。
2. yí gè xīngqī wǒ yùndòng sāncì。

### How Many Times

To express the number of times that something has occurred, the same sentences pattern as above may be used.

1. 我去过三次上海。 I have been to Shanghai three times..
2. 去年我去过三次上海。 I went to Shanghai 3 times last year.
3. 我昨天吃了一顿饭。 I ate once yesterday.
4. 我昨天见了她一次。 I saw her once yesterday.
5. 我上个星期锻炼了三次。 I worked out three times last week.

1. wǒ qù guò sān cì Shànghǎi。
2. qùnián wǒ qù guò sān cì Shànghǎi。
3. wǒ zuótiān chī le yí cì fàn。
4. wǒ zuótiān jiàn le tā yí cì。
5. wǒ shàng gè xīngqī duànliàn le sān cì。

### Normally / Usually

通常 (tōng cháng) is used to express what ordinarily happens. Negative words cannot be used before 通常 (tōng cháng) but it can be used to express that something doesn't "usually" happen. For instance, in example 3.

1. 他通常晚饭后看电视。 He usually watches TV after dinner.
2. 我通常每一个星期锻炼三次。 I usually workout three times a week.



3. 星期六下午通常没有课。                      There are usually no classes on Saturday afternoon.

1. tā tōngcháng wǎnfàn hòu kàn diànshì。
2. wǒ tōngcháng měi yí gè xīngqī duànliàn sān cì。
3. xīngqīliù xiàwǔ tōngcháng méiyǒu kè。

## Questions

### 吗 questions

你经常看书吗? / 你常常看书吗?                      Do you read often?

nǐ jīngcháng kàn shū ma? / nǐ chángcháng kàn shū ma?

These questions may be answered affirmatively by simply saying 常常 (cháng cháng) or 经常 (jīng cháng).

### 'How Often' questions

In English, the question "how often do you go dancing?", does not require the speaker to specify a time frame or the frequency of occurrences. In Mandarin, when asking "how often?" questions, the frequency of the actions or the time between their occurrences must be specified.

One way to ask how often something happens, is to specify how many times an action happens within a time frame. In this type of a question 几次 (jǐ cì), (how many times?), is placed between the verb and the object. In the sentences below, 跳舞 (tiào wǔ) (dance), 度假 (dù jiǎ) (take a vacation), and 看电视 (kàn diànshì) (watch TV) are verb-object phrases. This kind of sentence may begin with the subject or a time frame.

1. 你一年度几次假?                      How many times do you take a vacation in one year?
2. 一个月你跳几次舞?                      How many times do you go dancing in a month?
3. 你一个星期看几次电视?                      How many times do you watch TV in week?
4. 你一个星期锻炼几次?                      How many times do you work out in a week?
5. 你一年旅游几次?                      How many times a year do you travel?

1. nǐ yì nián dù jǐ cì jiǎ?
2. yí gè yuè nǐ tiào jǐ cì wǔ?
3. nǐ yí gè xīngqī kàn jǐ cì diànshì?
4. nǐ yí gè xīngqī duànliàn jǐ cì?
5. nǐ yì nián lǚyóu jǐ cì?



Another way to ask how often something happens, is to ask how much time passes between each occurrence. This type of questions begins with 多长时间 (duō cháng shí jiān) which in this context asks, "how long between occurrences?". In this type of question, 一次 (yí cì), which means "one time", is placed between the verb and the object. This kind of sentence may begin with the subject (sentences 1, 3, 4, 5) or 多长时间 (duō cháng shí jiān) (sentences 2, 6).

- |                |                                  |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. 你多长时间度一次假?  | How often do you go on vacation? |
| 2. 多长时间你跳一次舞?  | How often do you go dancing?     |
| 3. 你多长时间看一次电视? | How often do you watch TV?       |
| 4. 你多长时间跑一次步?  | How often do you go running?     |
| 5. 你多长时间锻炼一次?  | How often do you workout?        |
| 6. 多长时间你运动一次?  | How often do you play sports?    |

1. nǐ duōcháng shíjiān dù yí cì jiǎ?
2. duōcháng shíjiān nǐ tiào yí cì wǔ?
3. nǐ duōcháng shíjiān kàn yí cì diànshì?
4. nǐ duōcháng shíjiān pǎo yí cì bù?
5. nǐ duōcháng shíjiān duànliàn yí cì?
6. duōcháng shíjiān nǐ yùndòng yí cì?

Note: 多长时间 (duō cháng shí jiān) may also be used to ask how long something happens. (refer to Unit 31 for a complete explanation of how to express the duration of actions)

你每次跑多长时间?      How long do you run each time?  
三十分钟。                      30 minutes.

nǐ měi cì pǎo duōcháng shíjiān?  
sān shí fèn zhōng。



## Unit 19

### How / Why / Like / Dislike

This unit deals with expressing purpose, methods, likes and dislikes.

#### New Words

1.	爱	ài	love
2.	办公室	bàn gōng shì	office
3.	病	bìng	sick
4.	地铁	dì tiě	subway
5.	害怕	hài pà	afraid
6.	恨	hèn	hate
7.	回	huí	return
8.	开	kāi	drive, open, begin
9.	开车	kāi chē	drive a car (bus, truck)
10.	看病	kàn bìng	see a doctor
11.	毛笔	máo bǐ	brush for calligraphy
12.	面条	miàn tiáo	noodles
13.	怕	pà	to dislike, to fear
14.	骑	qí	ride (a bike, a horse, motorcycle)
15.	汽车	qì chē	car
16.	骑自行车	qí zì xíng chē	ride a bike
17.	食品	shí pǐn	foodstuffs
18.	讨厌	tǎo yàn	hate, disgusting
19.	玩儿	wánr	play, relax and enjoy oneself
20.	为什么	wèi shén me	why
21.	文章	wén zhāng	article, passage, essay
22.	喜欢	xǐ huan	like
23.	谢谢	xiè xie	thanks, thank you
24.	写信	xiě xìn	to write a letter
25.	信	xìn	letter
26.	衣服	yī fu	clothes
27.	用	yòng	use
28.	怎么	zěn me	how?
29.	最	zuì	most
30.	最喜欢	zuì xǐ huan	favorite
31.	坐	zuò	to ride in a vehicle

### Expressing Purpose (Why)

In the following sentences, the predicate has two consecutive verbs or verbal phrases. The order of these verb phrases is fixed. The first verb or verbal phrase indicates the action and the second indicates the purpose of the action.

Note: When Chinese talk about going somewhere to relax and have a good time they say “play” (玩儿 wánr).

1. 我今天下午去医院看病。
2. 他现在去朋友家玩儿。
3. 我今天下午去医院看病了。
4. 我昨天去朋友家玩儿了。

1. I will go to the hospital to see a doctor this afternoon.
2. I am going to my friend's home to “play” now.
3. I went to the hospital to see a doctor this afternoon.
4. I went to my friend's home to “play” yesterday.

1. wǒ jīntiān xiàwǔ qù yīyuàn kàn bìng.
2. tā xiànzài qù péngyou jiā wánr.
3. wǒ jīntiān xiàwǔ qù yīyuàn kàn bìng le.
4. wǒ zuótiān qù péngyou jiā wánr le.

### Negative Statements

1. 她明天不去商店买东西。
2. 她昨天没去商店买东西。
3. 我今天下午没去医院看病。

1. She won't go to the store to go shopping tomorrow.
2. I didn't go to the store to go shopping yesterday.
3. I didn't go to the hospital to see a doctor this afternoon.

1. tā míngtiān bú qù shāngdiàn mǎi dōngxi.
2. tā zuótiān méi qù shāngdiàn mǎi dōngxi.
3. wǒ jīntiān xiàwǔ méi qù yīyuàn kàn bìng.

### Questions

吗 questions:

1. 他今天下午去医院看病吗?
2. 你现在去朋友家玩儿吗?
3. 他今天下午去医院看病了吗?

4. 他昨天去朋友家玩儿了吗？

1. Will he go to the hospital to see a doctor this afternoon?
2. Are you going to a friend's home to “play” now?
3. Did he go to the hospital to see a doctor this afternoon?
4. Did he go to a friend's house to “play” yesterday?

1. tā jīntiān xiàwǔ qù yīyuàn kàn bìng ma?
2. nǐ xiànzài qù péngyou jiā wánr ma?
3. tā jīntiān xiàwǔ qù yīyuàn kàn bìng le ma?
4. tā zuótiān qù péngyou jiā wánr le ma?

#### 'affirmative-negative' questions

1. 他今天下午去不去医院看病？
2. 你现在去不去朋友家玩儿？
3. 他昨天去没去朋友家玩儿？

1. Will he go to the hospital to see a doctor this afternoon?
2. Are you going to your friends to “play” now?
3. Did he go to a friend's home to “play” yesterday?

1. tā jīntiān xiàwǔ qù bu qù yīyuàn kàn bìng?
2. nǐ xiànzài qù bu qù péngyou jiā wánr?
3. tā zuótiān qù méi qù péngyou jiā wánr?

#### 'Why' questions:

When asking why an action takes place, the following pattern is used:

(subject)	为什么	(action)
	wèi shén me	

1. 他今天下午为什么去医院？
2. 你现在为什么去朋友家？
3. 你昨天为什么去了邮局？

1. Why is he going to go to the hospital this afternoon?
2. Why are you going to a friend's house now?
3. Why did you go to the post office yesterday?

1. tā jīntiān xiàwǔ wèi shénme qù yīyuàn?



2. nǐ xiànzài wèi shénme qù péngyou jiā?
3. nǐ zuótiān wèishénme qù le yóujú?

### 'question word' questions

1. 你什么时候去北京买东西?
2. 你去商店买什么?
3. 你去商店买什么了?

1. When are you going to go shopping in Beijing?
2. What will you buy at the store?
3. What did you buy at the store?

1. nǐ shénme shíhòu qù Běijīng mǎi dōngxi?
2. nǐ qù shāngdiàn mǎi shénme?
3. nǐ qù shāngdiàn mǎi shénme le?

### 'or' questions

你去商店买食品还是买衣服?                      Are you going to the store to buy food or clothes?

nǐ qù shāngdiàn mǎi shípǐn hái shì mǎi yīfu?

### Expressing Means and Method

In the following sentences, the predicate has two consecutive verbs or verbal phrases. The order of these verb phrases is fixed. The first verb or verb phrase expresses the means or method of second verb's action.

Note: In Mandarin, "going home" or "returning home" are both expressed as "returning home", 回 (huí) is always used.

- |                |  |
|----------------|--|
| 1. 我用毛笔写汉字。    | I use a brush to write Chinese characters. |
| 2. 我们用电脑写文章。   | We use computers to write articles.        |
| 3. 我坐地铁回家。     | I go home by subway.                       |
| 4. 我坐地铁去办公室。   | I take the subway to my office.            |
| 5. 我坐公共汽车去办公室。 | I go to my office by public bus.           |
| 6. 我骑自行车去办公室。  | I ride my bike to my office.               |
| 7. 我开车去办公室。    | I drive to my office.                      |
| 8. 我坐飞机去上海。    | I take a plane to Shanghai.                |

1. wǒ yòng máobǐ xiě hànzi.



2. wǒmen yòng diànnǎo xiě wénzhāng.
3. wǒ zuò dìtiě huí jiā.
4. wǒ zuò dìtiě qù bàngōngshì.
5. wǒ zuò gōnggòngqìchē qù bàngōngshì.
6. wǒ qí zìxíngchē qù bàngōngshì.
7. wǒ kāichē qù bàngōngshì.
8. wǒ zuò fēijī qù Shànghǎi.

### Negative Statements

- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| 1. 我不坐地铁回家。      | I don't take the subway home.                                    |
| 2. 我昨天没坐地铁回家。    | I didn't take the subway home yesterday.                         |
| 3. 我今天上午不用毛笔写汉字。 | I will not use a brush to write Chinese characters this morning. |
| 4. 我今天上午没用毛笔写汉字。 | I didn't use a brush to write Chinese characters this morning.   |

1. wǒ bú zuò dìtiě huí jiā.
2. wǒ zuótiān méi zuò dìtiě huí jiā.
3. wǒ jīntiān shàngwǔ bú yòng máobǐ xiě hànzi.
4. wǒ jīntiān shàngwǔ méi yòng máobǐ xiě hànzi.

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

- |                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| 1. 他坐火车去北京吗?    | Does he take the train to Beijing?          |
| 2. 他坐火车去北京了吗?   | Did he take the train to Beijing?           |
| 3. 昨天他坐火车去北京了吗? | Did he take the train to Beijing yesterday? |

1. tā zuò huǒchē qù Běijīng ma?
2. tā zuò huǒ chē qù Běijīng le ma?
3. zuótiān tā zuò huǒchē qù Běijīng le ma?

#### 'affirmative-negative' questions

他是不是坐火车去北京? Does he take the train to Beijing?

tā shì bu shì zuò huǒchē qù Běijīng?





3. wǒ ài hē kāfēi.
4. wǒ xǐhuan chī miàntiáo.
5. wǒ tāoyàn hē kāfēi.
6. wǒ tāoyàn xiàtiān.
7. wǒ fēicháng tāoyàn xiàtiān.
8. wǒ xǐhuan Běijīng.
9. wǒ pà lěng.

#### Negative Statements

- |               |                                      |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. 我不喜欢喝咖啡。   | I dislike drinking coffee.           |
| 2. 我很不喜欢喝咖啡。  | I dislike drinking coffee very much. |
| 3. 我非常不喜欢喝咖啡。 | I dislike drinking coffee very much. |
| 4. 我不怕冷。      | I don't dislike cold (weather).      |

1. wǒ bù xǐhuan hē kāfēi.
2. wǒ hěn bù xǐhuan hē kāfēi.
3. wǒ fēicháng bù xǐhuan hē kāfēi.
4. wǒ bú pà lěng.

#### Questions

##### 吗 questions:

你喜欢喝咖啡吗? Do you like to drink coffee?

nǐ xǐhuan hē kāfēi ma?

##### 'affirmative-negative' questions

- |               |                              |
|---------------|------------------------------|
| 1. 你喜欢不喜欢喝咖啡? | Do you like to drink coffee? |
| 2. 你喜不喜欢喝咖啡?  | Do you like to drink coffee? |

1. nǐ xǐhuan bu xǐhuan hē kāfēi?
2. nǐ xǐ bu xǐhuan hē kāfēi?

##### 'question word' questions:

- |                |                              |
|----------------|------------------------------|
| 1. 你喜欢喝什么?     | What do you like to drink?   |
| 2. 谁喜欢喝咖啡?     | Who likes to drink coffee?   |
| 3. 你最喜欢的水果是什么? | What is your favorite fruit? |

1. nǐ xǐhuan hē shénme?
2. shéi xǐhuan hē kāfēi?
3. nǐ zuì xǐhuan de shuǐguǒ shì shénme?



## Unit 20

### Compliment of Potentiality (得)

#### Sentences with no Action / Sentences with Potential Action

This first section of this unit deals with modifying verbs in sentences that have no action. For example, in the sentence "He runs fast", "run" is a verb but there is not action in the sentence. The second section deals with sentences with potential action. For example in the sentence, "Can you clean the stain out of this shirt?"

#### New Words

1.	得	de	structural particle
2.	懂	dǒng	understand
3.	干净	gān jìng	clean
4.	慢	màn	slow
5.	清楚	qīng chu	clear
6.	睡	shuì	sleep
7.	听	tīng	listen, hear
8.	写字	xiě zì	write, write letters or characters

#### Compliment of Potentiality (Sentences with no Action)

When 得 (de) is used after a verb, the verbs do not indicate an action. In the following examples, 得 (de) goes after the verbs and is used to connect the verbs to the words that modify them. For instance, 我听得懂汉语 (wǒ tīng de dǒng hàn yǔ) means "I understand (spoken) Chinese". In this sentence, 得 (de) is between the verb 听(tīng) (to hear) and the "compliment of potentiality" 懂 (dǒng) (to understand). It means the speaker can understand Chinese by listening. This sentence has no action. The verb may be further modified to indicate degree by using adverbs such as 很 (hěn) or 非常 (fēi cháng) (sentence 6).

1.	他跑得快。	tā pǎo de kuài.	He runs fast.
2.	他跑得慢。	tā pǎo de màn.	He runs slowly.
3.	他说得清楚。	tā shuō dé qīngchu.	He speaks clearly.
4.	他写得快。	tā xiě de kuài.	He writes fast.
5.	我睡得好。	wǒ shuì de hǎo.	I sleep well.
6.	他跑得很快。	tā pǎo de hěn kuài.	He runs very fast.

When 得 (de) is used with verb object phrases, such as 写字 (xiě zì) (write Chinese characters) - both characters are stated, then the first character is stated again, followed by 得 (de) which is followed by the words that modify the verb. Adverbs such as 很 (hěn) and 非常 (fēi cháng) may be used (sentences 4, 5).



- |              |                         |
|--------------|-------------------------|
| 1. 他跑步跑得快。   | He runs fast.           |
| 2. 他跑步跑得慢。   | He runs slowly.         |
| 3. 他写字写得快。   | He writes fast.         |
| 4. 他说话说得很清楚。 | He speaks very clearly. |
| 5. 我睡觉睡得很好。  | I sleep very well.      |

1. tā pǎobù pǎo de kuài.
2. tā pǎobù pǎo de màn.
3. tā xiězì xiě de kuài.
4. tā shuōhuà shuō de hěn qīngchū.
5. wǒ shuìjiào shuì de hěn hǎo.

### Negative Statements

To make a negative statement, 得 (de) is followed by 不 (bù). Adverbs such as 很 (hěn) or 非常 (fēi cháng) may be not used in these statements.

- |             |   |
|-------------|---|
| 1. 他跑得不快。   | He does not run fast.                         |
| 2. 他说得不清楚。  | He does not speak clearly.                    |
| 3. 我写信写得不快。 | I do not write letters fast. (correspondence) |
| 4. 我睡觉睡得不好。 | I do not sleep well.                          |
| 5. 他跑步跑得不快。 | He does not run fast.                         |

1. tā pǎo de bú kuài.
2. tā shuō de bù qīngchū.
3. wǒ xiěxìn xiě de bú kuài.
4. wǒ shuìjiào shuì de bù hǎo.
5. tā pǎobù pǎo de bú kuài.

### Questions

**吗 questions: single character verbs**

他跑得快吗? tā pǎo de kuài ma? Does he run fast?

**吗 questions: two-character verb-object phrases**

1. 他跑步跑得快吗? Does he run fast?
2. 他写字写得快吗? Does he write fast? (handwriting)

1. tā pǎobù pǎo de kuài ma?
2. tā xiězì xiě de kuài ma?



### Compliment of Potentiality (Sentences with Potential Action)

This sentence structure may also be used to indicate if something is possible.

- |             |          |                                       |
|-------------|----------|---------------------------------------|
| Question 1: | 你听得懂汉语吗? | Do you understand Chinese?            |
| Answer 1:   | 我听得懂。    | I understand Chinese (from listening) |
| Question 2: | 你看得懂汉字吗? | Can you read Chinese?                 |
| Answer 2:   | 我看得懂。    | I understand Chinese (from listening) |

- |             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| Question 1: | nǐ tīng de dǒng hànyǔ ma? |
| Answer 1:   | wǒ tīng de dǒng.          |
| Question 2: | nǐ kàn de dǒng hànzì ma?  |
| Answer 2:   | wǒ kàn de dǒng.           |

If you went into a local dry cleaners and wanted to know if they could get a stain out of your shirt, you would ask the question:

Note: Any article of clothing may be referred to as 衣服 (yī fú).

- |    |                |                      |
|----|----------------|----------------------|
| 1. | 这件衣服洗得干净吗?     | Can this be cleaned? |
| 2. | 这件衣服洗得干净 洗不干净? |                      |

- |    |  |
|----|--|
| 1. | zhè jiàn yīfu xǐ dé gānjìng ma?            |
| 2. | zhè jiàn yīfu xǐ dé gānjìng xǐ bù gānjìng? |

The answer to the question would probably be:

- |    |       |                |                      |
|----|-------|----------------|----------------------|
| 1. | 洗得干净。 | xǐ dé gānjìng. | It can be cleaned.   |
| 2. | 洗不干净。 | xǐ bù gānjìng. | It can't be cleaned. |

If you took your shirt into the dry cleaners and assumed that everything would go smoothly, but the clerk realizes that your shirt can't be cleaned, then the clerk would say:

这件衣服洗不干净。	zhè jiàn yīfu xǐ bù gānjìng.	This shirt can't be cleaned.
-----------	------------------------------	------------------------------

“Compliments of Potentiality” are discussed further in Unit 22 where they are compared to “Compliments of Results”.

## Unit 21 Comparisons

This unit introduces the sentence patterns used to compare actions that are different, state that two actions are the same.

### New Words

1. 早                                      zǎo                                      early

### Comparing Actions

#### A is greater than B

A	比	B verb-object	
A verb-compliment	比	B	comparison standard
A	比	B verb-compliment	comparison standard
A verb-compliment	比	B	comparison standard degree
A	比	B verb-compliment	comparison standard degree

#### A is not greater than B

A	不比	B verb-object	
A verb-compliment	不比	B comparison standard	
A	不比	B verb-compliment	comparison standard

#### A is equal to or greater than B

A	有	B	comparison standard
---	---	---	---------------------

#### A is less than B

A	没有	B	comparison standard
---	----	---	---------------------

### Stating two actions are the same

#### A is the same as B

A	跟 / 和	B 一样	verb-object
A verb-compliment	跟 / 和	B 一样	comparison standard
A	跟 / 和	B 一样	comparison standard

### Stating two actions are not the same

#### A is not the same as B

A	跟 / 和	B	不一样 verb-object
A verb-compliment	跟 / 和	B	不一样 comparison standard
A	跟 / 和	B verb-compliment	不一样 comparison standard

### Comparing Two Actions (比)

When using 比 (bǐ) to compare two actions, where A is greater than B, the following pattern is used. In this pattern, the action is a verb-object phrase. A degree of difference may not be stated here.



**A**     **比**     **B**           action  
他     比     我     喜欢音乐。

He likes music more than I do.     tā bǐ wǒ xǐhuan yīnyuè.

When comparing actions that are stated as complimented verbs (that is, verbs modified with 得) the verb compliment may be part of A or B. In this pattern, A is greater than B and the comparison standard is stated last. The comparison standard may be followed by a degree, which is optional. When stating the degree of difference, an exact number or an approximation may be used. When stating an approximation, 一点儿 (yì diǎnr) and 一些 (yì xiē) are used for small differences while 得多 (de duō) and 多了 (duō le) are used for relatively large differences.

	<b>A</b>	<b>比</b>	<b>B</b>	comparison standard	degree
1.	他	比	我跑得	快。	
2.	他跑得	比	我	快。	
3.	他	比	我跑得	快	一点儿。
4.	他汉语	比	我说得	好	得多。

1. He runs faster than I do.
2. He runs faster than I do.
3. He runs a little faster than I do.
4. His Chinese is much better than mine.

1. tā bǐ wǒ pǎo de kuài.
2. tā pǎo de bǐ wǒ kuài.
3. tā bǐ wǒ pǎo de kuài yì diǎnr.
4. tā hànyǔ bǐ wǒ shuō de hǎo de duō.

不比 (bù bǐ) is used to state that A is not greater than B; however, this pattern is only used to express disagreement or refutation. The standard of comparison is stated last. Adverbs such as 很 (hěn) and 非常 (fēi cháng) may not be used to modify the comparison standard.

He doesn't like music as much as I do.

**A**           **不比**     **B**           action  
他           不比     我           喜欢音乐。

tā           bù bǐ     wǒ           xǐhuan yīnyuè.



- |    | <b>A</b>                 | 不比 | <b>B</b> | comparison standard            |
|----|--------------------------|----|----------|--------------------------------|
| 1. | 他                        | 不比 | 我跑得      | 快。                             |
| 2. | 他跑得                      | 不比 | 我        | 快。                             |
| 1. | tā bù bǐ wǒ pǎo de kuài. |    |          | He can't run as fast as I can. |
| 2. | tā pǎo de bù bǐ wǒ kuài. |    |          | He can't run as fast as I can. |

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

Adding 吗 (ma) to the end of a 比 (bǐ) statement creates a yes-no question.

- |    |                                   |  |
|----|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1. | 他比你更喜欢音乐吗?                        | Does he like music more than you do?     |
| 2. | 他跑得比你快吗?                          | Does he run faster than you do?          |
| 3. | 他比你跑得快一点儿吗?                       | Does he run a little faster than you do? |
| 1. | tā bǐ nǐ xǐhuan yīnyuè ma?        |  |
| 2. | tā pǎo de bǐ nǐ kuài ma?          |  |
| 3. | tā bǐ nǐ pǎo de kuài yì diǎnr ma? |  |

#### 'affirmative - negative' questions

Statements using 比 (bǐ) and 不比 (bù bǐ) may be changed into affirmative-negative questions by using 比不比 (bǐ bu bǐ). In this sentence pattern, 吗 (ma) may not be used.

- |    |                               |                                      |
|----|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. | 他比不比你更喜欢音乐?                   | Does he like music more than you do? |
| 2. | 他跑得比不比你快?                     | Does he run faster than you do?      |
| 1. | tā bǐ bu bǐ nǐ xǐhuan yīnyuè? |                                      |
| 2. | tā pǎo dé bǐ bu bǐ nǐ kuài?   |                                      |

### Comparing Two Actions (有 / 没有)

When comparing two actions, the following pattern is used to express A is equal to or greater than B:

- |    | <b>A</b>               | 有 | <b>B</b> | comparison standard               |
|----|------------------------|---|----------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. | 他跑得                    | 有 | 我        | 快。                                |
| 2. | 他                      | 有 | 我跑得      | 快。                                |
| 1. | tā pǎo de yǒu wǒ kuài. |   |          | He runs at least as fast as I do. |
| 2. | tā yǒu wǒ pǎo de kuài. |   |          | He runs at least as fast as I do. |



1. 他画得有我好。 He draws at least as good as I do.
2. 你说得有他好。 You speak (a language) as well as he does.
3. 他做得有你这么快。 He is at least as fast (at this) as you are.

1. tā huà de yǒu wǒ hǎo.
2. nǐ shuō de yǒu tā hǎo.
3. tā zuò de yǒu nǐ zhème kuài.

When comparing two actions, the following pattern is used to express A is less than B. 没 (méi) or 没有 (méiyǒu) may be used. The standard of comparison is stated last. Adverbs such as 很 (hěn) and 非常 (fēi cháng) cannot be used to modify the comparison standard.

	<b>A</b>	<b>没(有)</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>comparison standard</b>
1.	他跑得	没(有)	我	快。
2.	他	没(有)	我跑得	快。

1. He doesn't run as fast as I do. tā pǎo de méi(yǒu) wǒ kuài.
2. He doesn't run as fast as I do. tā méi(yǒu) wǒ pǎo de kuài.

1. 他画得没有我好。 He is not better at drawing than I am.
2. 你说得没有他好。 You are not better at speaking (a language) than he is.
3. 他做得没有你这么快。 He is not faster (at this) than you are.
4. 他们没有我们来得早。 They did not arrive as early as us.

1. tā huà de méiyǒu wǒ hǎo.
2. nǐ shuō de méiyǒu tā hǎo.
3. tā zuò de méiyǒu nǐ zhème kuài.
4. tāmen méiyǒu wǒmen lái de zǎo

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

Adding 吗 (ma) to the end of a 有 (yǒu) statement creates a question.

1. 他画得有我好吗? Does he draw as well as I do?
2. 你说得有他好吗? Do you speak (a language) as well as he does?

1. tā huà de yǒu wǒ hǎo ma?
2. nǐ shuō de yǒu tā hǎo ma?



### 'affirmative - negative' questions

Statements using 没 (méi) or 没有 (méi yǒu) may use the 有没有 (yǒu méi yǒu) affirmative-negative question pattern. In this sentence pattern, 吗 (ma) may not be used.

1. 他画得有没有我好? Does he draw as well as I do?
  2. 你说得有没有他好? Do you speak (a language) as well as he does?
- 
1. tā huà dé yǒu méi yǒu wǒ hǎo?
  2. nǐ shuō dé yǒu méi yǒu tā hǎo?

### Stating that two actions are the same (跟..... 一样)

When stating that two actions are the same, both things are linked with 跟 (gēn) or 和 (hé) followed by 一样 (yí yàng) followed by the action. When the action is expressed by a verb-object phrase, the verb object phrase goes last.

He likes music as much as I do.

A	跟 / 和	B	一样	action (verb object phrase)
他	跟	我	一样	喜欢音乐。
tā	gēn/hé	wǒ	yíyàng	xǐhuan yīnyuè

When the action is expressed by a verb-compliment phrase (using 得 de), the verb compliment may be included in either A or B with the comparison standard last.

A	跟 / 和	B	一样	comparison standard
1. 他跑得	跟	我	一样	快。
2. 他	和	我跑得	一样	快。

Both of the sentences above (1 and 2) mean: "He runs as fast as I do."

1. tā pǎo de gēn wǒ yíyàng kuài
2. tā hé wǒ pǎo de yíyàng kuài



### Stating Two Actions are the not Same (跟..... 不一样)

When stating that two actions are not the same, the sentence pattern is the same as example sentences 1 and 2 above, except 不一样 (bù yí yàng) is used.

A	跟 / 和	B	不一样	comparison standard
1. 他跑得	跟	我	不一样	快。
2. 他	和	我跑得	不一样	快。

Both examples mean: "He doesn't run at the same speed as I do." (It does not indicate which person is the fastest runner.)

1. tā pǎo de gēn wǒ bù yíyàng kuài
2. tā hé wǒ pǎo de bù yíyàng kuài

### 吗 questions

Adding 吗 (ma) to the end of a statement creates a yes-no question.

1. 他跟我一样喜欢音乐吗? Does he like music as much as I do?
2. 他跑得跟你一样快吗? Does he run as fast as you do?

1. tā gēn wǒ yíyàng xǐhuan yīnyuè ma?
2. tā pǎo de gēn nǐ yíyàng kuài ma?

## Unit 22

### Verb 'Compliment of Result'

This unit deals with complimenting verbs to indicate the results their actions produce.

#### New Words

1.	部	bù	measure word for movies
2.	茶	chá	tea
3.	出租车	chū zū chē	taxi
4.	错	cuò	incorrect
5.	打	dǎ	hit, send
6.	打电话	dǎ diàn huà	make a telephone call
7.	大家	dà jiā	everybody, everyone
8.	到	dào	to arrive, to attain a goal
9.	地上	dì shang	on the floor, on the ground
10.	电话	diàn huà	telephone
11.	封	fēng	measure word for letters
12.	幅	fú	measure word for paintings
13.	狗	gǒu	dog
14.	好	hǎo	successful, satisfactory, good
15.	画	huà	to paint or draw (a picture)
16.	还	huán	return (something)
17.	画儿	huàr	painting, picture
18.	回答	huí dá	to answer
19.	见	jiàn	to meet, to see
20.	交	jiāo	to hand over or hand in something
21.	街	jiē	street
22.	篇	piān	measure word for literary articles
23.	钱	qián	money
24.	切	qiē	cut, clice
25.	沙发	shā fā	sofa
26.	收	shōu	receive
27.	送	sòng	deliver, give (free of charge)
28.	推	tuī	push
29.	完	wán	to complete, to finish
30.	晚饭	wǎn fàn	dinner
31.	屋子	wū zi	room



32.	西瓜	xī guā	watermelon
33.	小狗	xiǎo gǒu	puppy
34.	一定	yí dìng	already
35.	在	zài	to be at a place
36.	作业	zuò yè	homework

### Verb 'Compliment of Result'

An adjective or verb that is attached to a verb to complete its meaning is called a verb compliment. There are many kinds of compliments including those that express duration, quantity, degree, direction, possibility or result. In this unit we will only deal with verb compliments that express results. This is done by adding a verb or adjective after a verb to show the results produced by the action of the verb. For instance, adding the verb 完 (wán) (to finish) to the verb 吃 (chī) (to eat) becomes 吃完 (chī wán) (finish eating). Adding the adjective 错 (cuò) (incorrect) to the verb 说 (shuō) (to speak) becomes 说错 (shuō cuò) (to speak incorrectly).

Referring to Unit 20, 我听得懂汉语 (wǒ tīng de dǒng hàn yǔ) means "I understand (spoken) Chinese". In this sentence, 得 (de) is between the verb 听(tīng) (to hear) and the “compliment of potentiality” 懂 (dǒng) (to understand). It means the speaker can understand Chinese by listening. This sentence has no action.

In the sentence, “我听懂了他说的话。” (wǒ tīng dǒng le tā shuō de huà) (I understood what he said.), 得 (de) is not used. The verb, 听 (tīng) (to hear), is followed immediately by the verb, 懂 (dǒng) (to understand) which shows the results produced by the verb 听 (tīng) (to hear). In this case, 懂 (dǒng) (to understand) is a verb that is used as "verb compliment of results" that means that understanding was the result of the action of hearing. The adjective 清楚 (qīng chu) (clear) is used in the same way in the sentence, “我听清楚了他说的话。” (wǒ tīng qīng chu le tā shuō de huà) "I clearly heard what he said". No characters may be placed between a verbs its “compliment of results”.

In this unit, we have chosen to use 7 verbs and 5 adjectives that are commonly used as verb compliments of results to explain how compliments of results are used, however, there are many more. In Section 1, we explain how these verbs and adjectives are alone, not as compliments, so that their meanings will be clear. Section 2 has examples of how they are used as compliments of results. Section 3 contrasts different ways that “compliments of results” and “compliments of potentiality” are used in conversation to clarify this idea.



## Section 1 Verbs and Adjectives

### Verbs

These sentences explain how these verbs are used in verb object phrases, they are not used as compliments in these sentences.

见	完	懂	到	在	给	开
jiàn	wán	dǒng	dào	zài	gěi	kāi

见 jiàn      **to see, or perceive, to meet (someone)**

见 (jiàn) is a single character action verb, it has two meanings, depending on context. It can mean "to see or perceive" or it can mean "to meet (someone)". In modern Chinese, when 见 (jiàn) is used as a verb, it means "to meet":

明天见	míngtiān jiàn	I will meet you tomorrow.
很久没见	hěnjiǔ méi jiàn	Long time, no see.

完 wán      **finish, complete**

完 (wán) is a verb, it is used at the end of computer games and movies to indicate "finished"; however, it is most commonly used as a verb compliment.

懂 dǒng      **to understand**

1. 你懂我的意思吗?	Do you understand my meaning?
2. 他懂汉语。	He understands Chinese.

1. nǐ dǒng wǒde yìsī ma?
2. tā dǒng hànǔ.

到 dào      **arrive, reach**

他现在一定到北京了。      He has already arrived in Beijing.

tā xiànzài yídìng dào Běijīng le.

在 zài      **to be at a place, an action in progress**

在 (zài) is used as a verb that means "to be at a place".

他在图书馆。 tā zài túshūguǎn. He is at the library.

给 gěi give

When used as an action verb, meaning "to give", 给 (gěi) usually has two objects. In the example below, 他 (tā) is the first object and 书 (shū) is the second.

我给了他一本书。 wǒ gěi le tā yì běn shū. I gave him a book.

开 kāi open, turn on, operate, begin

请开门。 qǐng kāi mén. Please open the door.

### Adjectives

These sentences explain how these characters are used adjectives. They are not used as compliments in the sentences below.

对	错	清楚	干净	好
duì	cuò	qīng chu	gān jìng	hǎo

1. 对 duì correct
2. 错 cuò incorrect, wrong
3. 清楚 qīng chu clear, easy to understand
4. 干净 gān jìng clean
5. 好 hǎo good, satisfactory, effective

1. 你对，他不对。 You are right, he is wrong.
2. 你错了。 You are wrong.
3. 这张地图不清楚。 This map isn't clear.
4. 屋子里很干净。 The room is clean.
5. 这本书很好。 This is a good book.

1. nǐ duì, tā bú duì.
2. nǐ cuò le.
3. zhè zhāng dìtú bù qīngchu.
4. wūzi lǐ hěn gān jìng.
5. zhè běn shū hěn hǎo.



## Section 2

### Verb 'Compliment of Results'

These sentences show how to use the same verbs and adjectives, discussed above, as compliments of results.

#### 见 jiàn                      Action that results in discovery

1. 看见      我看见一辆出租车。      I see a taxi.
2. 听见      我听见了他说的话。      I heard what he said.

1. kàn jiàn      wǒ kànjiàn yì liàng chūzūchē.
2. tīng jiàn      wǒ tīngjiàn le tā shuō de huà.

#### 懂 dǒng                      Action that achieves understanding

1. 听懂      我听懂了他说的话。      I understand what he is said.
2. 看懂      你看懂了这本书吗?      Can you understand this book?

1. tīng dǒng      wǒ tīngdǒng le tā shuō de huà.
2. kàn dǒng      nǐ kàndǒng le zhè běn shū ma?

#### 完 wán                      Action that results in completion

1. 吃完      我吃完晚饭了。      I have finished eating dinner.
2. 喝完      他喝完三杯茶了。      He finished drinking 3 cups of tea.
3. 写完      她写完了那篇文章。      I have finished writing that article.
4. 看完      我们昨天看完了这部电影。      Yesterday, we finished watching that movie.
5. 用完      我的钱用完了。      My money is all used up.
6. 做完      他做完了作业。      He finished his homework.

1. chī wán      wǒ chīwán wǎnfàn le.
2. hē wán      tā hēwán sān bēi chá le.
3. xiě wán      tā xiěwán le nà piān wénzhāng.
4. kàn wán      wǒmen zuótiān kànwán le zhè bù diànyǐng.
5. yòng wán      wǒ de qián yòng wán le .
6. zuò wán      tā zuò wán le zuòyè .

到 dào                      **Action that attains a goal / reaches a place**

1. 找到        他找到了书店。        I found the bookstore.
2. 收到        我收到了他的信。        I received his letter.
3. 见到        我见到了王先生。        I met Mr. Wang.

1. zhǎo dào        tā zhǎodào le shūdiàn.
2. shōu dào        wǒ shōudào le tāde xìn.
3. jiàn dào        wǒ jiàndào le Wáng xiānshēng.

在 zài                      **Action that results in being at a place**

1. 住在        我住在北京。        I live in Beijing.
2. 坐在        王先生坐在沙发上。        Mr. Wang is sitting on the sofa.
3. 躺在        小狗躺在地上。        A puppy is lying on the floor.

1. zhù zài        wǒ zhùzài Běijīng.
2. zuò zài        Wáng xiānshēng zuòzài shāfā shang.
3. tǎng zài        xiǎo gǒu tǎngzài dìshang.

给 gěi                      **Action that results in giving**

1. 交给        他交给我一封信。        He gave me a letter.
2. 送给        姐姐送给我一本书。        My big sister gave me a book.

1. jiāo gěi        tā jiāogěi wǒ yì fēng xìn.
2. sòng gěi        jiějie sònggěi wǒ yì běn shū.

开 kāi                      **Actions that achieves opening**

1. 打开        打开你的书。        Open your book.
2. 推开        老师推开了教室的门。        The teacher opened the classroom door.
3. 切开        妈妈切开了西瓜。        Mother cut the watermelon.

1. dǎ kāi        dǎkāi nǐde shū.
2. tuī kāi        lǎoshī tuīkāi le jiāoshì de mén.
3. qiē kāi        māmā qiēkāi le xīguā.

对 duì                      **Action that is done correctly**

1. 说对      他说对了。              What he said is correct.
2. 回答对    你回答对了。              You answered correctly.

1. shuō duì      tā shuōduì le.
2. huídá duì      nǐ huídáduì le.

错 cuò                      **Action that is done incorrectly**

1. 写错      你写错了。              You wrote this incorrectly.
2. 打错      你打错了。              You dialed (the telephone) incorrectly.

1. xiě cuò      nǐ xiěcuò le.
2. dǎ cuò      nǐ dǎcuò le.

清楚 qīngchū              **Action that results in being clear**

1. 看清楚      我看清楚了。              I saw clearly.
2. 听清楚      我听清楚了。              I heard clearly.
3. 说清楚      他说清楚了。              He spoke clearly.

1. kàn qīngchū      wǒ kànqīngchū le.
2. tīng qīngchū      wǒ tīngqīngchū le.
3. shuō qīngchū      tā shuōqīngchū le.

干净 gānjìng              **Action that results in being clean**

1. 洗干净      杯子洗干净了。              The cup was washed (clean).
2. 擦干净      黑板擦干净了。              The blackboard was wiped clean.

1. xǐ gānjìng      bēizi xǐ gānjìng le.
2. cā gānjìng      hēibǎn cā gānjìng le.

好 hǎo                      **Action that is completed successfully**

1. 坐好      请坐好。              Please, (everyone) sit down.
2. 放好      我放好自行车了。              I put my bike away.



3. 做好 她做好作业了。 She is finished with her homework.

1. zuò hǎo qǐng dàjiā zuòhǎo.
2. fàng hǎo wǒ fànghǎo zìxíngchē le.
3. zuò hǎo tā zuòhǎo zuòyè le.

### Negative Statements

To make a negative statement using a verb 'compliment of results', 没(méi) or 没有(méi yǒu) are placed before the verb-compliment character combination. 了(le) may not be used in these negative sentences.

没看见 我没看见一辆出租车。 I do not /did not see a taxi.  
没有看见 我没有看见一辆出租车。 I do not /did not see a taxi.

méi kànjiàn wǒ méi kànjiàn yí liàng chūzūchē.  
méiyǒu kànjiàn wǒ méiyǒu kànjiàn yí liàng chūzūchē.

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

看见 你看见一辆出租车了吗? Do / did you see a taxi?

kànjiàn nǐ kànjiàn yí liàng chūzūchē le ma?

#### 没有 questions

To form a question using a verb 'compliment of results', 没有 (méi yǒu) may be placed at the end of sentences.

看见 你看见一辆出租车了没有? Do / did you see a taxi?

kànjiàn nǐ kànjiàn yí liàng chūzūchē le méiyǒu?

When using a compliment of result, an affirmative – negative question is expressed by using the following form:

**verb -- 没 -- verb compliment of result**

看见 你看没看见一辆出租车? Do / did you see a taxi?

kànjiàn nǐ kàn méi kàn jiàn yí liàng chūzūchē?



### Section 3

#### Using “Compliment of Results” and “Compliments of Potentiality”

In the examples below, when a compliment is a “compliment of results” it is abbreviated (R) and a compliment that is a “compliment of potentiality” is abbreviated (P).

If someone were to ask you if your friend understands Chinese, they would say:

Question 1: 他听得懂汉语吗? Can he understand Chinese? (P)

In this case, you would answer as below.

Answer 1A: 他听不懂。 He does not understand Chinese. (P)

Answer 1B: 他听得懂。 He understands Chinese. (P)

Question 1: tā tīng dé dǒng hànǔ ma?

Answer 1A: tā tīng bù dǒng。

Answer 1B: tā tīng dé dǒng。

If someone wanted to know if you understand what was just said, they would ask:

Question 2: 你听懂了吗? Did you understand what was said?(R)

Question 2: nǐ tīng dǒng le ma?

You could make a general statement that you don’t understand Chinese, which does not refer to the action of listening, it refers to the ability to understand.

Answer 2A: 我听不懂。 I don’t understand Chinese. (P)

Answer 2A: wǒ tīng bù dǒng。

If you usually understand Chinese fairly well, but aren’t following the conversation well because your vocabulary is limited or the speaker is talking to fast, you would answer as below. This statement refers to the action of listening:

Answer 2B: 我没听懂。 I didn’t understand what was said. (R)

Answer 2B: wǒ méi tīng dǒng。

If you understood everything that was just said, you would say:

Answer 2C: 我听懂了。 I understand what was said. (R)

Answer 2C: wǒ tīng dǒng le。

If you usually understand Chinese and are having difficulty understanding what is being said because of circumstances, for instance, you are on a noisy bus talking on a cell phone – you would say:

Answer 2D: 我听不清楚。 I didn't understand clearly. (P)

Answer 2D: wǒ tīng bù qīngchū。

If you are having trouble clearly understanding what the speaker is saying because your Chinese isn't very good, you would say:

Answer 2E: 我没听清楚。 I didn't understand clearly. (R)

Answer 2E: wǒ méi tīng qīngchū 。

To tell someone to listen carefully, you would say:

Statement: 听清楚。 Listen carefully. (R)

Statement: tīng qīngchū 。

If someone wanted to know if you could read Chinese, they would ask:

Question 3: 你看得懂汉字吗? Can you read Chinese?(P)

Answer 3A: 我看得懂。 I can read Chinese. (P)

Answer 3B: 我看不懂。 I can't can read Chinese. (P)

Question 3: nǐ kàn dé dǒng hànzi ma?

Answer 3A: wǒ kàn dé dǒng。

Answer 3B: wǒ kàn bù dǒng。

If some gave you a specific Chinese text , after you have tried to read it they would say:

Question 4: 你看懂了吗? Could you read it?(R)

Question 4: nǐ kàn dǒng le ma?

You could answer in the following ways:

Answer 4A: 我看懂了。 I can read it. (R)

Answer 4B: 我没看懂。 I can't can read it. (R) (it is too difficult)

Answer 4C: 我看不懂。 I can't can read it. (P) (I can't read Chinese)

Answer 4A: wǒ kàn dǒng le。

Answer 4B: wǒ méi kàn dǒng。

Answer 4C: wǒ kàn bù dǒng。

You are at a train station meeting a friend. You are standing at the north end of the plaza that is in front of the train station. You are talking on your cell phones and you inform him that you are at the station but you can't find him due to circumstances, for instance, the station is very crowded and spotting one person in the crowd is not possible. You would say either statement 1 or statement 2:

Statement 1: 我找不到你。 wǒ zhǎo bú dào nǐ. I can't find you. (P)

Statement 2: 我看不见你。 wǒ kàn bú jiàn nǐ. I can't see you. (P)

You suddenly see your friend and tell him (on your cell phone):

看见了。 I see you. (R) kàn jiàn le。

You left your bag under the table at a fast food restaurant where you had just eaten lunch. You go back to the restaurant and find your bag. You tell the person you are talking to on your cell phone:

找到了。 I found it. (R) zhǎo dào le。

You are looking around your apartment for your Chinese book. Your roommate tells you that your book is on the kitchen table. As you are coming out of the kitchen, your roommate could ask you:

Question 5: 你看见了吗? Did you see it?(R) nǐ kàn jiàn le ma?

If you did not see the book in the kitchen, you would say:

Answer 5A: 我没看见。 I didn't see it. (R) wǒ méi kàn jiàn。

If you found your book, you would say:

Answer 5B: 找到了。 I found it. (R) zhǎo dào le。

If you had left your shirt at a laundry shop and knew that it was questionable if the stain in your shirt could come out, when you see the clerk you could ask:

Question 6: 那件衣服洗干净了吗? Were you able to get the stain out? (R)

Answer 6A: 洗干净了。 It is clean. (R)

Answer 6B: (这件衣服) 没洗干净。 It didn't come out. (R)

Question 6: nà jiàn yīfu xǐ gānjìng le ma?

Answer 6A: xǐ gānjìng le。

Answer 6B: (zhè jiàn yīfu) méi xǐ gānjìng。

## Unit 23

### Directional Verbs

#### Verb Phrases That Use 上 and 下

#### New Words

1.	上班	shàng bān	to start work, to be at work
2.	上车	shàng chē	to get into a vehicle
3.	上船	shàng chuán	to get in a boat
4.	上街	shàng jiē	to set out on a (local) trip (ie., to go shopping)
5.	上课	shàng kè	to start class, to be in class
6.	上楼	shàng lóu	to go upstairs
7.	上路	shàng lù	to set out on (long) journey
8.	上学	shàng xué	to go to school (daily classes or begin a major course)
9.	下班	xià bān	to get off work
10.	下车	xià chē	to get out of a vehicle
11.	下船	xià chuán	to get out of a boat
12.	下课	xià kè	to end a class
13.	下楼	xià lóu	to go downstairs
16.	下学	xià xué	to end a day of school
17.	下雪	xià xuě	to snow
18.	夜	yè	night

In Unit 16, 上 (shàng) and 下 (xià) were the second characters in words for locations, for instance, 楼上 (lóu shàng) (upstairs) and 楼下 (lóu xià) (downstairs). In this unit, 上 (shàng) and 下 (xià) are the first characters of verb-object phrases, that indicate direction. For instance, 上楼 (shàng lóu) refers to the action of going upstairs and 下楼 (xià lóu) means the action of going downstairs. 上 (shàng) involves actions including: ‘going up’, ‘going in’, or ‘getting started’; 下 (xià) verbs involve ‘going down’, ‘going out’, or ‘finishing’.

#### Additional Phrases

1.	上英语课	shàng yīng yǔ kè	to start / to be in - an English class
2.	上夜班	shàng yè bān	to begin / to be at - a night job
3.	上五楼	shàng wǔ lóu	to go up to the fifth floor
4.	下大雨	xià dà yǔ	to rain heavily
5.	下小雪	xià xiǎo xuě	to snow lightly



Depending on context, 上课 (shàng kè) may express the action of beginning a class or it may express the fact that someone is in a class at the present moment. To begin a class, teachers say “上课 (shàng kè)”, which means “begin class”. If someone were to ask, “Where is he?”, the answer would be, “他现在正在上课 (tā xiànzài zhèngzài shàngkè)” which means, “he is in class now.” 上班 (shàng bān) is the same. These directional verbs follow the same rules as action verbs discussed in Units 10 -12.

### Habitual or Intentional Actions

1. 我每天早上七点半上班。 I go start work everyday at seven 7:30 am.
2. 他经常坐出租车上上班。 He usually takes a taxi to work.
3. 我每天开车上班。 I drive to work everyday.
4. 我骑自行车上班。 I ride a bike to work.

1. wǒ měitiān zǎoshang qī diǎn bàn shàngbān.
2. tā jīngcháng zuò chūzūchē shàngbān.
3. wǒ měitiān kāichē shàngbān.
4. wǒ qí zìxíngchē shàngbān.

### Actions in Progress

他正在上楼。 tā zhèngzài shànglóu. He is going upstairs (now).

### Completed Action

他上班了。 tā shàngbān le. He has started work.

### Negative Statements

1. 昨天我没上班。 I didn't go to work yesterday.
2. 明天我不上班。 I will not go to work tomorrow.
3. 现在不下雨。 It is not raining now.

1. zuótiān wǒ méi shàngbān.
2. míngtiān wǒ bú shàngbān.
3. xiànzài bú xiàyǔ.

### Questions

#### 吗 questions:

1. 他们在上课吗? Are they in class?
2. 昨天他们上课了吗? Did they go to class yesterday?

1. tāmen zài shàngkè ma?
2. zuótiān tāmen shàngkè le ma?

**没有 questions:**

1. 昨天他们上课了没有? Did they go to class yesterday?

1. zuótiān tāmen shàngkè le méiyǒu?

**'questions word' questions:**

1. 你几点 (钟) 上课? What time do you start class?

2. 明天你上什么课? What classes do you have tomorrow?

1. nǐ jǐ diǎn (zhōng) shàngkè?

2. míngtiān nǐ shàng shénme kè?

**'affirmative-negative' questions:**

1. 昨天你上没上班? Did you have class yesterday?

2. 明天你上不上班? Do you work tomorrow?

1. zuótiān nǐ shàng méi shàngbān?

2. míngtiān nǐ shàng bu shàngbān?



## Unit 24

### Will / Want / Think / Should / Must (Auxiliary Verbs)

Section 1 of this unit explains 要 (yào) and 想 (xiǎng) as they are used as verbs that express desire and opinion. Other verbs that express the same meaning are also included. Section 2 explains how 要 (yào) and 想 (xiǎng) are used as auxiliary verbs that express necessity, possibility and willingness. Other verbs and auxiliary verbs that are related to advice, intentions and opinions are also introduced.

#### New Words

1.	白	bái	white
2.	报告	bào gào	report
3.	必须	bì xū	must
4.	衬衫	chèn shān	shirt
5.	抽烟	chōu yān	smoke (cigarettes, etc.)
6.	得	děi	to have to, must, to need to
7.	发票	fā piào	receipt
8.	觉得	jué de	to think, to feel
9.	该	gāi	should
10.	酒	jiǔ	alcohol, alcoholic drinks
11.	认识	rèn shi	to meet someone, to know someone
12.	认为	rén wéi*	opinion
13.	条	tiáo	measure word for skirts and dresses
14.	想	xiǎng	think, want, miss (long for)
15.	要	yào	want, will, intend
16.	应该	yīng gāi	should
17.	游泳	yóu yǒng	swim
18.	怎么样	zěn me yàng	how? (when asking about the condition of something or someone)
19.	着急	zháo jí	worry, hurry
20.	注意	zhù yì	pay attention to

\* Pronunciation tip: the 为 in 认为 (rén wéi) is pronounced in the second tone, not in the fourth tone as in the 为 in 因为 (yīn wèi) (because) and 为什么 (wèi shén me) (why).



## Section 1 Verbs

### Want (verb - 要 - yào)

When 要 is used as a verb, it means "to want".

他要一本词典。 He wants a dictionary.  
tā yào yì běn cídiǎn.

### Negative Statements

1. 我不要白裙子，我要红裙子。 I do not want a white dress, I want a red dress.
2. 我不要发票。 I do not want a receipt.
3. 昨天他没要发票。 Yesterday, he didn't want a receipt.

1. wǒ bú yào bái qúnzi, wǒ yào hóng qúnzi.
2. wǒ bú yào fāpiào.
3. zuótiān tā méi yào fāpiào.

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

When answering a "要 (yào)" question - stating 不要 (bú yào) or 要 (yào) is enough.

Question:

你要发票吗? nǐ yào fāpiào ma? Do you want a receipt?

Answer (a) 不要 bú yào I do not want (a receipt).

Answer (b) 要 yào I want (a receipt).

#### 'question word' questions

1. 你要什么? What do you want?
2. 谁要发票? Who wants a receipt?
3. 你什么时候要报告? When do you want the report?

1. nǐ yào shénme?
2. shéi yào fāpiào?
3. nǐ shénme shíhou yào bàogào?

#### 'affirmative – negative' questions

你要不要发票? nǐ yào bu yào fāpiào? Do you want a receipt?

### 'or' questions

你要茶还是咖啡？

Do you want tea or coffee?

nǐ yào chá hái shì kāfēi?

### Think (verb - 想 - xiǎng)

When expressing an opinion or when the speaker is not certain, 想 (xiǎng) is used as a verb, it means "to think something is true". It may also express the feeling of "missing" something or someone.

1. 我想他是中国人。 I think he is Chinese.
2. 我想这个城市很漂亮。 I think this city is very beautiful.
3. 我想妈妈。 I miss Mother.

1. wǒ xiǎng tā shì zhōngguó rén.
2. wǒ xiǎng zhè ge chéngshì hěn piāoliang.
3. wǒ xiǎng māma.

In common conversation, Chinese people use 觉得 (jué de) to express the above ideas.

1. 我觉得他是中国人。 I think he is Chinese.
2. 我觉得这个城市很漂亮。 I think this city is very beautiful.

1. wǒ juéde tā shì zhōngguó rén.
2. wǒ juéde zhè ge chéngshì hěn piāoliang.

### Negative Statements

不认为 (bù rèn wéi), discussed below, or 觉得 (jué de) are used to express "I do not think (something is true)". 想 (xiǎng) may be used in a negative expression, as in sentences 1 and 2 below, but 不想 (bù xiǎng), when used as a verb, means "do not miss" (do not long for) as in 我不想妈妈 (wǒ bù xiǎng māma) (I don't miss mother). 不想 (bù xiǎng) is more commonly used when 想 (xiǎng) is used as an auxiliary verb (Section 2).

1. 我想你说错了。 I think what you said is incorrect.
2. 我想他不是中国人。 I think he is not Chinese.
3. 我不觉得这条裙子漂亮。 I do not think this skirt is pretty.
4. 我觉得这条裙子不漂亮。 I do not think this skirt is pretty.

1. wǒ xiǎng nǐ shuōcuò le.



2. wǒ xiǎng tā bú shì zhōngguó rén.
3. wǒ bú jué de zhè tiáo qúnzi piāoliang。
4. wǒ jué de zhè tiáo qúnzi bú piāoliang。

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

- |                |                                      |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. 你想他是中国人吗?   | Do you think he is Chinese?          |
| 2. 你想这个城市漂亮吗?  | Do you think this city is beautiful? |
| 3. 你觉得他是中国人吗?  | Do you think he is Chinese?          |
| 4. 你觉得这个城市漂亮吗? | Do you think this city is beautiful? |
| 5. 你想你的妈妈吗?    | Do you miss your mother?             |

1. nǐ xiǎng tā shì zhōngguó rén ma?
2. nǐ xiǎng zhè ge chéngshì piàoliang ma?
3. nǐ jué de tā shì zhōngguó rén ma?
4. nǐ jué de zhè ge chéngshì piàoliang ma?
5. nǐ xiǎng nǐ de māma ma?

#### 'affirmative – negative' questions

你想不想你的妈妈? Do you miss your mother?

nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng nǐ de māma?

#### Think / Opinion (verb - 认为 – rén wéi)

When expressing an opinion or when the speaker is not certain, 认为 (rèn wéi) is used as a verb that expresses “in my opinion” or “I think”.

- |                |                                      |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. 我认为你说得对。    | I think what you said is correct.    |
| 2. 我认为这个城市很漂亮。 | I think this city is very beautiful. |

1. wǒ rén wéi nǐ shuō de duì.
2. wǒ rén wéi zhè ge chéngshì hěn piàoliang.

In common conversation, Chinese people use 觉得 (jué de) to express the above ideas.

- |                |                                      |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. 我觉得你说得对。    | I think what you said is correct.    |
| 2. 我觉得这个城市很漂亮。 | I think this city is very beautiful. |

1. wǒ jué de nǐ shuō de duì.
2. wǒ jué de zhè ge chéngshì hěn piàoliang.



## Negative Statements

不认为 (bù rèn wéi) or 觉得 (jué de) are used to express “I do not think (something is true)”.

- |                |  |
|----------------|--|
| 1. 我不认为你说得对。   | I do not think what you said is correct. |
| 2. 我不认为他是中国人。  | I do not think he is Chinese.            |
| 3. 我不认为这个城市漂亮。 | I do not think this city is beautiful.   |
| 4. 我不认为他是中国人。  | I do not think he is Chinese.            |
| 5. 我不认为这个城市漂亮。 | I do not think this city is pretty.      |
| 6. 我觉得你说得不对。   | I do not think what you said is correct. |
| 7. 我觉得你不对。     | I think you are wrong.                   |

1. wǒ bú rènwéi nǐ shuō de duì.
2. wǒ bú rènwéi tā shì zhōngguó rén.
3. wǒ bú rènwéi zhè ge chéngshì piàoliang.
4. wǒ bú rènwéi tā shì zhōngguó rén.
5. wǒ bú rènwéi zhè ge chéng shì piāoliang.
6. wǒ juéde nǐ shuō dé bú duì.
7. wǒ juéde nǐ bú duì.

## Questions

### 吗 questions

你认为他是中国人吗? Do you think he is Chinese?

nǐ rènwéi tā shì zhōngguó rén ma?

### 'question word' questions

1. 你认为是哪国人? What nationality do you think he is?
2. 你认为怎么样? What do you think?
3. 你觉得怎么样? What do you think?

1. nǐ rènwéi shì nǎ guó rén?
2. nǐ rènwéi zěnmeyàng?
3. nǐ juéde zěnmeyàng?

### 'affirmative – negative' questions

认为 (rènwéi) is not used in an affirmative-negative phrase.

- |                  |                                      |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. 你认为我说得对不对?    | Do you think what I said is correct? |
| 2. 你认为这个城市漂亮不漂亮? | Do you think this city is beautiful? |

1. nǐ rènwéi wǒ shuō dé duì bu duì?
2. nǐ rènwéi zhè gè chéngshì piàoliang bu piàoliang?

#### Need (verb - 需要 - xū yào)

In the examples below, the verb 需要 (xū yào) is used to form sentences that express needs or requirements.

- |              |                               |
|--------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. 我需要去医院。   | I need to go to the hospital. |
| 2. 你需要问老师。   | You need to ask the teacher.  |
| 3. 我需要买一本词典。 | I need to buy a dictionary.   |

1. wǒ xūyào qù yīyuàn.
2. nǐ xūyào wèn lǎoshī.
3. wǒ xūyào mǎi yì běn cídiǎn.

#### Need (verb - 得 - děi)

In the examples below, the verb 得 (děi) is used to form sentences that express needs or requirements.

- |             |                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. 我得去医院。   | I need to go to the hospital. |
| 2. 你得问老师。   | You need to ask the teacher.  |
| 3. 我得买一本词典。 | I need to buy a dictionary.   |

1. wǒ děi qù yīyuàn.
2. nǐ děi wèn lǎoshī.
3. wǒ děi mǎi yì běn cídiǎn.

#### Negative Statements

It is common to use 不用 (bú yòng) to reply to a question about if something necessary. For instance, a taxi driver may ask, 要发票吗? (yào fā piào ma? ) (Do you want a receipt?), the passenger can reply 不用 (bú yòng) (that is not necessary).

- |             |                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. 我不需要去医院。 | I do not need to go to the hospital. |
| 2. 你不需要问老师。 | You do not need to ask the teacher.  |
| 3. 我不需要买词典。 | I do not need to buy a dictionary.   |



1. wǒ bù xūyào qù yīyuàn.
2. nǐ bù xūyào wèn lǎoshī.
3. wǒ bù xūyào mǎi cídiǎn.

- |            |                                      |
|------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. 我不用去医院。 | I do not need to go to the hospital. |
| 2. 你不用问老师。 | You do not need to ask the teacher.  |
| 3. 我不用买词典。 | I do not need to buy a dictionary.   |

1. wǒ bú yòng qù yīyuàn.
2. nǐ bú yòng wèn lǎoshī.
3. wǒ bú yòng mǎi cídiǎn.

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

你需要去医院吗?      nǐ xūyào qù yīyuàn ma?      Do you need to go to the hospital?

#### 'question word' questions

谁需要去医院?      shéi xūyào qù yīyuàn?      Who needs to go to the hospital?

#### 'affirmative – negative' questions

你需(要)不需要去医院?      Do you need to go to the hospital?

nǐ xū (yào) bu xūyào qù yīyuàn?

## Section 2

### Auxiliary Verbs

Verbs that are used to "help" other verbs to express necessity, possibility and willingness are called auxiliary verbs. They may not be negated with 没 (méi), only 不 (bù) is used. They may be modified with adverbs such as 很, 太, 非常 (hěn, tài, fēicháng). When auxiliary verbs are used in a question, the auxiliary verbs may be used as a one word answers. For example, 你想去上海吗? (nǐ xiǎng qù Shànghǎi ma?) (Would you like to go to Shanghai?) may be answered by simply saying 想 (xiǎng).

#### Want / Will (Auxiliary Verbs - 要 - yào / 想 - xiǎng)

When 要 (yào) and 想 (xiǎng) are used as auxiliary verbs, 要 (yào) emphasizes demand, actual need or intention, while 想 (xiǎng) places more emphasis on the feeling of wanting.

- |              |   |
|--------------|---|
| 1. 我要去商店买东西。 | I (will / want to) go to the store and go shopping. |
| 2. 我要学习汉语。   | I (will / want to) study Chinese.                   |



- |              |  |
|--------------|--|
| 3. 我要喝咖啡。    | I (will / want to) drink coffee.                 |
| 4. 我想喝咖啡。    | I would like to drink coffee.                    |
| 5. 我想学习汉语。   | I would like to study Chinese.                   |
| 6. 我想去商店买东西。 | I would like to go to the store and go shopping. |
| 7. 王先生想认识她。  | Mr. Wang would like to meet her.                 |

1. wǒ yào qù shāngdiàn mǎi dōngxī.
2. wǒ yào xuéxí hànyǔ.
3. wǒ yào hē kāfēi.
4. wǒ xiǎng hē kāfēi.
5. wǒ xiǎng xuéxí hànyǔ.
6. wǒ xiǎng qù shāngdiàn mǎi dōngxī.
7. Wáng xiānshēng xiǎng rènshi tā.

### Negative Statements

When expressing that one does not have the desire to do something, 不想 (bù xiǎng) is used.

- |              |                                    |
|--------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. 我不想喝咖啡。   | I do not want to drink coffee.     |
| 2. 王先生不想认识她。 | Mr. Wang doesn't want to meet him. |

1. wǒ bù xiǎng hē kāfēi.
2. Wáng xiānshēng bù xiǎng rènshi tā.

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

你想去上海吗?      nǐ xiǎng qù Shànghǎi ma?      Do you want to go to Shanghai?

#### 'question word' questions

- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| 1. 你为什么学习汉语?     | Why do you want to study Chinese?              |
| 2. 明天是星期天,你想做什么? | Why will you study Chinese?                    |
| 3. 你想去哪儿?        | Tomorrow is Sunday, what would you like to do? |
| 4. 谁想喝咖啡?        | Where would you like to go?                    |
|                  | Who would like to drink coffee?                |

1. nǐ wéishénme yào xuéxí hànyǔ?
2. míngtiān shì xīngqītiān, nǐ xiǎng zuò shénme?
3. nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr?
4. shéi xiǎng hē kāfēi?



### 'affirmative – negative' questions

1. 你想不想喝咖啡?                      Would you like to drink coffee?
2. 你想不想学习汉语?                      Would you like to study Chinese?
3. 你要不要发票?                            Do you want a receipt?

1. nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng hē kāfēi?
2. nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng xuéxí hànǔ?
3. nǐ yào bu yào fāpiào?

### Should (Auxiliary verbs - 应该 - yīng gāi and 要 - yào)

When giving advice, 应该 (yīng gāi), and 要 (yào) are used as auxiliary verbs to express "should". 应该 (yīng gāi) can be used to express advice (sentence 1) or conjecture (sentence 2). When 要 (yào) is used to give advice, it expresses a relatively strong demand or need (example sentence 3).

1. 你应该学习游泳。                      You should learn to swim.
2. 他们应该吃过了。                      They must have already eaten.
3. 你要注意发音。                         You should pay attention to pronunciation.

1. nǐ yīnggāi xuéxí yóuyǒng.
2. tāmen yīnggāi chī guò le.
3. nǐ yào zhùyì fāyīn.

### Negative Statements

不应该 (bù yīng gāi) or 不该 (bù gāi) are used to give advice that means "should not".

- 你不应该抽烟。    nǐ bù yīnggāi chōuyān.            You should not smoke.  
你不该喝酒。       nǐ bù yīnggāi hē jiǔ.                    You should not drink.

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

我应该穿新衬衫吗?                      Should I wear my new shirt?

wǒ yīnggāi chuān xīn chènshān ma?

#### 'question word' questions

我应该穿什么?                      wǒ yīnggāi chuān shénme?            What should I wear?

### 'affirmative – negative' questions

1. 我应该不应该穿新衬衫? Should I wear my new shirt?
2. 我应不应该穿新衬衫? Should I wear my new shirt?

1. wǒ yīnggāi bu yīnggāi chuān xīn chènshān?
2. wǒ yīng bu yīnggāi chuān xīn chènshān?

### Must (Auxiliary Verb - 必须 - bì xū)

When expressing a necessity resulting from obligation or basic requirement due to circumstances, 必须 (bì xū) is used.

1. 你必须学习汉语。 You must study Chinese.
2. 你必须去医院。 You must go to the hospital.

1. nǐ bìxū xuéxí hànyǔ.
2. nǐ bìxū qù yīyuàn.

### Negative Statements

不必 (bù bì) is used to give advice that means "do not need to" or "not necessary".  
The word 着急 (zháo jí) can mean "hurry" or "worry", depending on context.

1. 你不必去医院。 You do not need to go to the hospital.
2. 我们不必开会。 We do not need to have a meeting.
3. 他不必在周末工作。 He doesn't need to work on weekends.
4. 你不必着急。 You do not need to hurry (worry).

1. nǐ bú bì qù yīyuàn.
2. wǒmen bú bì kāihuì.
3. tā bú bì zài zhōumò gōngzuò.
4. nǐ bú bì zháojí.

1. 你不用去医院。 You do not need to go to the hospital.
2. 我们不用开会。 We do not need to have a meeting.
3. 他不用在周末工作。 He doesn't need to work on weekends.
4. 你不用着急。 You do not need to hurry (worry).

1. nǐ bú yòng qù yīyuàn.
2. wǒmen bú yòng kāihuì.
3. tā bú yòng zài zhōumò gōngzuò.
4. nǐ bú yòng zháojí.



## Questions

### 吗 questions

1. 我必须穿白衬衫吗? Do I need to wear a white shirt?
2. 你必须去上海吗? Do you need to go to Shanghai?

1. wǒ bìxū chuān bái chènshān ma?
2. nǐ bìxū qù Shànghǎi ma?

### 'question word' questions

1. 他必须做什么? What do I need to do?
2. 谁必须去上海? Who needs to go to Shanghai?
3. 你什么时候必须去上海? When do you need to go to Shanghai?

1. tā bìxū zuò shénme?
2. shéi bìxū qù Shànghǎi?
3. nǐ shénme shíhou bìxū qù Shànghǎi?

**Unit 25**  
**Can / Able / Possible / Probable / Will**  
**(Auxiliary Verbs)**

This unit introduces how to understand 会 (huì), 能 (néng) and 可以 (kě yǐ) and 了 (liǎo) as they are all used to express ability and possibility.

**New Words**

1.	菜	cài	food
2.	唱	chàng	sing
3.	打球	dǎ qiú	to play (a ball game)
4.	打印	dǎ yìn	to print (computer)
5.	道	dào	measure word for math problems
6.	读	dú	read, study
7.	翻译	fān yì	to translate
8.	歌	gē	song
9.	黑	hēi	dark, black
10.	坏	huài	broken
11.	换	huàn	to exchange
12.	会	huì	can, will, probably
13.	件	jiàn	measure word for affairs and matters
14.	讲	jiǎng	speak, say, tell
15.	课本	kè běn	textbook
16.	可以	kě yǐ	allow, permit, may
17.	辣	là	spicy hot
18.	篮球	lán qiú	basketball
19.	了	liǎo	verb complement indicating possibility
20.	拿	ná	to carry in one's hand, to fetch
21.	能	néng	can, will
22.	乒乓球	pīng pāng qiú	ping pong, table tennis
23.	骑车	qí chē	to ride a bike
24.	骑马	qí mǎ	to ride a horse
25.	生病	shēng bìng	fall ill, become sick
26.	事	shì	matters or affairs
27.	受	shòu	to receive
28.	数学	shù xué	math (as a subject)
29.	水平	shuǐ píng	level



30.	司机	sī jī	driver
31.	疼	téng	to have pain
32.	腿	tuǐ	leg
33.	危险	wēi xiǎn	dangerous
34.	文件	wén jiàn	documents, papers
35.	问题	wèn tí	question, problem
36.	笑话	xiào huà	joke
37.	修理	xiū lǐ	to repair
38.	已经	yǐ jīng	already

**Can** (ability or knowledge) (Verb - 会 - huì)

会 may be used as a verb; as in the sentence: "他会中文。 (tā huì zhōngwén.)", which means, "He can (speak) Chinese". However, it is most commonly used as an auxiliary verb as in the examples below.

**Can** (Auxiliary Verb - 会 - huì)

会 (huì) is used an auxiliary verb to express "having ability, understanding or knowledge".

- |    |               |  |
|----|---------------|--|
| 1. | 她会讲中文。        | She speaks Chinese.                              |
| 2. | 我很会讲笑话。       | He is good at telling jokes.                     |
| 3. | 她会唱歌。         | She can sing.                                    |
| 4. | 他会骑马，他也会骑自行车。 | He can ride a horse, he can also ride a bicycle. |

1. tā huì shuō zhōngwén.
2. wǒ hěn huì jiǎng xiàohuà.
3. tā huì chànggē.
4. tā huì qí mǎ, tā yě huì qí zìxíngchē.

**Negative Statements**

- |    |          |   |
|----|----------|---|
| 1. | 她不会说英文。  | She does not speak English.               |
| 2. | 她不会打篮球。  | She does not know how to play basketball. |
| 3. | 我不太会写文章。 | I am not very good at writing essays.     |

1. wǒ bú huì shuō yīngwén.
2. tā bú huì dǎ lánqiú.
3. wǒ bú tài huì xiě wénzhāng.



## Questions

### 吗 questions

1. 她会说中文吗? Can she speak Chinese?
2. 你会写汉字吗? Do you know how to write in Chinese?
3. 你会打乒乓球吗? Do you know how to play ping pong?
4. 你会骑马吗? Do you know how to ride a horse?

1. tā huì shuō zhōngwén ma?
2. nǐ huì xiě hànzi ma?
3. nǐ huì dǎ pīngpāngqiú ma?
4. nǐ huì qí mǎ ma?

### 'question word' questions

1. 你会说什么语言? What languages do you speak?
2. 谁会说汉语? Who can speak Chinese?

1. nǐ huì shuō shénme yǔyán?
2. shéi huì shuō hànyǔ?

### 'affirmative – negative' questions

- 她会不会说中文? Does she speak Chinese?

tā huì bu huì shuō zhōngwén ?

### Possibly / Probably (Auxiliary Verb - 会)

会 (huì) is used as an auxiliary verb when talking about future possibilities, probabilities and intentions. The difference between 会 (huì) and 要 (yào) is that while both characters express intentions and future events, 要 expresses necessity through need, or a more certain outcome. 会 (huì) is used to express future events that happen as a matter of course. When saying "I will go to Beijing tomorrow." - "明天我要去北京 (míngtiān wǒ yào qù Běijīng)" is more certain than "明天我会去北京 (míngtiān wǒ huì qù Běijīng)".

1. 大家会同意这件事。 Everyone will (probably) agree on this matter.
2. 明天会下雨。 It will (probably) rain tomorrow.
3. 明天我会给你打电话。 I will (probably) give you a call tomorrow.

1. dàjiā huì tóngyì zhè jiàn shì.
2. míngtiān huì xià yǔ.



3. míngtiān wǒ huì gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà.

### Negative Statements

1. 大家不会同意这件事。 Everyone will (probably) not agree on this matter.
2. 明天不会下雨。 It will (probably) not rain tomorrow.
3. 明天我不会给你打电话。 I will not give you a call tomorrow.

1. dàjiā bú huì tóngyì zhè jiàn shì.
2. míngtiān bú huì xià yǔ.
3. míngtiān wǒ bú huì gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà.

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

大家会同意吗? dàjiā huì tóngyì ma? Will everyone agree?

#### 'affirmative – negative' questions

1. 他会不会已经走了? Can he have left already?
2. 明天会不会下雨? Will it rain tomorrow?

1. tā huì bu huì yǐjīng zǒu le?
2. míngtiān huì bu huì xià yǔ?

### Can (Auxiliary Verb - 能)

能 (néng) can be used to express -

- A) having the 'capability' to do something through talent or knowledge
- B) having the 'possibility' of doing something provided by circumstances.

1. 她能说中文。 **capability**
2. 我能用电脑。 **capability**
3. 我的电脑修好了，我能打印你的文件。 **possibility**
4. 他能来北京。 **possibility**

1. She speaks Chinese. / She can speak Chinese.
2. I know how to use a computer.
3. My computer is repaired, I can print your file.
4. (It is possible that) he can come to Beijing.

1. tā néng shuō zhōngwén.
2. wǒ néng yòng diànnǎo.
3. wǒde diànnǎo xiū hǎo le, wǒ néng dǎyìn nǐde wénjiàn.

4. tā néng lái Běijīng.

### Negative Statements

- |                      |                    |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. 我不能看中文报纸。         | <b>capability</b>  |
| 2. 我不能用电脑。           | <b>capability</b>  |
| 3. 这里不能抽烟。           | <b>possibility</b> |
| 4. 我的电脑坏了，我不能打印你的文件。 | <b>possibility</b> |

1. I can't read a Chinese newspaper.
2. I don't know how to use a computer.
3. No smoking in here.
4. My computer is broken, I can't print your document.

1. wǒ bù néng kàn zhōngwén bàozhǐ.
2. wǒ bù néng yòng diànnǎo .
3. zhè lǐ bù néng chōuyān.
4. wǒde diànnǎo huài le, wǒ bù néng dǎyìn nǐde wénjiàn.

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

- |              |                    |
|--------------|--------------------|
| 1. 你能翻译这本书吗? | <b>capability</b>  |
| 2. 她能说中文吗?   | <b>capability</b>  |
| 3. 你能去中国吗?   | <b>possibility</b> |
| 4. 小王能去大学吗?  | <b>possibility</b> |

1. Can you translate this book?
2. Does she speak Chinese?
3. Can you go to China?
4. Can little Wang go to university?

1. nǐ néng fānyì zhè běn shū ma?
2. tā néng shuō zhōngwén ma?
3. nǐ néng qù zhōngguó ma?
4. xiǎo Wáng néng qù dàxué ma?

#### 'question word' questions

**capability:** At a job interview, the question : 你能干什么? (nǐ néng gàn shénme?) means, "What are your job related abilities?"

**possibility:** If a group of tourists are stranded in a broken down bus, 我们能干什么? (wǒmen néng gàn shénme?) means, "What can we do to get back to the hotel?"



### 'affirmative – negative' questions

1. 司机能不能修理这辆车?                    **capability**
2. 我们能不能换车?                            **possibility**

1. Can the driver repair this bus?
2. Can we change buses?

1. sījī néng bu néng xiūlǐ zhè liàng chē?
2. wǒmen néng bu néng huàn chē?

### Possibility (may / can) (Auxiliary Verb - 可以 - kěyǐ)

可以 (kěyǐ) is used to express when something is "possible".

1. 下课以后你可以问老师问题。            After class you may ask the teacher questions.
2. 我们可以在外边抽烟。                    We may smoke outside.
3. 你可以去上海。                              You may go to Shanghai.

1. xiàkè yǐhòu nǐ kěyǐ wèn lǎoshī wèntí.
2. wǒmen kěyǐ zài wàimian chōuyān.
3. nǐ kěyǐ qù Shànghǎi.

### Negative Statements

Negative statements are made using 不能 (bù néng) .

(note : 不可以 (bù kě yǐ) is not used to express "it is not possible".)

1. 你们不能在这儿抽烟。                    You may not smoke here.
2. 你不能回家。                                You may not go home.
3. 开车的时候不能喝酒。                    When you drive you may not drink.

1. nǐmen bù néng zài zhèr chōuyān.
2. nǐ bù néng huí jiā.
3. kāichē de shíhòu bù néng hē jiǔ .

### Questions

#### 吗 questions

1. 教室里，可以吸抽吗?                    Can we smoke in the classroom?
2. 我可以抽烟吗?                              May I smoke?
3. 我可以用电脑吗?                          May I use the computer?
4. 我可以看电视吗?                          May I watch TV?



1. jiāoshì lǐ, kěyǐ chōuyān ma?
2. wǒ kěyǐ chōuyān ma?
3. wǒ kěyǐ yòng diànnǎo ma?
4. wǒ kěyǐ kàn diànshì ma?

### 'question word' questions

1. 谁可以看电视? Who can watch TV?
2. 孩子们可以做什么? What may the children do?

1. shéi kěyǐ kàn diànshì?
2. háizǐmen kěyǐ zuò shénme?

### 'affirmative – negative' questions

- 你可不可以去他的家? Can you go to his house?

nǐ kě bu kěyǐ qù tā de jiā ?

## 了 (liǎo) - possible / not possible

**Verb + 得了 (Verb + de liǎo) = possible**

**Verb + 不了 (Verb + bù liǎo) = not possible**

了 (liǎo) is used after a verb with 得 (de) or 不 (bù) as a verb “compliment of potentiality” to show if an action can take place or if an action is possible to finish. In the following examples, 能 (néng) has the same meaning as 得了 (de liǎo) and 不能 (bù néng) has the same meaning as 不了 (bù liǎo). These sentences are used to express whether an action can take place or be completed.

1. 今天我有时间，能去。
2. 今天我有时间，去得了。
3. 今天我没有时间，不能去。
4. 今天我没有时间，去不了。

1. jīntiān wǒ yǒu shíjiān, néng qù。
2. jīntiān wǒ yǒu shíjiān, qù de liǎo。
3. jīntiān wǒ méiyǒu shíjiān, bù néng qù。
4. jīntiān wǒ méiyǒu shíjiān, qù bù liǎo。



- 1 / 2. I have time today, I can go.  
 3 / 4. I don't have time today, I can't go.

To form a questions, 吗 (ma) is added to the end of the sentence.

今天我去书店，你去得了吗？  
 jīntiān wǒ qù shūdiàn, nǐ qù de liǎo ma?  
 I am going to the bookstore today, can you go?

今天有事，去不了。  
 jīntiān yǒu shì, qù bù liǎo。  
 I have some things to do, I can't go.

得了(de liǎo) and 不了 (bù liǎo) are also used to indicate whether an act is able to be finished.

你吃得了这么多饺子吗？  
 nǐ chī de liǎo zhème duō jiǎozi ma?  
 Can you eat that many dumplings?

吃得了 / 吃不了  
 chī de liǎo / chī bù liǎo  
 Yes I can. / No I can't.

When trying to dissuade someone from doing something, only the pattern 不能 (bù néng) + V is used. (In the sentence below, 你去不了 (nǐ qù bù liǎo ) would be incorrect.)

那儿太危险，你不能去。  
 nàr tài wēixiǎn, nǐ bù néng qù。  
 It is too dangerous there, you can't go.

When indicating that something can't be done because of lack the ability, the sentence below is used. In this case, you would not say: 你不能拿 (nǐ bù néng ná) .

1. 东西太多了，你拿不了。  
 dōngxi tài duō le, nǐ ná bù liǎo。  
 There are too many things, you can't carry them.

When indicating that conditions are not sufficient, we normally use a verb compliment as in the sentence below. In this case, you would not say 我不能看见 (wǒ bù néng kàn jiàn). (as discussed in Unit 20 and Section 3 of Unit 22)



2. 屋子里太黑，我看不见。 The room is too dark, I can't see.

wūzi lǐ tài hēi, wǒ kàn bú jiàn。

受不了(shòu bù liǎo) is used to say “can't stand (something)”.

1. 我受不了太热的天气。 I can't stand hot weather.  
wǒ shòu bù liǎo tài rè de tiānqì。
2. 天气太热！我受不了。 The weather is too hot! I  
can't stand it.  
tiānqì tài rè! wǒ shòu bù liǎo。

### Example Sentences

1. 这个菜太辣，我吃不了。
2. 我的汉语水平太低，我学不了这个课本。
3. 我要开车，我喝不了酒。
4. 他生病了，今天他上不了课。
5. 我不认识这个字，我读不了。
6. 我腿疼，我走不了。

1. This food is too spicy, I can't eat it.
2. My Chinese level is too low, I can't study this text.
3. I will drive, I can't drink.
4. He is ill, he can't come to class today.
5. I don't recognize this character, I can't read it.
6. My legs hurt, I can't walk there.

1. zhè gè cài tài là, wǒ chī bù liǎo。
2. wǒde hànyǔ shuǐpíng tài dī, wǒ xué bù liǎo zhè  
gè kèběn。
3. wǒ yào kāichē, wǒ hē bù liǎo jiǔ。
4. tā shēng bìng le, jīn tiān tā shàng bù liǎo kè。
5. wǒ bú rènshí zhè gè zì, wǒ dú bù liǎo。
6. wǒ tuǐ téng, wǒ zǒu bù liǎo。



## Unit 26

### If / Then / Because / Don't / Other / But / Still

This unit introduces how to use 就 (jiù) which is used in sentence patterns that make "if-then" and "as soon as" statements. Other ways to say "then", using 才 (cái) and 然后 (rán hòu) are shown as well.

#### New Words

1.	别	bié	other, do not
2.	别的	bié de	other(s)
3.	才	cái	then
4.	长城	cháng chéng	the Great Wall
5.	打扰	dǎ rǎo	disturb
6.	但是	dàn shì	but
7.	东方	dōng fāng	eastern, Asia
8.	读书	dú shū	to study
9.	父母	fù mǔ	parents
10.	告诉	gào sù	tell
11.	故宫	gù gōng	Forbidden City (historical site in Beijing)
12.	还	hái	still, yet, still more, also, (used for emphasis)
13.	结婚	jié hūn	married
14.	开放	kāi fàng	to make open to the public
15.	离开	lí kāi	leave
16.	另外	lìng wài	other, besides
17.	然后	rán hòu	then, afterwards
18.	如果	rú guǒ	if
19.	生活	shēng huó	life
20.	死	sǐ	die
21.	所以	suǒ yǐ	so
22.	谈	tán	talk, discuss
23.	文化	wén huà	culture
24.	先	xiān	first
25.	要是	yào shì	if
26.	这么	zhè me	so, very
27.	只	zhǐ	only
28.	知道	zhī dào	to know



29. 最好            zuì hǎo                    best

### Because...So

The following sentence patterns are used to express “because” and “so”.

1. 因为。 。 。 所以。 。 。 。            because .....so.....
2. 因为。 。 。 ， 。 。 。 。            because ..... , .....
3. 。 。 。 。 。 所以。 。 。 。            .....so.....
4. 。 。 。 。 。 因为。 。 。 。            .....because.....

1. 因为。。。。 所以。。。 (yīnwèi。。 suǒyǐ。。 )            because .....so....

因为	reason	所以	action or event
因为	他有病	所以	没上班。

Because he is sick, so (he) didn't go to work today.

yīnwèi tā yǒu bìng suǒyǐ méi shàngbān.

因为在中国工作和生活所以他学习汉语。

Because he works and lives in China, so he studies Chinese.

yīnwèi zài zhōngguó gōngzuò hé shēnghuó, suǒyǐ tā xuéxí hànǔ.

2. 因为。。。。 ， 。。。。 (yīnwèi。。 。 。 。 )            because ..... , .....

因为	reason	,	action or event
因为	在中国生活	,	他学习汉语。

Because he lives in China, he studies Chinese.

yīnwèi zài zhōngguó shēnghuó, tā xuéxí hànǔ.

3. 。。。。 。 所以。。。。 (。。 suǒyǐ。。 )            .....so.....

reason	,	所以	action or event
他喜欢东方文化	,	所以	他要去中国。



He likes eastern culture, so he wants to go to China.

tā xǐhuan dōngfāng wénhuà, suǒyǐ tā yào qù zhōngguó.

4. .... 因为..... (.. yīnwèi..) .....because.....

<b>action or event</b>	<b>因为</b>	<b>reason</b>
他去上海	因为	他的父母住在那里。

He will go to Shanghai because his parents live there.

tā qù Shànghǎi yīnwèi tāde fùmǔ zhù zài nà lǐ.

### If...Then

The following “if.....then” statements “if” expresses “suppose that” (a condition were true). In these sentence patterns (1-5), the subject is optional.

<b>IF</b>		<b>THEN</b>	
1. 要是...	condition .....	(subject) 就	action or event
2. 如果...	condition .....	(subject) 就	action or event
3. 要是..	condition .. 的话..	(subject) 就	action or event
4.	condition .. 的话..	(subject) 就	action or event
5. 如果...	condition .. 的话..	(subject) 就	action or event

<b>1.</b>	<b>要是</b>	<b>condition</b>	<b>(subject)</b>	<b>就</b>	<b>action or event</b>
	要是	有问题	(你)	就	问我。

If you have any questions, (you) ask me.

yàoshi yǒu wèntí (nǐ) jiù wèn wǒ.

- |                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| 1. 要是下雨我就带雨伞。    | If it rains, I will take an umbrella.   |
| 2. 要是渴你就喝茶。      | If you are thirsty, drink some tea.     |
| 3. 要是我去中国我就学习汉语。 | If I go to China, I will study Chinese. |

- yàoshi xiàyǔ wǒ jiù dài yǔsǎn.
- yàoshi kě nǐ jiù hē chá.
- yàoshi wǒ qù zhōngguó wǒ jiù xuéxí hànyǔ.



2.        如果                    **condition**                    **(subject)**                    就                    **action or event**  
             如果                    下雪                    (滑雪场)                    就                    开放。

If it snows (the ski resort) will open for business.

rúguǒ xiàxuě (huáxuě chǎng) jiù kāifàng.

如果你结婚了，你就知道了。      If you were married, you would know (understand).

rúguǒ nǐ jiéhūn le, nǐ jiù zhīdào le.

3.        要是                    **condition**                    的话                    **(subject)**                    就                    **action or event**  
             要是                    我有钱                    的话                    (我)                    就                    去旅游。

If I had money, ( I ) would go traveling.

yàoshì wǒ yǒu qián dehuà (wǒ) jiù qù lǚyóu.

1. 要是你今年十八岁的话，你就可以参加。
2. 要是你想喝咖啡的话，我们就去咖啡店。
3. 要是你有时间的话，就给我打电话。

1. If you are 18 years old, you may participate.
2. If you would like to drink coffee, we will go to a coffee shop.
3. If you have time, give me a call.

1. yàoshì nǐ jīnnián shí bā suì dehuà, nǐ jiù kěyǐ cānjiā.
2. yàoshì nǐ xiǎng hē kāfēi dehuà, wǒmen jiù qù kāfēidiàn.
3. yàoshì nǐ yǒu shíjiān dehuà, jiù gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà.

4.        **condition**                    的话                    **(subject)**                    就                    **action or event**  
             你们都去                    的话                    (我)                    就                    去。

nǐmen dōu qù dehuà (wǒ) jiù qù.      If you all go, I will go.

1. 天气好的话我们就去长城。
2. 有时间的话，就给我打电话。
3. 你想喝咖啡的话，我们就去咖啡店。



1. If the weather is good, we go to the Great Wall.
2. If you have time, give me a call.
3. If you would like to drink coffee, we will go to a coffee shop.

1. tiānqì hǎo dehuà wǒmen jiù qù chángchéng.
2. yǒu shíjiān dehuà, jiù gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà.
3. nǐ xiǎng hé kāfēi dehuà, wǒmen jiù qù kāfēidiàn.

5. 如果 condition .. 的话.. (subject) 就 action or event  
 如果 下雪 的话 (滑雪场) 就 开放

If it snows (the ski resort) will open for business.

rúguǒ xiàxuě dehuà (huáxuě chǎng) jiù kāifàng.

### Then

In sentence patterns 1,2 and 3; 就 is used to express a time relationship between two conditions, events or actions in which

- a) one condition, event or action immediately follows another - "as soon as"
- b) one condition, event or action follows another in a relatively early time frame.

1. action, event or condition 就..... action, event or condition

2. subject... 一... condition... 就... condition  
 event... event  
 action... action

3. 一... condition... 就... condition  
 event... subject... event  
 action... action

In sentence pattern 4, 才(cái) is used to express a time relationship between two events or actions in which one follows another after a relatively long time or to indicate a single event takes place in a relatively late time frame.

4. action or event 就..... action or event

In sentence pattern 5, 先(xiān) is placed before the first of two things that happen in succession. 然后(rán hòu) is placed before the second thing that happens. There is no length of time implied. Sometimes 先(xiān) is not necessary.



5. subject... 先... action or event... 然后... action or event

6. action or event... 然后... action or event

**1. action or event 就 action or event**

- |           |   |       |                    |
|-----------|---|-------|--------------------|
| 1. 她看完电影  | 就 | 回家。   | (immediately)      |
| 2. 他下了班   | 就 | 去图书馆。 | (immediately)      |
| 3. 他吃了饭   | 就 | 看电影了。 | (immediately)      |
| 4. 他五岁    | 就 | 上学了。  | (relatively early) |
| 5. 九月     | 就 | 下雪了。  | (relatively early) |
| 6. 他早上五点钟 | 就 | 上班。   | (relatively early) |

1. She will finish watching the movie then she will return home.
2. He gets off work, then he goes to the library.
3. He ate, then he watched a movie.
4. He was five years old when he started going to school.
5. (It is) September, it is snowing.
6. He starts work at five in the morning.

1. tā kànwán diànyǐng, jiù huí jiā.
2. tā xià le bān jiù qù túshūguǎn.
3. tā chī le fàn jiù kàn diànyǐng le.
4. tā wǔ suì jiù shàngxué le.
5. jiǔ yuè jiù xiàxuě le.
6. tā zǎoshàng wǔdiǎnzhōng jiù shàngbān.

**2. subject — condition / event / action 就 action or event**  
我 — 下班 就 看见了他。

wǒ yí xiàbān jiù kànjiàn le tā. I saw him right after I got off work.

1. 我一到中国就去看我的老朋友。
2. 他们一下车就看见了他们的老师。

1. As soon as I arrive in China, I will go to see my old friend.
2. Right after they got out of the car, they saw their teacher.

1. wǒ yí dào zhōngguó jiù qù kàn wǒde lǎo péngyou.



2. tāmen yí xiàchē jiù kànjiàn le tāmen de lǎoshī.

3. 一 condition / event / action subject 就 action or event  
一 到中国 我 就 去看我的老朋友。

yí dào zhōngguó wǒ jiù qù kàn wǒde lǎo péngyou.

As soon as I arrive in China, I will go to see my old friend.

1. 天气一冷我就穿大衣。
2. 一下车他们就看见了他们的老师。

1. It is cold, I will wear a coat.
2. They got out of the car then saw their friend.

1. tiānqì yì lěng wǒ jiù chuān dàyī.
2. yí xiàchē tāmen jiù kàn jiàn le tāmen de lǎoshī.

Note: 就 (jiù) is sometimes used to indicate emphasis, not a time relationship.  
他就是王老师。 tā jiù shì Wáng lǎoshī. He is Teacher Wang.

- | 4. action or event | 才 | action or event |                   |
|--------------------|---|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. 她看完电影           | 才 | 回家。             | (relatively long) |
| 2. 他吃完饭            | 才 | 去上班。            | (relatively long) |
| 3. 他晚上九点钟          | 才 | 下班。             | (relatively late) |
| 4. 十二月             | 才 | 下雪。             | (relatively late) |
| 5. 他五十岁            | 才 | 结婚。             | (relatively late) |

1. She will go home after the movie.
2. He finishes dinner and then goes to work.
3. He gets off work at nine in the evening.
4. It's December and it is snowing.
5. He was 50 and then he got married.

1. tā kànwán diànyǐng cái huí jiā.
2. tā chīwánfàn cái qù shàngbān.
3. tā wǎnshàng jiǔ diǎnzhōng cái xiàbān.
4. shíèryuè cái xiàxuě.
5. tā wǔshí suì cái jiéhūn.



5.    **subject**        先        **action or event**        然后        **action or event**  
      他            先        买了一本书,        然后        买了两支笔。

First he bought a book, then bought two pens.

tā xiān mǎi le yì běn shū, ránhòu mǎi le liǎng zhī bǐ.

1. 他们先去北京,然后去上海。
2. 我们先看电影,然后回家。
3. 你先写作业,然后看电视。

1. We will first go to Beijing, then go to Shanghai.
2. We will watch a movie and then go home.
3. You do your homework and then watch TV.

1. tāmen xiān qù Běijīng, ránhòu qù Shànghǎi.
2. wǒmen xiān kàn diànyǐng, ránhòu huíjiā.
3. nǐ xiān xiě zuòyè, ránhòu kàn diànshì.

6.    **action or event**        然后        **action or event**  
      他买了一本书        然后        买了两支笔。

He bought a book then bought two pens.

tā mǎi le yì běn shū ránhòu mǎi le liǎng zhī bǐ.

1. 他们去北京, 然后去上海。
2. 我们看电影,然后回家。
3. 你写作业,然后看电视。

1. He will first go to Beijing, then will go to Shanghai.
2. We will watch a movie and then go home.
3. You do your homework and then watch TV.

1. tāmen qù Běijīng, ránhòu qù Shànghǎi.
2. wǒmen kàn diànyǐng, ránhòu huí jiā.
3. nǐ xiě zuòyè, ránhòu kàn diànshì.



## Don't / Other / But / Still ( 别 / 别的 - 另外 / 但是 / 还 )

### Don't ( 别 )

别 (bié) is used to make commands and statements that mean "don't". 别 (bié) is not used in sentences that express "I don't". When expressing "I do not", 不 (bù) is used.

- |                |                                      |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. 请你别走。       | Please, don't go.                    |
| 2. 你们最好别去那个地方。 | You had better not go to that place. |
| 3. 别打扰他。       | Don't disturb him.                   |
| 4. 他在读书，别打扰他。  | He is studying, don't disturb him.   |

1. qǐng nǐ bié zǒu.
2. nǐmen zuìhǎo bié qù nà gè dìfang.
3. bié dǎrǎo tā.
4. tā zài dúshū, bié dǎrǎo tā.

### Other ( 别的 / 另外 )

别的 (bié de) or 别 (bié) are used to express "other", in the context of "any other". 另外 (lìng wài) or 另外的 (lìng wài de) are used to express "other" in the context of "besides" or "in addition to".

1. 教室里只有王老师没有别人。
2. 我不喜欢这件衣服，另外的那件太贵。

1. Teacher Wang is the only one in the classroom, there is no one else.
2. I don't like this article of clothing, the other one is too expensive.

1. jiāoshì lǐ zhǐ yǒu Wáng lǎoshī méiyǒu bié rén.
2. wǒ bù xǐhuan zhè jiàn yīfu, lìngwài de nà jiàn tài guì.

### But ( 但是 )

1. 他想学习英语但是没有时间。
2. 这张桌子很好，但是太贵。

1. He would like to study English but he has no time.
2. This desk is good, but too expensive.

1. tā xiǎng xuéxí yīngyǔ dànshì méiyǒu shíjiān.
2. zhè zhāng zhuōzi hěn hǎo, dànshì tài guì.



### Still / Yet / Also / (emphasis) (还)

There are many ways that 还 (hái) is used. The examples below illustrate three ways that it is commonly used - "still / yet" (sentences 1, 2), "also" (sentences 3, 4) and it can be added for emphasis in questions (sentence 5).

1. 九点了，小王还在看书。
2. 已经九月了，天还这么热。
3. 他会说中文，还会说英语。
4. 我们去了长城，还去了故宫。
5. 这儿比那儿还冷。

1. Nine o'clock, Little Wang is still reading.
2. Already September, yet it is hot.
3. He speaks Chinese and also speaks English.
4. We went to the Great Wall and went to the Forbidden City too.
5. It is colder here than it is there.

1. jiudiǎn le, xiǎo Wáng hái zài kànshū。
2. yǐjīng jiǔyuè le, tiān hái zhème rè。
3. tā huì shuō zhōngwén, hái huì shuō yīngyǔ。
4. wǒmen qù le chángchéng, hái qù le gùgōng。
5. zhèr bǐ nàr hái lěng。



## Unit 27

### Before / After / While / When

This unit introduces how express time relationships between events or actions.

#### New Words

1.	比赛	bǐ sài	match, competition
2.	以后	yǐ hòu	after
3.	以前	yǐ qián	before
4.	一边。。一边	yìbiān...yìbiān	while (two actions occurring at the same time)
5.	之后	zhī hòu	after
6.	之前	zhī qián	before

In the following examples 以前 (yǐ qián) and 之前 (zhī qián) are interchangeable and 以后 (yǐ hòu) is interchangeable with 之后 (zhī hòu).

#### BEFORE

In this sentence pattern, the sentence starts with a phrase that indicates a length of time, a point in time or an event. The action in the sentence happens prior to that.

- |    |              |   |
|----|--------------|---|
| 1. | 两个小时以前我吃晚饭了。 | Two hours ago, I ate dinner.                    |
| 2. | 吃饭以前我去商店了。   | Before I ate dinner, I went to the store.       |
| 3. | 开会以前我们讨论这件事。 | Before the meeting, we will discuss the matter. |
| 4. | 六点钟以前我要吃晚饭。  | I will eat dinner before 6 pm.                  |
| 5. | 比赛以前我们要开会。   | We will have a meeting before the game.         |

1. liǎng ge xiǎoshí yǐqián wǒ chī wǎnfàn le.
2. chīfàn yǐqián wǒ qù shāngdiàn le.
3. kāihuì yǐqián wǒmen tāolùn zhè jiàn shì.
4. liùdiǎnzhōng yǐqián wǒ yào chī wǎnfàn.
5. bǐsài yǐqián wǒmen yào kāihuì.

#### AFTER

In this sentence pattern, the beginning of the sentence is a phrase that indicates a length of time, a point in time or an event. The action in the sentence happens after that.

- |    |               |  |
|----|---------------|--|
| 1. | 两个小时以后我要上课。   | I will have class in 2 hours.                  |
| 2. | 开会以后我们要讨论这件事。 | After the meeting, we will discuss the matter. |
| 3. | 六点钟以后我要吃晚饭。   | I will eat dinner after 6 pm.                  |



- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| 4. 比赛以后我们要吃晚饭。   | We will eat dinner after the game.         |
| 5. 昨天下班以后我们看电影了。 | After work yesterday, I watched a movie.   |
| 6. 吃饭以后我去商店了。    | After I ate dinner, I went to the store.   |
| 7. 开会以后我们讨论这件事了。 | After the meeting we discussed the matter. |
| 8. 六点钟以后我吃晚饭了。   | We ate dinner after 6 pm.                  |

1. liǎng ge xiǎoshí yǐhòu wǒ yào shàngkè.
2. kāihuì yǐhòu wǒmen yào tāolùn zhè jiàn shì.
3. liù diǎnzhōng yǐhòu wǒ yào chī wǎnfàn.
4. bǐsài yǐhòu wǒmen yào chī wǎnfàn.
5. zuótiān xiàbān yǐhòu wǒmen kàn diànyǐng le.
6. chīfàn yǐhòu wǒ qù shāngdiàn le.
7. kāihuì yǐhòu wǒmen tāolùn zhè jiàn shì le.
8. liù diǎnzhōng yǐhòu wǒ chī wǎnfàn le.

#### WHILE

This sentence pattern is used to express when the subject is doing two actions at one time.

<b>subject</b>	一边	<b>action</b>	一边	<b>action</b>
我	一边	吃晚饭	一边	看电视。

I eat dinner while I watch television.

wǒ yībiān chī wǎnfàn yībiān kàn diànshì.

- |                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| 1. 我一边看书，一边听音乐。 | I read while I listen to music.            |
| 2. 我一边听音乐，一边写信。 | I listen to music while I write letters.   |
| 3. 他一边喝茶，一边看电视。 | He drinks tea while he watches television. |

1. wǒ yībiān kàn shū, yībiān tīng yīnyuè.
2. wǒ yībiān tīng yīnyuè, yībiān xiě xìn.
3. tā yībiān hē chá, yībiān kàn diànshì.



## WHEN / WHILE

This sentence patterns are used to express when something happens, 当 (dāng) is optional.

当            event            的时候            event  
当            我看书            的时候            他在看电视。

While I am reading, he is watching TV.

dāng wǒ kàn shū deshíhou tā zài kàn diànshì.

1. 他在英国的时候买了一台电脑。
2. 我在北京的时候每天说汉语。

1. When he was in England, he bought a computer.
2. When I was in Beijing, I spoke Chinese everyday.

1. tā zài yīngguó deshíhou mǎi le yì tái diànnǎo.
2. wǒ zài Běijīng deshíhou měitiān shuō hànǔ.

## Questions

### 吗 questions

1. 两个小时以前你吃晚饭了吗?            Did you eat dinner two hours ago?
2. 两个小时以后你要吃晚饭吗?            Will you eat dinner in 2 hours?
3. 你一边看书一边听音乐吗?            Do you read while you listen to music?
4. 你在北京的时候每天说汉语吗?            When you were in Beijing, did you speak Chinese everyday?

1. liǎng ge xiǎoshí yǐqián nǐ chī wǎnfàn le ma?
2. liǎng ge xiǎoshí yǐhòu nǐ yào chī wǎnfàn ma?
3. nǐ yìbiān kàn shū, yìbiān tīng yīnyuè ma?
4. nǐ zài Běijīng deshíhou měitiān shuō hànǔ ma?

### 'question word' questions

1. 你什么时候想吃晚饭?            When will you eat dinner?
2. 你在北京的时候做什么?            When you were in Beijing, what did you do?

1. nǐ shénme shíhou xiǎng chī wǎnfàn?
2. dāng nǐ zài Běijīng deshíhou zuò shénme?

**Unit 28**  
**Repetition of Actions**  
**再 (zài) and 又 (yòu)**

This unit introduces how to express repetition of actions and events that happen in succession.

**New Words**

1.	安静	ān jìng	quiet
2.	地区	dì qū	area
3.	饭馆	fàn guǎn	restaurant
4.	好吃	hǎo chī	delicious
5.	环境	huán jìng	environment
6.	极	jí	extremely
7.	结果	jié guǒ	outcome, result
8.	吉他	jítā	guitar
9.	流利	liú lì	fluent
10.	难过	nán guò	feel sad, grieved
11.	弹	tán	play a stringed musical instrument with one's fingers, pluck a string
12.	外国	wài guó	foreign country
13.	修	xiū	repair
14.	又	yòu	(1) indicates a repetition of an action (2) indicates a succession of actions
15.	又。。又	yòu....yòu	indicates two actions that happen in the same time period
16.	再	zài	(1) indicates a repetition of an action (2) Indicates a continuation

**再 (zài) and 又 (yòu)**

The adverbs 再 (zài) and 又 (yòu) both indicate the repetition of an action. 再 (zài) is used to denote an action or state of affairs which has not been repeated yet and 又 (yòu) is used when the repetition has already occurred.

1. 他今天去图书馆了，他说明天再去。
2. 他昨天来了，今天又来了。
3. 他昨天没来，今天又没来。

1. He went to the library today, he said that he would go to the library tomorrow.
2. He came yesterday, he came again today.
3. He didn't come yesterday, he won't come tomorrow.



1. tā jīntiān qù túshūguǎn le, tā shuō míngtiān zài qù。
2. tā zuótiān lái le, jīntiān yòu lái le。
3. tā zuótiān méi lái, jīntiān yòu méi lái。

**又 (yòu) is used to indicate that two actions happen in succession**

1. 这个电视去年修了一次,今年又修了一次,结果还是没有修好。
2. 他在大学学了四年中文又学了三年法文。

1. This TV was repaired once last year, this year it was repaired again, the result is that it still isn't fixed.
2. He studied three years of Chinese at university and then studied three years of French.

1. zhè gè diànshì qù nián xiū le yí cì, jīn nián yòu xiū le yí cì, jiéguǒ hái shì méi yǒu xiū hǎo。
2. tā zài dàxué xué le sì nián zhōngwén yòu xué le sān nián fǎwén。

**The difference between 一边。。。一边 and 又。。。又**

一边。。。一边 (yìbiān。。。yìbiān) is used to express doing two or more actions at the same time while 又。。。又 (yòu。。。yòu) is used to express two actions that happen in the same time period. For example, if two people were walking together talking you would say, 一边走一边说 (yìbiān zǒu yìbiān shuō) but you would not say 又走又说 (yòu zǒu yòu shuō). If a person had cried and laughed in the same time frame you could say 又哭又笑 (yòu kū yòu xiào) but you would not say 一边哭一边笑 (yìbiān kū yìbiān xiào).

1. 王太太一边做饭一边跟客人聊天。
2. 他一边弹吉他一边唱歌一边跳舞。
3. 孩子一边看电视一边吃苹果。
4. 王先生一边喝咖啡一边看报。

1. Mrs. Wang cooks dinner while chit chatting with the guests.
2. He plays guitar, sings and dances at the same time.
3. The child watches TV while eating an apple.
4. Mr. Wang drinks coffee while reading the newspaper.

1. Wáng tàitài yìbiān zuò fàn yìbiān gēn kèrén liáotiān。
2. tā yìbiān tán jítā yìbiān chànggē yìbiān tiàowǔ。
3. háizi yìbiān kàn diànshì yìbiān chī píngguǒ。



4. Wáng xiānshēng yìbiān hē kāfēi yìbiān kànbào。

又。。。又 **may be used to express two situations or characteristics that occur at the same time**

1. 这家饭馆的菜又好吃又便宜。
2. 学生们高兴极了,又唱又跳。
3. 他去外国学习,又高兴又难过。
4. 他说的汉语又清楚又流利。
5. 这个大衣,又贵又难看。
6. 这个地区的环境又安静又漂亮。

1. This restaurant's food is both delicious and cheap.
2. The students are very happy, they are both singing and dancing.
3. He is going abroad to study, he is both happy and sad.
4. He speaks Chinese both clearly and fluently.
5. This coat is both expensive and ugly.
6. This neighborhood is both quite and clean.

1. zhè jiā fànguǎn de cài yòu hǎochī yòu piányi。
2. xuéshēngmen gāoxìng jí le, yòu chàng yòu tiào。
3. tā qù wàiguó xuéxí, yòu gāoxìng yòu nánguò。
4. tā shuō dé hànyǔ, yòu qīngchū yòu liúlì。
5. zhè gè dàyī, yòu guì yòu nánkàn。
6. zhè gè dìqū de huánjìng yòu ānjìng yòu piāoliang。

再 (zài) **may also indicate a continuation of actions.** For instance, if someone were going out for little while they may say:

我先去图书馆然后再去超市。

I will go to the library and then go to the supermarket.

wǒ xiān qù túshūguǎn ránhòu zài qù chāoshì。



## Unit 29

### From / To / With

This unit introduces some commonly used prepositions that are used when talking about distances and time as well as how to use the preposition "with".

#### New Words

1.	宾馆	bīn guǎn	hotel
2.	从	cóng	from (a place or time)
3.	超市	chāo shì	supermarket, grocery store
4.	打	dǎ	play (badminton, basketball, ping pong)
5.	放假	fàng jià	vacation
6.	附近	fù jìn	nearby
7.	跟	gēn	with, and
8.	公里	gōng lǐ	kilometer
9.	广州	Guǎng zhōu	a city in China
10.	花园宾馆	huā yuán bīn guǎn	Garden Hotel
11.	会议室	huì yì shì	meeting room
12.	机场	jī chǎng	airport
13.	教学楼	jiāo xué lóu	teaching building
14.	近	jìn	near
15.	开始	kāi shǐ	begin, start
16.	离	lí	from (a place)
17.	首都	shǒu dū	capital
18.	羽毛球	yǔ máo qiú	badminton
19.	语言	yǔ yán	language
20.	远	yuǎn	far

#### From

从 (cóng) is a preposition that means “from”. It can be used when stating a starting point from a place as well as a starting point in time.

1. 我从这儿去你的家。
2. 我从学校去邮局。
3. 我们从明天开始放假。
4. 我们从上午十点钟工作到下午五点钟。
5. 他从去年一月到今年五月在中国旅游。

1. I will go from here to your home.



2. I will go from the school to the post office.
3. We start a vacation tomorrow.
4. I work from 10 o'clock in the morning to 5 o'clock in the afternoon.
5. He traveled in China from January of last year to May of this year.

1. wǒ cóng zhè qù nǐde jiā.
2. wǒ cóng xuéxiào qù yóujú.
3. wǒmen cóng míngtiān kāishǐ fàngjià.
4. wǒmen cóng shàngwǔ shídiǎnzhōng gōngzuò dào xiàwǔ wǔdiǎnzhōng.
5. tā cóng qùnián yīyuè dào jīnnián wǔyuè zài zhōngguó lǚyóu.

离 (lí) means “from” and is used when expressing exact distance measurements as well as relative terms such as far and near.

1. 花园宾馆离我的家不太远。
2. 北京离广州很远。
3. 我们学校离医院两公里。
4. 教学楼离图书馆不太远。
5. 北京语言学院离首都机场很远。

1. The Garden Hotel isn't too far from my home.
2. It is a long way from Beijing to Guangzhou.
3. Our school is two kilometers from the hospital.
4. The teaching building isn't far from the library.
5. It is a long way from Beijing Language Institute to the Capitol Airport.

1. huāyuán bīnguǎn lí wǒde jiā bú tài yuǎn.
2. Běijīng lí Guǎngzhōu hěn yuǎn.
3. wǒmen xuéxiào lí yīyuàn liǎng gōnglǐ.
4. jiāoxuélóu lí túshūguǎn bú tài yuǎn.
5. Běijīng yǔyán xuéyuàn lí shǒudū jīchǎng hěn yuǎn.

跟 (gēn) is used to indicate that people are engaged in something together.

<b>person</b>	<b>跟</b>	<b>person</b>	<b>一起</b>	<b>action or event</b>
我	跟	中国朋友	一起	去跳舞。

My Chinese friend and I go dancing together.



wǒ gēn zhōngguó péngyou yìqǐ qù tiàowǔ.

1. 我跟他一起去学校。 I will go with him to school.
2. 我跟我的爸爸一起打羽毛球。 I play badminton with my dad.

1. wǒ gēn tā yìqǐ qù xuéxiào.
2. wǒ gēn wǒde bàba yìqǐ dǎ yǔmáoqiú.

附近 (fù jìn) (nearby) is a noun and may be used as a subject, object or attributive modifier.

1. 附近有一个超市。 (subject)
2. 我家附近有一个超市。 (subject)
3. 那个超市就在附近。 (object)
4. 附近的超市我都去过了。 (attributive modifier)

1. There is a supermarket nearby.
2. Nearby my home is a supermarket.
3. That supermarket is nearby.
4. I have been to all the nearby supermarkets.

1. fùjìn yǒu yí gè chāoshì.
2. wǒ jiā fùjìn yǒu yí gè chāoshì.
3. nà gè chāoshì jiù zài fùjìn.
4. fùjìn de chāoshì wǒ dōu qù guò le.

近 (jìn) (near) is an adjective and is usually expressed by saying 很近 (hěn jìn).

Question: 你去了哪个超市? Which supermarket did you going to?  
nǐ qù le nǎ gè chāoshì?

Answer 1: 我去了附近的超市。 I went to a supermarket that is nearby.  
wǒ qù le fùjìn de chāoshì.

Answer 2: 我去了离我家很近的超市。 I went to the supermarket near my home.  
wǒ qù le lí wǒ jiā hěn jìn de chāoshì.

## Unit 30

### Simple Compliment of Direction (来 and 去) and

#### Compound Compliment of Direction

This first part of this unit shows how 来 (lái) and 去 (qù) are used to compliment verbs to show the direction of the action in a sentence. The second half of the unit introduces how 来 (lái) and 去 (qù) are combined with other verbs to form compound compliments of direction which are used to indicate the direction of an action.

#### New Words

1.	带	dài	to take, bring, carry
2.	过	guò	come or go across, to cross
3.	花儿	huār	flower
4.	进	jìn	enter
5.	爬	pá	climb
6.	啤酒	pí jiǔ	beer
7.	瓶	píng	bottle (of something)
8.	瓶子	píng zi	bottle (noun)
9.	起	qǐ	rise
10.	山	shān	mountain
11.	束	shù	measure word meaning a 'bunch' (of flowers)
12.	银行	yín háng	bank

#### Simple Compliment of Direction (来 and 去)

When 来 (lái) and 去 (qù) are added to the predicate to show direction, they are called "simple compliments of direction". They are used to show the direction in which the action proceeds. 去 (qù) is used to show the direction of the action is proceeding away from the speaker, 来 (lái) is used to show that it is proceeding toward the speaker. If the object is a location, 来 (lái) and 去 (qù) must go after the object. If the object is a thing, 来 (lái) and 去 (qù) may either go before the object or after the object. Sentences 1a - 6a show how to use auxiliary verbs in these sentences. Sentences 1b - 6b show how 了 (le) is used in these sentences.

	subject	verb	object	(来 or 去)	(object is a location)
1.	我们	到	银行	去。	We will go to the bank.
2.	他们	到	银行	来。	They will come to the bank.
1a.	我们	会到	银行	去。	We will go to the bank.
2a.	他们	会到	银行	来。	They will come to the bank.



1b.	他们	到	银行	去了。	They went to the bank.
2b.	他们	到	银行	来了。	They came to the bank.
	<b>subject</b>	<b>verb</b>	<b>(来 or 去)</b>	<b>object</b>	<b>(object is not a location)</b>
3.	我们	带	去	一束花儿。	We will take a bunch of flowers.
4.	我们	带	来	一束花儿。	We will bring a bunch of flowers.
3a.	我们	会带	去	一束花儿。	We will take a bunch of flowers.
4a.	我们	会带	来	一束花儿。	We will bring a bunch of flowers.
3b.	我们	带	去了	一束花儿。	We took a bunch of flowers.
4b.	我们	带	来了	一束花儿。	We brought a bunch of flowers.
	<b>subject</b>	<b>verb</b>	<b>(object)</b>	<b>(来 or 去)</b>	<b>(object is not a location)</b>
5.	我们	带	一束花儿	去。	We will take a bunch of flowers.
6.	我们	带	一束花儿	来。	We will bring a bunch of flowers.
5a.	我们	会带	一束花儿	去。	We will take a bunch of flowers.
6a.	我们	会带	一束花儿	来。	We will bring a bunch of flowers.
5b.	我们	带了	一束花儿	去。	We took a bunch of flowers.
6b.	我们	带了	一束花儿	来。	We brought a bunch of flowers.

1. wǒmen dào yínháng qù.
2. tāmen dào yínháng lái.
3. wǒmen dài qù yí shù huār.
4. wǒmen dài lái yí shù huār.
5. wǒmen dài yí shù huār qù.
6. wǒmen dài yí shù huār lái.



### Compound Compliment of Direction

去(qù) and 来(lái) are used with other verbs to form two character compound compliments of direction that indicate the direction of another verb's action. For instance, to say "the children run up to me"; the verb 跑(pǎo) is complimented with 上来(shàng lái). To say the "the children ran away from me"; the verb 跑(pǎo) is complimented with 下来(xià lái). It is possible to use compound compliments of direction alone, without other verbs, but this is not common. (example sentence 24).

Verbs that express direction:

上	下	进	出	回	过	起
shàng	xià	jìn	chū	huí	guò	qǐ
go up/on	go out/down	enter	exit	return	pass	rise

When 去(qù) and 来(lái) are combined with the above verbs, that also indicate direction, they form compound compliments of directions:

上来	shàng lái	come up	进来	jìn lái	come in
上去	shàng qù	go up	进去	jìn qù	go in
下来	xià lái	come down	出来	chū lái	come out
下去	xià qù	go down	出去	chū qù	go out
回来	huí lái	come back	起来	qǐ lái	start and continue
回去	huí qù	go back			
过来	guò lái	come across			
过去	guò qù	go across			

If the object is a location, then the object (location) goes between the two characters of the compound compliment. For example, 爬山(pā shān) is a verb-object phrase, the verb is 爬(pā) (to climb) and the object is 山(shān) (mountain). The object must go directly before 来(lái) or 去(qù). In the example sentence below, the speaker is on the mountain above them.

上来      **come up**      他们爬上山来了。      They came up the mountain.

tāmen pá shàng shān lái le.

If the object is not a location, the object may go either before or after 来 or 去. In these examples, the object is 一瓶啤酒(yí píng píjiǔ) which means "one bottle of beer".

- 出来 **come out** 1. 王先生拿出一瓶啤酒来。 object before 来  
2. 王先生拿出来一瓶啤酒。 object after 来

Mr. Wang fetched a bottle of beer.

1. Wáng xiānshēng ná chū yì píng píjiǔ lái.
2. Wáng xiānshēng ná chūlai yì píng píjiǔ.

If there is no object, the compound compliment follows the verb. In the sentence below 住 (zhù) is the verb.

- 下去 **go down / continue** / 我还要在北京住下去。 I will continue to live in Beijing.

wǒ hái yào zài Běijīng zhù xiàqù.

### Example Sentences

The following section provides further examples of how to use compound compliments of direction. The sentence numbers are in parenthesis.

上来 (1-4)	进来 (15-17)	回来 (29-34)	起来 (45-46)
上去 (5-8)	进去 (18-21)	回去 (35-38)	
下来 (9-12)	出来 (22-25)	过来 (39-42)	
下去 (13-14)	出去 (26-28)	过去 (43-44)	

### Supplemental Words

1. 搬	bān	move (things)
2. 点心	diǎn xīn	a snack
3. 掉	diào	fall, drop
4. 飞	fēi	fly
5. 风筝	fēng zheng	kite
6. 父亲	fù qīn	father
7. 刚	gāng	just (now)
8. 海	hǎi	sea
9. 寄	jì	mail (verb)
10. 咖啡馆	kā fēi guǎn	coffee shop
11. 礼物	lǐ wù	gift
12. 马上	mǎ shàng	immediately
13. 猫	māo	cat



- |     |    |          |        |
|-----|----|----------|--------|
| 14. | 母亲 | mǔ qīn   | mother |
| 15. | 太阳 | tài yáng | sun    |
| 16. | 停  | tíng     | stop   |

In the Glossary, these words are listed as Unit 30S.

When using directional compliments, in some cases, it is important to understand where the speaker is. In the sentences below, the speaker's position is shown in parenthesis.

### Compound Compliment Sentences

#### 上来 come up

#### speaker's location

- |    |          |                            |                                     |
|----|----------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. | 他们爬上山来了。 | They climbed the mountain. | ( <u>on the mountain</u> )          |
| 2. | 孩子们跑上来了。 | The children ran up.       | ( <u>above the children</u> )       |
| 3. | 他上楼来了。   | He came upstairs.          | ( <u>upstairs</u> )                 |
| 4. | 他走上来了。   | He came up. (walking)      | ( <u>above the walking person</u> ) |

1. tāmen pá shàng shān lái le.
2. háizǐmen pǎo shàng lái le.
3. tā shàng lóu lái le.
4. tā zǒu shàng lái le.

#### 上去 go down

#### speaker's location

- |    |          |                              |   |
|----|----------|------------------------------|---|
| 5. | 他们走上楼去了。 | They went upstairs.          | ( <u>downstairs</u> )                   |
| 6. | 猫爬上树去了。  | The cat climbed the tree.    |   |
| 7. | 风筝飞上天去了。 | The kite flew up in the sky. |   |
| 8. | 他跑上去了。   | He ran up.                   | ( <u>higher place than the runner</u> ) |

5. tāmen zǒu shàng lóu qù le.
6. māo pá shàng shù qù le.
7. fēngzheng fēi shàng tiān qù le.
8. tā pǎo shàng qù le.



<b>下来 come down</b>		<b>speaker's location</b>
9. 他说的话我们写下来了。	We wrote down what he said.	
10. 车都停下来了。	All the cars stopped.	
11. 他走下楼来打电话了。	He came downstairs to make a call.	( <u>downstairs</u> )
12. 他走下楼来了。	He came downstairs.	( <u>downstairs</u> )

9. tā shuō de huà wǒmen xiě xiàlái le.  
 10. chē dōu tíng xiàlái le.  
 11. tā zǒu xià lóu lái dǎ diànhuà le.  
 12. tā zǒu xià lóu lái le.

<b>下去 go down / continue</b>		<b>speaker's location</b>
13. 他走下楼去买点心。	He went downstairs to buy a snack.	( <u>upstairs</u> )
14. 从这儿开下去。	He drove down from here.	( <u>higher place than the driver</u> )

13. tā zǒu xià lóu qù mǎi diǎnxīn.  
 14. cóng zhèr kāi xiàqù.

<b>进来 come in</b>		<b>speaker's location</b>
15. 学生们走进教室来了。	The students came in the classroom.	( <u>inside the classroom</u> )
16. 汽车不能开进公园里来。	The cars may not drive into the park.	( <u>inside the park</u> )
17. 小孩儿不能进来。	Children may not come in.	( <u>here</u> )

15. xuéshēngmen zǒu jìn jiāoshì lái le.  
 16. qìchē bù néng kāi jìn gōngyuán lǐ lái.  
 17. xiǎo hái bù néng jìn lái.



<b>进去 go in</b>		<b>speaker's location</b>
18. 汽车开进大门去了。	Cars drive into the gate.	( <u>outside the gate</u> )
19. 东西都搬进去了。	Move everything in.	( <u>outside</u> )
20. 他们走进办公室去了。	They went into the office.	( <u>outside the office</u> )
21. 小狗掉进河里去了。	The puppy fell into the river.	
18. qìchē kāi jìn dànmén qù le.		
19. dōngxi dōu bān jìnqù le.		
20. tāmen zǒu jìn bàngōngshì qù le.		
21. xiǎogǒu diào jìn hé lí qù le.		
<b>出来 come out</b>		<b>speaker's location</b>
22. 王先生拿出来一瓶啤酒。	Mr. Wang fetched a beer.	
23. 他从里边走出来了。	He came out.	( <u>outside</u> )
24. 太阳从东边出来。	The sun comes up in the east.	
25. 从大门里开出来一辆汽车。	There is a car driving out of the gate.	( <u>outside the gate</u> )
22. Wáng xiānshēng ná chūlái yí píng píjiǔ.		
23. tā cóng lǐbiān zǒu chūlái le.		
24. tàiyáng cóng dōngbiān chūlái.		
25. cóng dànmén líkāi chūlái yí liàng qìchē.		
<b>出去 go out</b>		<b>speaker's location</b>
26. 孩子们跑出去了。	The children ran out.	(inside)
27. 我刚寄出去一封信。	I just mailed a letter.	
28. 他们从咖啡馆走了出去。	They came out of the coffee shop.	
26. háizǐmen pǎo chūqù le.		
27. wǒ gāng jì chūqù yì fēng xìn.		
28. tāmen cóng kāfēiguǎn zǒu le chūqù.		

<b>回来 return , come</b>		<b>speaker's location</b>
29. 他从学校跑回家来了。	The children ran home from school.	
30. 他买回来一本书。	He bought a book and returned.	(here)
31. 父亲带回来不少礼物。	Father brought many gifts back.	(here)
32. 母亲买回很多菜来。	Mother bought a lot of food and returned.	(here)
33. 母亲买很多菜回来。	Mother bought a lot of food and returned.	(here)
34. 爸爸带回来了不少礼物。	Dad brought many gifts back.	(here)
29. tā cóng xuéxiào pǎo huí jiā lái le.		
30. tā mǎi huí lái yì běn shū.		
31. fùqīn dài huí lái bù shǎo lǐwù.		
32. mǔqīn mǎi huí hěn duō cài lái.		
33. mǔqīn mǎi hěn duō cài huí lái.		
34. bàba dài huí lái le bù shǎo lǐwù.		

<b>回去 return , go</b>		<b>speaker's location</b>
35. 他从家跑回学校去了。	He ran back to school from home.	
36. 下课以后, 我要跑回宿舍去。	After class, I will run back to the dormitory.	(in a classroom)
37. 他们带回去很多书。	They took back a lot of books.	
38. 下课以后, 马上回家去。	After class, immediately go home.	(not at home)
35. tā cóng jiā pǎo huí xuéxiào qù le.		
36. xiàkè yǐhòu, wǒ yào pǎo huí sùshè qù.		
37. tāmen dài huí qù hěn duō shū.		
38. xiàkè yǐhòu, mǎshàng huí jiā qù.		

### 过来 **come across**

**speaker's  
location  
(here)**

39. 他们走过来了。 The came across.  
40. 前面开过来一辆出租车。 There is a taxi coming towards us.  
41. 前面开过一辆出租车来。 There is a taxi coming towards us.  
42. 对面走过来一个人。 There is a person walking toward me.

39. tāmen zǒu guòlái le.  
40. qiánmiàn kāi guòlái yí liàng chūzūchē.  
41. qiánmiàn kāi guò yí liàng chūzūchē lái.  
42. duìmiàn zǒu guòlái yí gè rén.

### 过去 **go across**

43. 汽车开过去了。 The car is driving away.  
44. 飞机飞过去了。 The plane is flying away.

43. qìchē kāi guò qù le.  
44. fēijī fēi guò qù le.

### 起来 **start and continue something**

45. 小孩能坐起来了。 The child can sit up.  
46. 风筝飞起来了。 The kite flew up.  
47. 写下来 Write (something) down.  
48. 收起来 Put (something) away  
49. 放起来 Put (something) away  
50. 想起来 Think (something) up

45. xiǎohái néng zuò qǐlái le.  
46. fēngzheng fēi qǐlái le.  
47. xiě xiàlái  
48. shōu qǐlái  
49. fàng qǐlái  
50. xiǎng qǐlái

## Unit 31

### Durations of Actions

This unit shows how express how long ago something happened and how long actions take.

#### New Words

1.	吧	ba	softens a request
2.	当	dāng	to become
3.	花	huā	use time, spend time
4.	课间	kè jiān	break between classes
5.	聊	liáo	chit chat
6.	聊天	liáo tiān	chit chat
7.	排队	pái duì	to wait in line
8.	起床	qǐ chuáng	get up
9.	事儿	shìr	affairs, matters
10.	天津	Tiānjīn	a city near Beijing
11.	晚	wǎn	late
12.	午饭	wǔ fàn	lunch
13.	行	xíng	OK
14.	一会儿	yí huìr	indicates a short time
15.	一下	yí xià	indicates a short time or casual manner
16.	一下儿	yí xiàr	indicates a short time or casual manner

### Unit Summary

**Section A** the length of time from the time of occurrence of an action to the time of speaking when the predicate cannot be a continuous action.

Question: 你结婚多长时间了? How long have you been married?  
Answer: 我结婚十年了。 I have been married for 10 years.

Question: nǐ jiéhūn duō cháng shí jiān le?  
Answer: wǒ jiéhūn shí nián le。

**Section B** the duration of actions that happened in the past and are not occurring at the time of speaking. (using a verb without an object)

Question: 你玩儿了多长时间? How long were you out “playing”?  
Answer: 我玩儿了一天。 I “played” for one day.

Question: nǐ wánr le duō cháng shí jiān?

Answer: wǒ wánr le yì tiān。

**Section C** the duration of actions that are occurring at the time of speaking (using a verb without an object)

Question: 你听了多长时间了? How long have you been listening?

Answer: 我听了五分钟了。 I have been listening for five minutes.

Question: nǐ tīng le duō cháng shí jiān le?

Answer: wǒ tīng le wǔ fēn zhōng le。

**Section D** the duration of actions that happened in the past and are not occurring at the time of speaking (using a verb with an object).

Question: 你学习中文学了多长时间? How long did you study Chinese?

Answer: 我学习中文学了两年。 I studied Chinese for two years.

Question: nǐ xuéxí zhōngwén xué le duō cháng shí jiān?

Answer: wǒ xuéxí zhōngwén xué le liǎng nián。

Sentences that have personal pronouns as objects are also discussed in this section.

**Section E** the duration of actions that happened in the past and are not occurring at the time of speaking (using a verb with an object). If the object is a personal pronoun, this pattern may not be used.

Question: 你学了多长时间 (的) 中文。 How long did you study Chinese?

Answer: 我学了两年 (的) 中文。 I studied Chinese for two years.

Question: nǐ xué le duō cháng shí jiān (de) zhōngwén。

Answer: wǒ xué le liǎng nián (de) zhōngwén。

**Section F** the duration of reoccurring actions (using a verb with an object)

Question: 你每天吃午饭吃多长时间? How long do you eat lunch everyday?

Answer: 我每天吃午饭吃一个小时。 I eat lunch for one hour a day.

Question: nǐ měi tiān chī wǔ fàn chī duō cháng shí jiān?

Answer: wǒ měi tiān chī wǔ fàn chī yí gè xiǎo shí。

**Section F1** the duration of reoccurring actions (using a verb with an object)

Question: 你每天吃多长时间 (的) 午饭。 How long do you eat lunch everyday?

Answer: 我每天吃一个小时 (的) 午饭。 I eat lunch for one hour a day.

Question: nǐ měi tiān chī duō cháng shí jiān (de) wǔ fàn。

Answer: wǒ měi tiān chī yí gè xiǎo shí (de) wǔ fàn。

**Section G** the duration of reoccurring actions (using a verb without an object)

Question: 你每天看多长时间? How long do you (read/watch) every day?

Answer: 我每天看一个小时。 I (read/watch) one hour a day.

Question: nǐ měi tiān kàn duō cháng shí jiān?

Answer: wǒ měi tiān kàn yí gè xiǎo shí。

**Section H** using auxiliary verbs in sentences that express the duration of actions (using a verb without an object)

我要看一个小时。 I will (read/watch) for one hour.

wǒ yào kàn yí gè xiǎo shí。

**Section I** using auxiliary verbs in sentences that express the duration of actions (using a verb with an object)

我要看一个小时的电视。 I will (read/watch) for one hour.

wǒ yào kàn yí gè xiǎo shí de diàn shì。

**Section J** using expressions that mean “a little while”  
using expressions that mean “use time / take time”

**a little while**

一会儿 一下 一下儿  
yí huìr yí xià yí xiàr

**use time / spend time / take time**

用时间 花时间  
yòng shí jiān huā shí jiān

**Section K** Comparing lengths of time and making comparisons using “earlier” and “later”.

1. 每天安娜比李明早五分钟到教室。
2. 每天安娜比李明少睡两个小时觉。

1. Anna gets to the classroom five minutes earlier than Li Ming everyday.
2. Anna sleeps two hours less than Li Ming everyday.

1. měi tiān ānnà bǐ Lǐmíng zǎo wǔ fēn zhōng dào jiāo shì。
2. měi tiān ānnà bǐ Lǐmíng shǎo shuì liǎng gè xiǎo shíjiào。

**Section A - from the time of occurrence to the time of speaking**

To show how long an actions or states last, time phrases are added to the predicate after the object. If the predicate verb can't indicate a continuous action, the time phrase indicates the period of time from the occurrence of the action to the time of speaking and 了 (le) is placed at the end of the sentence.

It has been two years since I left home.

subject	verb	object	time phrase	了
我	离开	家	两年	了
wǒ	lí kāi	jiā	liǎng nián	le
I	leave	home	two years	

To form a question, place 多长时间 (duō cháng shí jiān) in place of the time phrase.

1. 你来北京多长时间了? How long has it been since you came to Beijing?
2. 我来北京一个多月了。 I came to Beijing over two months ago.

1. nǐ lái Běijīng duō cháng shí jiān le?
2. wǒ lái Běijīng yí gè duō yuè le。

3. 你大学毕业多长时间了? How long has it been since you graduated?
4. 我大学毕业两年了。 I graduated two years ago.

3. nǐ dàxué bìyè duō cháng shí jiān le?
4. wǒ dàxué bìyè liǎng nián le。



In the remaining explanations in this unit, the verbs used can indicate continuous actions.

**Section B - the duration of actions that happened in the past and are not occurring at the time of speaking. (using a verb without an object)**

Generally, the sentence pattern below is used after the action is over so the action is not occurring at the time of speaking. In the sentence pattern below, no object can be included in the sentence. 了 (le) is placed after the predicate verb and the time phrase is placed at the end of the sentence.

I waited two hours.

subject	verb	了	time phrase
我	等	了	两个小时。
wǒ	děng	le	liǎng gè xiǎoshí。
I	wait		two hours

5. 他睡了多长时间?      How long did he sleep?  
 6. 他睡了六个小时。      He slept for six hours.

5. tā shuì le duō cháng shí jiān?  
 6. tā shuì le liù gè xiǎoshí。

To compare:

他起床十五分钟了。(tā qǐchuáng shí wǔ fēn zhōng le。 ) (Section A)  
 means “He has been out of bed for 15 minutes”.

他起床了十五分钟。”(tā qǐchuáng le shí wǔ fēn zhōng。 ) (Section B)  
 means “It took him 15 minutes to get up”.

**Section C - the duration of actions that are occurring at the time of speaking. (using a verb without an object)**

If the action is still going on at the time of speaking, 了 (le) is placed after the verb and 了 (le) is also placed at the end of the sentences. In this sentence pattern, the verb does not have an object.

I have waited two hours. (and I am still waiting)

subject	verb	了	time phrase	了
我	等	了	两个小时	了
wǒ	děng	le	liǎng gè xiǎoshí	le
I	wait		two hours	



In example questions 7 – 12 below, the action is still going on at the time of speaking.

7. 他睡了多长时间了？

8. 他睡了六个小时了。

7. How long has he been sleeping?

8. He has been sleeping for six hours. (and he is still sleeping)

7. tā shuì le duōcháng shíjiān le?

8. tā shuì le liù gè xiǎoshí le。

9. 你在这个学校学了多长时间了？

10. 我在这个学校学了两年了。

9. How long have you been studying at this school?

10. I have been studying at this school for two years. (and continue to study)

9. nǐ zài zhè gè xuéxiào xué le duōcháng shíjiān le?

10. wǒ zài zhè gè xuéxiào xué le liǎng nián le。

11. 他们聊了多长时间了？

12. 他们聊了三个小时了。

11. How long have they been talking?

12. They have been talking for three hours. (and are still talking)

11. tāmen liáo le duō cháng shí jiān le?

12. tāmen liáo le sān gè xiǎoshí le。

**Section D - the duration of actions that happened in the past and are not occurring at the time of speaking (using a verb with an object).**

In the sentence pattern below the verb must have an object. The verb is repeated after the object and 了 (le) is placed after the second occurrence of the verb followed by the time phrase at the end of the sentence. Generally, this sentence pattern is used after the action is over so the action is not occurring at the time of speaking. In the sentence below, the circumstances would tell the listener what specific vehicle 车 (chē) refers to, it could be a bus, taxi or a car.

I waited for the car for two hours.

subject	verb	object	verb	了	time phrase
我	等	车	等	了	两个小时
wǒ	děng	chē	děng	le	liǎng ge xiǎoshí
I	wait	vehicle	wait		two hours

13. 你们看电视看了多长时间? How long did you watch TV?  
14. 我们看电视看了两个小时。 We watched TV for two hours.

13. nǐmen kàn diànshì kàn le duō cháng shí jiān?  
14. wǒmen kàn diànshì kàn le liǎng gè xiǎoshí.

**These patterns are used for names and personal pronouns.**

(The sentence patterns in Section E may not be used for personal pronouns.)

15. 你等他等了多长时间? How long did you wait for him?  
16. 我等他等了一个小时。 I waited for him one hour.

15. nǐ děng tā děng le duōcháng shíjiān?  
16. wǒ děng tā děng le yí gè xiǎoshí.

This sentence pattern is used after the action is over so the action is not occurring at the time of speaking.

17. 你等了他多长时间? How long did you wait for him?  
18. 我等了他一个小时。 I waited for him one hour.

17. nǐ děng tā děng le duōcháng shíjiān?  
18. wǒ děng tā le yí gè xiǎoshí.

This sentence pattern indicates that the action is not finished so the action is still occurring at the time of speaking. The first occurrence of 了 (le) is optional.

19. 你等(了)他多长时间了? How long have you been waiting for him?  
20. 我等(了)他一个小时了。 I have been waiting for him for one hour.  
19. nǐ děng (le) tā duōcháng shíjiān le ?  
20. wǒ děng (le) tā děng yí gè xiǎoshí le 。



**Section E - the duration of actions that happened in the past and are not occurring at the time of speaking (using a verb with an object.)**

In the sentence pattern below the verb must have an object. 了 (le) is placed directly after the verb followed by the time phrase indicating the duration of the action with the object at the end of the sentence. 的 (de) may be placed just before the object, but it does not have to be included in the sentence, it is optional. Generally this sentence pattern is used after the action is over so the action is not occurring at the time of speaking. This pattern is not used with personal pronouns or names.

I waited for the car for two hours.

<b>subject</b>	<b>verb</b>	<b>了</b>	<b>time phrase</b>	<b>(的)</b>	<b>object</b>
我	等	了	两个小时	(的)	车
wǒ	děng	le	liǎng gè xiǎoshí	(的)	chē
I	wait		two hours		car

15. 你们看了多长时间 (的) 电视?

16. 我们看了两个小时 (的) 电视。

15. How long did you watch TV?

16. We watched TV for two hours.

15. nǐmen kàn le duō cháng shí jiān (de) diànshì?

16. wǒmen kàn le liǎng gè xiǎoshí (de) diànshì。

**Section F - the duration of reoccurring actions (using a verb with an object)**

To express the duration of reoccurring actions, 了 (le) is not used. In the sentence pattern below, the verb must have an object.

We have three weeks of vacation every year.

<b>subject</b>	<b>time phrase</b>	<b>verb</b>	<b>object</b>	<b>verb</b>	<b>time phrase</b>
我们	每年	放	假	放	三个星期
wǒmen	měi nián	fàng	jià	fàng	sān gè xīngqī
We	every year	take	vacation	take	three weeks

<b>time phrase</b>	<b>subject</b>	<b>verb</b>	<b>object</b>	<b>verb</b>	<b>time phrase</b>
每年	我们	放	假	放	三个星期
měi nián	wǒmen	fàng	jià	fàng	sān gè xīngqī
Every year	we	take	vacation	take	three weeks



- 17a. 每年你们放假多长时间?  
 17b. 你们每年们放假多长时间?  
 18. 我们每年放假三个星期。

- 17 a/b. How much vacation time do you get every year?  
 18. We have three weeks of vacation every year.

- 17a. měi nián nǐmen fàng jià fàng duō cháng shí jiān?  
 17b. nǐmen měi nián fàng jià fàng duō cháng shí jiān?  
 18. wǒmen měi nián fàng jià fàng sān gè xīngqī。

19. 你每天睡觉睡多长时间?  
 20. 每天我睡觉睡八个小时。

19. How much time do you sleep everyday?  
 20. I sleep eight hours everyday.

19. nǐ měi tiān shuì jiào shuì duō cháng shí jiān?  
 20. měi tiān wǒ shuì jiào shuì bā gè xiǎoshí。

**Section F1 - the duration of reoccurring actions (using a verb with an object)**

To express the duration of reoccurring actions, using the sentence pattern below, the time phrases are placed between the verb and the object. 了 (le) is not used and 的 (de) is optional.

We have three weeks of vacation every year.

time phrase	subject	verb	time phrase	(的)	object
每年	我们	放	三个星期	(的)	假
měi nián	wǒmen	fàng	sān gè xīngqī		jià
Every year	we	take	three weeks		vacation

subject	time phrase	verb	time phrase	(的)	object
我们	每年	放	三个星期	(的)	假
wǒmen	měi nián	fàng	sān gè xīngqī		jià
We	every year	take	three weeks		vacation

21. 每年你们放多长时间 (的) 假?  
 22. 我们每年放三个星期(的) 假。



21. měi nián nǐmen fàng duō cháng shí jiān (de) jiǎ 。

22. wǒmen měi nián fang sān gè xīngqī (de) jiǎ。

21. How much vacation time do you get every year?

22. We have three weeks of vacation every year.

23. 你每天睡多长时间（的）觉？

24. 我每天睡八个小时（的）觉。

23. How much time do you sleep everyday?

24. I sleep eight hours everyday.

23. nǐ měitiān shuì duō cháng shí jiān (de) jiào?

24. wǒ měitiān shuìbā gè xiǎoshí (de) jiào。

### Section G - the duration of reoccurring actions (using a verb without an object)

If the verb does not require an object, the example below may be used to express the duration of reoccurring actions.

I sleep six hours everyday.

subject	time phrase	verb	time phrase
我	每天	睡	六个小时
wǒ	měitiān	shuì	liù gè xiǎoshí
I	everyday	sleep	six hours

You cannot use the sentence pattern above if the verb has an object. For example, you cannot say “你每天睡觉多长时间?” (nǐ měitiān shuìjiào duōcháng shíjiān? )

### Section H - Using auxiliary verbs in sentences that express the duration of actions (using a verb without an object)

To express the duration of an action that will happen in the future, the sentence patterns below may be used. In the example below, 玩儿 (wánr) , which literally means “to play” is the general term Chinese people commonly use to express relaxing and having fun in their leisure time. It is also used to express the action of playing, like when children play. Either 玩 (wán) or 玩儿 (wánr) may be used.

We are going to go out and have some fun for a day.

subject	auxiliary verb	verb	time phrase
我们	要	玩儿	一天
wǒmen	yào	wánr	yì tiān
We	will	play	one day

25. 我们会打一个小时。  
26. 我会睡两个小时。  
27. 我会写一个小时。

25. We will play for an hour.  
26. I will sleep for two hours.  
27. I will write for one hour.

25. wǒmen huì dǎ yí gè xiǎoshí。  
26. wǒ huì shuì liǎng gè xiǎoshí。  
27. wǒ huì xiě yí gè xiǎoshí。

\*In sentence 25, 打 (dǎ) means “to play” i.e., 打篮球 (dǎ lán qiú) (to play basketball), 打乒乓球 (dǎ pīngpāng qiú) (to play ping pong).

### Section I - Using auxiliary verbs in sentences that express the duration of actions (using a verb with an object)

We are going to play basketball for an hour.

subject	auxiliary verb	verb	time phrase	(的)	object
我们	会	打	一个小时	(的)	篮球
wǒmen	huì	dǎ	yí gè xiǎoshí	(de)	lán qiú
We	will	play	an hour		basketball

28. 我会写一个小时(的)信。  
29. 我会做两个小时(的)作业然后吃饭。

28. I will write letters for an hour.  
29. I will do homework for two hours and then eat.

28. wǒ huì xiě yí gè xiǎoshí (de) xìn。  
29. wǒ huì zuò liǎng gè xiǎoshí (de) zuòyè ránhòu chī fàn。



**Section J using using expressions that mean “a little while”  
using expressions that mean “use time / take time”**

a little while			use time / spend time / take time	
一会儿	一下	一下儿	用时间	花时间
yí huìr	yí xià	yí xiàr	yòng shí jiān	huā shí jiān

In all the examples in this unit, the time phrases used to express the duration of actions have been definite time lengths. To express “a little while”, 一会儿 (yí huìr) is used in the same way as the time phrases.

30. 我们先休息一会儿然后做作业。
31. 我们会玩一会儿然后回家。
32. 我们在课间聊了一会儿。
33. 我爸爸每天吃饭以前看一会儿电视。

30. First we will rest a while and then do (our) homework.
31. We will play a while and then go home.
32. We talked a while during the break between classes.
33. My dad watches TV a while before he eats dinner everyday.

30. wǒmen xiān xiūxi yíhuìr ránhòu zuò zuòyè。
31. wǒmen huì wán yíhuìr ránhòu huí jiā。
32. wǒmen zài kèjiān liáo le yíhuìr。
33. wǒ bàba měi tiān chī fàn yǐqián kàn yíhuìr diànshì。

Note: To express “rest a while” you say : “休息一会儿 (xiū yíhuìr huìr)  
To express “sleep a while” you say : “睡一会儿觉 (shuì yíhuìr jiào)

1. 睡觉 我每天十点睡觉。
2. 睡午觉 我每天四点睡午觉。
3. 睡一会儿觉 我要睡一会儿觉。
4. 睡不着 我昨天晚上睡不着。

In sentence 2, 睡午觉 (shuì wǔ jiào) means “afternoon nap”. In sentence 4, 着 (zháo) is used as a verb compliment of potentiality that means “to fall asleep”.

1. sleep I go to bed at 10 o'clock every day.
2. nap I take a nap at 4 o'clock ever day.
3. sleep a while I will sleep a little while.
4. not sleep I couldn't sleep last night.



1. shuì jiào                      wǒ měitiān shí diǎn shuì jiào。
2. shuì wǔ jiào                wǒ měitiān sì diǎn shuì wǔ jiào。
3. shuì yíhuì jiào            wǒ yào shuì yíhuì jiào。
4. shuì bú zháo                wǒ zuótiān wǎnshàng shuì bù zháo。

To express “a very short time”, 一下 (yí xià) or 一下儿 (yí xiàr) are used in the same way as the time phrases. When using these terms, it also carries the meaning that that the thing being done isn’t of great importance, that something is done in a casual manner. For instance, if something interesting came on TV, to draw another persons attention to the TV one might say, 看一下! (kàn yí xià!). In sentence 35 below, 没事儿 (méi shìr) means “it’s nothing” and the modal particle 吧 (ba) is used to soften the tone of the sentence.

34. 用一下你的词典，行吗？
35. 没事儿，用吧！

34. Can I use your dictionary for a moment?
35. No problem, use it!

34. yòng yíxià nǐde cídiǎn, xíng ma?
35. méi shìr, yòng ba!

To express “using” or “spending” time, 用 (yòng) 花 (huā) are used. Both sentences below mean “I spend one hour cooking dinner everyday.”

36. 每天我用一个小时做晚饭。
37. 每天我花一个小时做晚饭。

36. měitiān wǒ **yòng** yí gè xiǎoshí zuò wǎnfàn。
37. měitiān wǒ **huā** yí gè xiǎoshí zuò wǎnfàn。

To make a question, 多长时间 (duōcháng shíjiān) goes in the place of the time phrase. Both questions below mean “How much time do you spend cooking dinner everyday?”

38. 每天你用多长时间做晚饭？
39. 每天你花多长时间做晚饭？



38. měitiān nǐ yòng duōcháng shíjiān zuò wǎnfàn?

39. měitiān nǐ huā duōcháng shíjiān zuò wǎnfàn?

40. 从北京坐火车到天津用多长时间?

41. 从北京坐火车到天津花半个小时。

40. How long does it take to go by train from Beijing to Tianjin?

41. It takes half an hour to go from Beijing to Tianjin by train.

40. cóng Běijīng zuò huǒ chē dào Tiānjīn yòng duōcháng shíjiān?

41. cóng Běijīng zuò huǒ chē dào Tiānjīn huā bàn gè xiǎoshí.

### Example Sentences

1. 你昨天晚上睡了多长时间?

2. 我睡了六个小时。

3. 昨天他们聊了多长时间?

4. 他们聊天聊了三个小时。

5. 他们聊了三个小时了。

1. How long did you sleep last night?

2. I slept for six hours.

3. How long did they talk yesterday?

4. They talked for three hours.

5. They have been talking for three hours. (they are still talking)

1. nǐ zuótiān wǎnshàng shuì le duōcháng shíjiān?

2. wǒ shuì le liù gè xiǎoshí.

3. zuótiān tāmen liáo le duōcháng shíjiān?

4. tāmen liáotiān liáo le sān gè xiǎoshí.

5. tāmen liáo le sān gè xiǎoshí le.

6. 你每天锻炼多长时间?

7. 我每天锻炼一个小时。

8. 他病了一个月零三天。

9. 我来中国已经一个多月了。

10. 现在是十二点半，同学们已经下课半个小时了。

6. How long do you workout each day?
7. I workout one hour a day.
8. He was sick for one month and three days.
9. I have already been in China for over a month.
10. It is 12:30 pm the students have already been out of class for half an hour.

6. nǐ měitiān duànliàn duō cháng shí jiān?
7. wǒ měi tiān duànliàn yí gè xiǎoshí。
8. tā bìng le yí gè yuè líng sān tiān。
9. wǒ lái zhōngguó yǐ jīng yí gè duō yuè le。
10. xiànzài shì shí èr diǎn bàn, tóngxuémen yǐjīng xiàkè bàn gè xiǎoshí le。

11. 他骑了多长时间?
12. 他骑自行车骑了多长时间?
13. 他骑了四个小时。
14. 他骑了四个小时自行车。
15. 他骑自行车骑了二十分钟了。

11. How long did he ride?
12. How long did he ride (his) bicycle?
13. He rode for four hours.
14. He rode his bicycle for four hours.
15. He has been riding his bicycle for twenty minutes. (and is still riding)

11. tā qí le duōcháng shíjiān?
12. tā qí zìxíngchē qí le duōcháng shíjiān?
13. tā qí le sì gè xiǎoshí。
14. tā qí le sì gè xiǎoshí zìxíngchē。
15. tā qí zìxíngchē qí le èr shí fēn zhōng le。

16. 从北京到上海, 坐多长时间的飞机?
17. 从北京到上海, 坐三个小时的飞机。
18. 他看了多长时间 (的) 报纸?
19. 他看报纸看了半个小时。
20. 他看了半个小时 (的) 报纸。

16. How long is the flight from Beijing to Shanghai?
17. The flight from Beijing to Shanghai is three hours.



18. How long did he read the newspaper?
19. He read the newspaper for half an hour.
20. He read the newspaper for half an hour.

16. cóng Běijīng dào Shànghǎi, zuò duōcháng shíjiān de fēijī?
17. cóng Běijīng dào Shànghǎi, zuò sān gè xiǎoshí de fēijī.
18. tā kàn le duō cháng shí jiān de bàozhǐ?
19. tā kàn bàozhǐ kàn le bàn gè xiǎoshí.
20. tā kàn le bàn gè xiǎoshí de bàozhǐ.

21. 她打了三十分钟的电话。
22. 她上了三年大学了。
23. 他当老师四年了。
24. 他们结婚三年了。
25. 我等车等了好长时间。

(In example number 25, 好 does not mean “good”, it indicates “extreme”)

21. She talked on the phone for 30 minutes.
22. She has been in university for three years. (and still is)
23. She has been a teacher for four years. (and still is)
24. They have been married for three years. (and still are)
25. I waited for a taxi (or bus) for a long time.

21. tā dǎ le sān shí fēn zhōng de diànhuà。
22. tā shàng le sān nián dà xué le。
23. tā dāng lǎo shī sì nián le。
24. tāmen jié hūn sān nián le。
25. wǒ děng chē děng le hǎo cháng shí jiān。

26. 从你家骑自行车到办公室花多长时间?
27. 从我家骑自行车到办公室用半小时。
28. 他花很多时间看电视。
29. 我花很多时间看电子邮件。
30. 我花了一个小时排队。

26. How long does it take to go from your home to your office by bicycle?
27. It takes half an hour to go from my home to the office.
28. He spends a lot of time watching TV.
29. I spend a lot of time reading my email.
30. I waited in line for an hour.



26. cóng nǐ jiā qí zìxíngchē dào bàngōngshì huā duō cháng shí jiān?
27. cóng wǒ jiā qí zìxíngchē dào bàngōngshì yòng bàn gè xiǎoshí。
28. tā huā hěnduō shíjiān kàn diànshì。
29. wǒ huā hěnduō shíjiān kàn diànzǐ yóujiàn。
30. wǒ huā le yí gè xiǎoshí páidui。

**Section K**      **1. making comparisons using “earlier” and “later”**  
**2. comparing lengths of time**

These are the facts about when Anna and Li Ming graduated from university:

1. 安娜 1995 年大学毕业。
  2. 李明 2005 年大学毕业。
1. Anna graduated from university in 1995.
  2. Li Ming graduated from university in 2005.

1. ānnà 1995 nián dàxué bìyè。
2. Lǐmíng 2005 nián dàxué bìyè。

These are the statements of comparison about who graduated earlier and later:

3. 安娜比李明早毕业十年。
  4. 李明比安娜晚毕业十年。
3. Anna graduated from university 10 years earlier than Li Ming.
  4. Li Ming graduated from university 10 years later than Anna.

3. ānnà bǐ Lǐmíng zǎo bìyè shí nián。
4. Lǐmíng bǐ ānnà wǎn bìyè shí nián。

These are the facts about when Anna and Li Ming go to bed and get up in the morning.

5. 安娜每天 12:00 睡觉, 6:00 起床。
  6. 李明每天 11:00 睡觉, 7:00 起床。
5. Anna goes to bed at 12 o'clock and gets up at 6 o'clock everyday.
  6. Li Ming goes to bed at 11 o'clock and gets up at 7 o'clock everyday.



5. ānnà měi tiān 12:00 shuì jiào, 6:00 qǐ chuáng。
6. Lǐmíng měi tiān 11:00 shuì jiào, 7:00 qǐ chuáng。

These are comparisons about who gets up earlier and later:

7. 每天安娜比李明晚睡觉一个小时，早起床一个小时。
  8. 每天李明比安娜早睡觉一个小时，晚起床一个小时。
7. Anna goes to bed one hour later and gets up one hour earlier than Li Ming everyday.
  8. Li Ming goes to bed one hour earlier and gets up one hour later than Anna everyday.
7. měi tiān ānnà bǐ Lǐmíng wǎn shuì jiào yí gè xiǎo shí, zǎo qǐ chuáng yí gè xiǎoshí。
  8. měi tiān Lǐmíng bǐ ānnà zǎo shuì jiào yí gè xiǎo shí, wǎn qǐ chuáng yí gè xiǎo shí。

These are comparisons about who sleeps longer or sleeps less time:

9. 每天安娜比李明少睡两个小时觉。
  10. 每天李明比安娜多睡两个小时觉。
9. Anna sleeps two hours less than Li Ming everyday.
  10. Li Ming sleeps two hours more than Anna everyday.
9. měi tiān ānnà bǐ Lǐmíng shǎo shuì liǎng gè xiǎo shíjiào。
  10. měi tiān Lǐmíng bǐ ānnà duō shuì liǎng gè xiǎo shíjiào。

These are the facts about when Anna and Li Ming get to the classroom.

11. 安娜每天 7:50 到教室。
  12. 李明每天 8:00 到教室。
11. Anna gets to the classroom at 7:50 everyday.
  12. Li Ming gets to the classroom at 8:00 everyday.
11. ānnà měitiān 7:50 dào jiāoshì。
  12. Lǐmíng měitiān 8:00 dào jiāoshì。



These are comparisons about who gets to the classroom earlier and later:

13. 每天安娜比李明早五分钟到教室。

14. 每天李明比安娜晚五分钟到教室。

13. Anna gets to the classroom five minutes earlier than Li Ming everyday.

14. Li Ming gets to the classroom five minutes later than Anna everyday.

13. měi tiān ānnà bǐ Lǐmíng zǎo wǔ fēn zhōng dào jiāo shì。

14. měitiān Lǐmíng bǐ ānnà wǎn wǔ fēn zhōng dào jiāo shì。

## Unit 32

### Modifying Verbs (着)

(the manner in which something is done)

This unit shows how to express the manner in which actions are done.

#### New Words

1.	出发	chū fā	set out
2.	及时	jí shí	in a timely manner
3.	解决	jiě jué	solve, resolve, settle
4.	紧	jǐn	tightly
5.	经理	jīng lǐ	manager
6.	客厅	kè tīng	living room
7.	哭	kū	cry
8.	邻居	lín jū	neighbor
9.	满意	mǎn yì	satisfy
10.	趴	pā	to lie face down
11.	热情	rè qíng	cordially
12.	认真	rèn zhēn	conscientious
13.	手	shǒu	hand
14.	舒服	shū fu	comfortable
15.	头	tóu	head
16.	握	wò	to hold
17.	笑	xiào	smile, laugh
18.	演员	yǎn yuán	performer, actor
19.	着	zhe	adverbial modifier to show the manner in which an action is done
20.	走路	zǒu lù	to walk down the street

#### Verb - 着 (zhe)

Verbs are used with 着 (zhe) to show the manner in which actions are done. In the first example, 着 (zhe) is used with the verb meaning “to sit” to show that the person is sitting while reading. The second example shows how, 着 (zhe) can be part of a verb phrase to accomplish the same thing.

He sits to read. / He is sitting while reading.				
<b>subject</b>	<b>verb</b>	<b>着</b>	<b>predicate verb</b>	<b>object</b>
	<b>(to show manner)</b>			
他	坐	着	看	书
tā	zuò	zhe	kàn	shū
He	sit		read	book



He shook my hand, saying “Thank you!”

subject	verb phrase (to show manner)	predicate verb	object
他	握着我的手	说	“谢谢您！”
tā	wò zhe wǒ de shǒu	shuō	xiè xiè nín
He	shaking my hand	say	thank you

In the example above, 握 (wò) literally means “to hold”, but in the context of the example sentence, it means that the two people are shaking hands. In examples 6 and 7 below, 趴(pā) means “to lie face down”. In example 8, 躺 (tǎng) means “to lie face up”. In sentence 3, 阿姨 (ā yí) means “aunt” and is a term of respect that children call women or a young adult will address an older woman.

### Example Sentences

1. 演员站着唱歌。
2. 他低着头走路。
3. 他笑着说“谢谢阿姨”。
4. 妈妈在客厅里跟邻居喝着茶聊天儿。
5. 这个孩子哭着说：“我的小狗病了”。
6. 他喜欢在床上趴着看书。
7. 小猫在窗台上趴着睡觉呢。
8. 爸爸在床上躺着睡觉呢。

1. yǎn yuán zhàn zhe chàng gē。
2. tā dī zhe tóu zǒu lù。
3. tā xiào zhe shuō “xiè xiè āyí”。
4. māma zài kètīng lǐ gēn línjū hē zhe chá liáotiānr。
5. zhè gè hái zǐ kū zhe shuō: “wǒ de xiǎogǒu bìng le”。
6. tā xǐhuān zài chuáng shàng pā zhe kàn shū。
7. xiǎo māo zài chuāng tái shàng pā zhe shuìjiào ne。
8. bàba zài chuáng shàng tǎng zhe shuìjiào ne。

1. The performer stood and sang. / The performer stands and sings.
2. He walks / walked down the street with his head down.
3. He smiled and said, “Thank you Auntie.”
4. Mother is in the living room drinking coffee and chatting with a neighbor.
5. This child cried and said, “My puppy is sick.”
6. He likes to lie in bed and read.
7. The kitten is on lying on the window sill sleeping.



8. Father is on the lying on the bed sleeping.

### Adjectives that show the manner in which something is done.

#### Single syllable adjectives

Adjectives are placed before verbs to show the manner in which something is done. Single syllable adjectives are placed directly before a verb with nothing in between. Two syllable adjectives may be followed by 地 (de) and then the verb, but 地 (de) is optional. In the example below, 早 (zǎo) (early) shows the manner in which the verb 出发 (chū fā) (set out) happens.

They set out early.

subject	adjective	predicate verb	completed action
他们	早	出发	了
tāmen	zǎo	chū fā	le
They	early	set out	

Sometimes 多 (duō) is used in this sentence pattern, in place of the adjective, to place added emphasis on the verb. In the sentence, “你必须多听。” (nǐ bìxū duō tīng。) (You need to listen.) 多 (duō) is used to add extra emphasis to the verb 听 (tīng). 地 (de) is not used in sentences that use 多 (duō).

#### Reduplicated Single Syllable Adjectives

##### AA - 地 - Verb

Another way to add emphasis to an adjective, that modifies a verb, is to say the adjective twice, this is called “reduplication”. When a single syllable adjective is reduplicated, the second syllable is spoken in the neutral tone and a retroflex “r” may be used, for instance, both 早早(zǎo zao) or 早早儿(zǎo zaor) could be used to say “early”. Putting 地 (de) between the reduplicated adjective and the verb is optional.

They set out early.

subject	reduplicated adjective	(地)	predicate verb	completed action
他们	早早	(地)	出发	了
tāmen	zǎo zao	de	chū fā	le
They	early		set out	

#### Two Syllable Adjectives

##### AB - 地 (de) - Verb

When using two syllable adjectives, putting 地 (de) between the adjective and the verb is optional. However, some two syllable adjectives are also verbs, depending on the context they are used in. When those adjectives are used, 地 (de) must be used. For instance, in the sentence “字写得很清楚” (zì xiě dé hěn qīngchū) (The writing is



very clear.) 清楚 (qīng chu) is an adjective that means “to be clear and easy to understand”. However, in the sentence “他最清楚这事的前因后果。” (tā zuì qīngchu zhè shì de qián yīn hòu guǒ。 ) (He understands the matter thoroughly.), 清楚 (qīngchu) is a verb that means “to understand, to know” . In this case, 地 (de) must be used to make it clear that 清楚 (qīng chu) is an adjective. To avoid grammar mistakes, a speaker may use 地 (de) with all two syllable adjectives.

They study conscientiously.

subject	adjective	地	predicate verb
他们	认真	地	学习
tāmen	rèn zhēn	de	xué xí
They	conscientious		study

### Reduplicated Two Syllable Adjectives

#### AABB - 地 - Verb

When two syllable adjectives are reduplicated they are in the form of AABB. The second A syllable and the second B syllable are spoken in the neutral tone. For instance, 认真 (rèn zhēn) (conscientious) becomes 认认真真(rèn ren zhēn zhen). In this case, 地 (de) must be used. Be careful when using this form, not all two syllable adjectives can be reduplicated.

subject	reduplicated adjective	地	predicate verb
他们	认认真真	地	学习
tāmen	rèn ren zhēn zhen	de	xué xí
They	conscientious		study

#### Example Sentences

1. 母亲紧紧(地)抱着她的孩子。
2. 他高兴地说：“我收到了朋友的来信。”
3. 他高高兴兴地说：“我收到了朋友的来信。”
4. 他的父母等了他三个小时，他来晚了。

1. mǔqīn jǐnjīn (de) bào zhe tā de hái zi.
2. tā gāo xìng de shuō: “wǒ shōu dào le péngyou de lái xìn.
3. tā gāo gao xìng xìng de shuō:  
“wǒ shōu dào le péngyǒu de lái xìn.
4. tā de fùmǔ děng le tā sān gè xiǎoshí, tā lái wǎn le.

1. The mother tightly held her child.
2. He happily said, “I received a letter from my friend.”
3. He happily said, “I received a letter from my friend.”



4. His parents waited three hours, he came late.
  5. 她热情地说：“欢迎光临”。
  6. 老太太慢慢地走着。
  7. 王经理及时解决了问题。
  8. 孩子满意地笑了。
- 
5. tā rèqíng de shuō: “huānyíng guānglín”。
  6. lǎo tài tai màn màn de zǒu zhe。
  7. Wáng jīnglǐ jí shí jiějué le wèntí。
  8. háizi mǎnyì de xiào le。
- 
5. She warmly said, “Welcome”.
  6. The old lady is slowly walking.
  7. Manager Wang solved the problem in a timely manner.
  8. The child smiled with satisfaction.



## Unit 33

### 把 (bǎ) Sentences

This unit shows how use the preposition 把 (bǎ). In 把 (bǎ) sentences, the object is stated before the predicate verb.

#### New Words

1.	安全带	ān quán dài	seat belt
2.	把	bǎ	a preposition used to make a subject – object – verb sentence
3.	搬家	bān jiā	to move (to a new home)
4.	包	bāo	to wrap (a gift, a box)
5.	包裹	bāo guǒ	parcel, package
6.	本子	běn zi	notebook
7.	笔记本	bǐ jì běn	notebook
8.	笔记本电脑	bǐ jì běn diàn nǎo	laptop computer
9.	变	biàn	change to, transform
10.	表	biǎo	form, table, chart
11.	病人	bìng rén	sick person, patient
12.	玻璃	bō lí	glass, window pane
13.	插	chā	to plug in
14.	插头	chā tóu	electric plug
15.	车棚	chē péng	covered parking for bicycles (similar to a carport)
16.	成	chéng	turn into
17.	抽屉	chōu tì	drawer
18.	打开	dǎ kāi	open, turn on
19.	打算	dǎ suàn	to plan
20.	递	dì	pass or hand something to someone
21.	电池	diàn chí	battery
22.	电子	diàn zǐ	electronic
23.	电子邮件	diàn zǐ yóu jiàn	email
24.	发	fā	send, transmit
25.	风	fēng	wind
26.	复习	fù xí	review (a lesson)
27.	改	gǎi	change to, transform
28.	顾客	gù kè	customer



29.	刮	guā	blow
30.	关掉	guān diào	turn off (electric things)
31.	关上	guān shang	close, turn off
32.	号码	hào mǎ	number
33.	合上	hé shàng	close a book
34.	盒子	hé zi	box (small)
35.	护照	hù zhào	passport
36.	花瓶	huā píng	flower vase
37.	记	jì	to take note, remember, record
38.	系	jì	“put on” or “wear” belts, scarves and tied things
39.	机票	jī piào	plane ticket
40.	夹克	jiá kè	jacket
41.	接	jiē	to receive, to pick up (i.e., a child from school)
42.	接电话	jiē diàn huà	to answer the phone
43.	解开	jiě kāi	take off (a belt)
44.	警察	jǐng chá	police
45.	扛	káng	to carry something on one’s shoulders
46.	空调	kōng tiào	air conditioner
47.	拉	lā	pull
48.	拉链	lā liàn	zipper
49.	礼物	lǐ wù	gift
50.	脸	liǎn	face
51.	莉莉	Lìlì	a name of a person
52.	领带	lǐng dài	necktie
53.	麻烦	má fan	trouble, inconvenience
54.	美元	měi yuán	American dollars
55.	面包	miàn bāo	bread
56.	名	míng	measure word for persons
57.	明信片	míng xìn piàn	postcard
58.	魔术师	mó shù shī	magician
59.	闹钟	nào zhōng	alarm clock
60.	牛	niú	cow
61.	弄	nòng	make



62.	碰	pèng	touch, bump
63.	球	qiú	ball
64.	取	qǔ	to take, to fetch
65.	人民币	rén mín bì	Chinese currency
66.	扔	rēng	to throw
67.	扔掉	rēng diào	throw away
68.	扫	sǎo	sweep
69.	设计图	shè jì tú	blueprints
70.	生词	shēng cí	new words
71.	绳子	shéng zi	rope
72.	手机	shǒu jī	cell phone
73.	收拾	shōu shi	to put in order, to tidy up
74.	水	shuǐ	water
75.	通知	tōng zhī	notice
76.	同事	tóng shì	colleague, coworker
77.	脱	tuō	take off (clothing and shoes)
78.	晚会	wǎn huì	party (in the evening)
79.	卧室	wò shì	bedroom
80.	箱子	xiāng zi	box (large), suitcase
81.	小偷	xiǎo tōu	thief
82.	鞋	xié	shoe
83.	行李	xíng li	luggage
84.	幼儿园	yòu ér yuán	kindergarten
85.	邮票	yóu piào	stamp
86.	语法	yǔ fǎ	grammar
87.	雨伞	yǔ sǎn	umbrella
88.	预习	yù xí	preview (a lesson)
89.	雨衣	yǔ yī	raincoat
90.	摘	zhāi	to take off things [that use 戴]
91.	抓	zhuā	to grab, to seize, to catch
92.	装	zhuāng	load, pack
93.	装修	zhuāng xiū	decorate, remodel
94.	准备	zhǔn bèi	prepare
95.	作业本	zuò yè běn	homework notebook

In 把 (bǎ) sentences, the object is stated before the predicate verb. The simplest 把 (bǎ) sentence pattern is:

<b>Subject</b>	<b>把</b>	<b>Object</b>	<b>Predicate Verb</b>	<b>+ other elements</b>
doer of the action	把	receiver of the action	the action	(rule # 8 below)
我 wǒ I	把 bǎ bǎ	礼物 lǐ wù gift / gifts	包上 bāo shàng wrap	了 le completed action

(This sentence means, “I wrapped the gifts.”)

The most important feature of 把 sentences is that the predicate verb must produce a change in disposition of the object. For example, compare the two sentences below.

This sentence states how the speaker went to school. It means, “I drove to school.”

我开车到学校去了。 wǒ kāi chē dào xuéxiào qù le。

This 把 sentence emphasizes the disposition of the object (car). It means, “I took the car to the school.”

我把车开到学校去了。 wǒ bǎ chē kāi dào xuéxiào qù le。

A speaker could say: “我去商店了。” (wǒ qù shāngdiàn le) (I went to the store) ; however, it is incorrect to say: “我把商店去了。(wǒ bǎ shāngdiàn qù le)” because the predicate verb (去 qù) does not change the disposition of the object (商店 shāng diàn).

### Summary of rules for simple 把 (bǎ) sentences:

1. The predicate verb must be a transitive verb.  
(A transitive verb is an action verb, expressing an activity, like writing or cleaning, and it has a direct object, something or someone who receives the action of the verb.)
2. Verbs that do not produce action, such as 有 (yǒu) and 是 (shì) , may not be used.
3. Verbs that indicate mental activity and senses such as 知道 (zhī dào) (to know) and 喜欢 (xǐ huān) (to like) and 觉得 (jué de) (to feel) may not be used as predicate verbs.
4. Verbs that indicate direction such as 去 (qù), 来 (lái), 出 (chū), 进 (jìn), 上 (shàng) and 下 (xià) may not be used as predicate verbs.
5. The pattern [Verb + 过(guò)] may not be used.
6. A potential compliment that uses 得 (de) does not occur after the predicate verb.
7. When using 把 (bǎ) sentences, it is clear to the listener what the speaker has in mind. General classifiers may not be used. For instance, a speaker may use a 把



(bǎ) sentence to say “give me that book (那本书) (nà běn shū)” but may not use a 把 sentence to say “give me a book (一本书) (yì běn shū).”

8. 把 (bǎ) sentences may not end with single syllable verb. If a single syllable ends a sentence then it may be duplicated or the sentences may end in particles such as 了 (le) or 着 (zhe).

### Using 着 (zhe) in 把 (bǎ) sentences

Be careful when using 着 (zhe) in 把 (bǎ) sentences. Since the particle 着 (zhe) may be used for turning some action verbs into a continuing state, as a general rule, when using 着 (zhe) to compliment a verb in a 把 (bǎ) sentence, determine if the context of the sentence uses 着 (zhe) in such a way that the verb produces an action that changes the disposition of the object. For example: If some people were leaving their hotel or home to go sightseeing, they could use example sentence 1 or 2 below to say, “Let’s take a camera with us”. This is the only circumstance when 着 (zhe) would be used in a 把 (bǎ) sentence to express “take something”. If the speaker were talking about an outing that was going to happen the following day, they would use 带上 (dài shàng) or 拿上 (ná shàng), as in sentences 3 and 4 below. (In this case, 上 (shàng) is a verb compliment of results indicating something has reached a certain place.)

If two people were walking down the street and one person were to tell the other person “I have my camera with me” the speaker would say, “我带着我的照相机呢” (wǒ dài zhe wǒ de zhàoxiàngjī ne). In this context, 着 (zhe) indicates a continuing state and does not bring about a change in the disposition of the object; therefore, it would be incorrect to say, “我把我的照相机带着” (wǒ bǎ wǒ de zhàoxiàngjī dài zhe). In this case, it would be correct to say, “我把我的照相机带来了” (wǒ bǎ wǒ de zhàoxiàngjī dài lái le) which means, “I brought my camera with me” because the verb and its compliment 带来 (dài lái) indicate a change of disposition of the object.

Let’s take the camera with us.

- |              |                                 |
|--------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. 我们把照相机带着。 | wǒmen bǎ zhàoxiàngjī dài zhe。   |
| 2. 我们把照相机拿着。 | wǒmen bǎ zhàoxiàngjī ná zhe。    |
| 3. 我们把照相机带上。 | wǒmen bǎ zhàoxiàngjī dài shàng。 |
| 4. 我们把照相机拿上。 | wǒmen bǎ zhàoxiàngjī ná shàng。  |

If someone were pointing out a person in a crowded room by saying, “She is the one wearing a white dress”, they would say, “她穿着白色裙子” (tā chuān zhe bái sè qúnzi); they would not use a 把 sentence, in this case, because the verb does not bring about change in the disposition of the object. Generally, 穿着 (chuān zhe) is not used in a 把 sentences.

If someone wanted to draw attention to the fact that a person was wearing a new outfit, it would be correct to say, “她把新衣服穿上了” (tā bǎ xīn yīfu chuān shàng le) because the verb 穿 (chuān) and its compliment 上 (shàng) indicate a change in the



disposition of the object (新衣服) (xīn yīfu). This sentence literally means, “She has put on new clothes.”

The sentences below may be stated as Subject – Verb – Object (SVO) sentences or 把 (bǎ) sentences. There are two reasons sentences, that can be stated using a SVO sentence pattern, are stated using 把 (bǎ) sentences. Sometimes, they are used to place emphasis on the changed disposition of the object, as explained above. Sometimes, the predicate verbs are followed by fairly complicated constructions involving verb compliments so it is generally easier to state the object first.

**A.** I have finished yesterday’s homework.

1. S-V-O 我做完了昨天的作业。
2. 把 sentence 我把昨天的作业做完了。
1. wǒ zuò wán le zuótiān de zuòyè。
2. wǒ bǎ zuótiān de zuòyè zuò wán le。

**B.** I have brought the blueprints.

1. S-V-O 我带来了设计图。
2. 把 sentence 我把设计图带来了。
1. wǒ dài lái le shèjìtú。
2. wǒ bǎ shèjìtú dài lái le。

**C.** Let me write down your phone number.

1. S-V-O 我记一下你的电话号码。
2. 把 sentence 我把你的电话号码记一下。
1. wǒ jì yíxià nǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ。
2. wǒ bǎ nǐde diànhuà hàomǎ jì yíxià。

**D.** I threw away those newspapers.

1. S-V-O 我扔掉了那些报纸。
2. 把 sentence 我把那些报纸扔掉了。
1. wǒ rēngdiào le nà xiē bàozhǐ。
2. wǒ bǎ nà xiē bàozhǐ rēngdiào le。

**E. Father broke the umbrella.**

1. S-V-O 爸爸弄坏了雨伞。
2. 把 sentence 爸爸把雨伞弄坏了。
1. bàba nòng huài le yǔsǎn。
2. bàba bǎ yǔsǎn nòng huài le。

**F. I returned the book I borrowed last time.**

1. S-V-O 我还了上次借的那本书。
2. 把 sentence 我把上次借的那本书还了。
1. wǒ huán le shàng cì jiè de nà běn shū。
2. wǒ bǎ shàng cì jiè de nà běn shū huán le。

**G. He knocked over the cup.**

1. S-V-O 他碰倒了杯子。
2. 把 sentence 他把杯子碰倒了。
1. tā pèng dǎo le bēizi。
2. tā bǎ bēizi pèng dǎo le。

**H. The wind knocked over the bicycle.**

1. S-V-O 风刮倒了自行车。
2. 把 sentence 风把自行车刮倒了。
1. fēng guā dǎo le zìxíngchē。
2. fēng bǎ zìxíngchē guā dǎo le。

**Auxiliary verbs may placed between the subject and 把.**

**I. You should wear a raincoat.**

1. S - AV - V - O 你应该穿雨衣。
2. 把 sentence 你应该把雨衣穿上。
1. nǐ yīnggāi chuān yǔyī。
2. nǐ yīnggāi bǎ yǔyī chuān shang。

**J.** I will throw away those newspapers.

1. S - AV - V - O 我会扔掉那些报纸。
2. 把 sentence 我会把那些报纸扔掉。
1. wǒ huì rēngdiào nà xiē bàozhǐ.
2. wǒ huì bǎ nà xiē bàozhǐ rēng diào.

**K.** You need to move those books.

1. S - AV - V - O 你必须搬走这些书。
2. 把 sentence 你必须把这些书搬走。
1. nǐ bìxū bānzǒu zhèxiē shū.
2. nǐ bìxū bǎ zhèxiē shū bānzǒu.

In the examples below, 房子 (fáng zi) could refer to a single room, an apartment or a house and 装修 (zhuāng xiū) is usually translated as “to decorate”; however, this expression also includes construction such as, adding carpet or adding new interior walls. When a restaurant is being remodeled, there will be a sign in the window that says “装修 (zhuāng xiū)” to inform customers that the process of remodeling is going on. 搬 (bān) is used to express “carrying” things that are too big to carry in one hand.

**L.** I would like to redecorate my apartment.

1. S - AV - V - O 我想装修房子。
2. 把 sentence 我想把房子装修一下。
1. wǒ xiǎng zhuāngxiū fángzi.
2. wǒ xiǎng bǎ fángzi zhuāngxiū yíxià.

**To express possibility auxiliary verbs 能 and 可以 may placed between the subject and 把.**

**M.** I can repair your computer.

1. S - AV - V - O 我能修你的电脑。
2. S - AV - V - O 我能修理你的电脑。
3. 把 sentence 我能把你的电脑修好。
4. 把 sentence 我能把你的电脑修理好。

1. wǒ néng xiū nǐ de diànnǎo。
2. wǒ néng xiūlǐ nǐ de diànnǎo。
3. wǒ néng bǎ nǐ de diànnǎo xiū hǎo。
4. wǒ néng bǎ nǐ de diànnǎo xiūlǐ hǎo。

N. I can print your file.

1. S – AV – V – O 我可以打印你的文件。
2. 把 sentence 我可以把你的文件打印好。
1. wǒ kěyǐ dǎyìn nǐ de wénjiàn。
2. wǒ kěyǐ bǎ nǐ de wénjiàn dǎyìn hǎo。

O. We are going to move (our home) to Beijing.

1. S – AV – V – O 我们会搬家到北京。
2. 把 sentence 我们会把家搬到北京。
1. wǒmen huì bānjiā dào Běijīng。
2. wǒmen huì bǎ jiā bān dào Běijīng。

**Time phrases may placed between the subject and 把 or before the subject.**

If a person had checked out a book from the library, they could use the sentences below to express that they had returned a certain book last Monday.

P. I returned that book last Monday.

1. S – time – V – O 我上个星期一还了那本书。
2. 把 sentence 上个星期一我把那本书还了。
3. 把 sentence 我上个星期一把那本书还了。
1. wǒ shànggè xīngqīyī huán le nà běn shū。
2. shànggè xīngqīyī wǒ bǎ nà běn shū huán le。
3. wǒ shànggè xīngqīyī bǎ nà běn shū huán le。

### Negative Statements

The negative form of a 把 sentence is made by placing 没 (méi) or 没有 (méi yǒu) directly before 把 with nothing in between.

**Q.** I didn't bring blueprints.

1. S-V-O 我没(有)带来设计图。
2. 把 sentence 我没(有)把设计图带来。
1. wǒ méi (yǒu) dài lái shèjìtú。
2. wǒ méi(yǒu) bǎ shèjìtú dài lái。

When auxiliary verbs are used in 把 sentences, to express an unwillingness to do something or express that a supposition is not true, 不 is placed directly after the auxiliary verb and before 把 with nothing in between.

**R.** I can't print your file.

1. S-AV-V-O 我不能打印你的文件。
2. 把 sentence 我不能把你的文件打印好。
1. wǒ bù néng dǎyìn nǐ de wénjiàn。
2. wǒ bù néng bǎ nǐ de wénjiàn dǎyìn hǎo。

### Questions

吗 (ma) or 没有 (méi yǒu) may be used to form “yes – no” questions.

**S.** Have you finished yesterday's homework?

1. S-V-O 你做完了昨天的作业吗？。
2. S-V-O 你做完了昨天的作业没有？。
3. 把 sentence 你把昨天的作业做完了吗？
4. 把 sentence 你把昨天的作业做完了没有？
1. nǐ zuò wán le zuótiān de zuòyè ma？
2. nǐ zuò wán le zuótiān de zuòyè méi yǒu？
3. nǐ bǎ zuótiān de zuòyè zuò wán le ma？。
4. nǐ bǎ zuótiān de zuòyè zuò wán le méi yǒu？。



There are three ways to answer 吗 (ma) and 没有 (méi yǒu) questions negatively:

没有	还没有	还没有呢
méi yǒu	hái méi yǒu	hái méi yǒu ne
no	not yet	not yet

To answer 吗 (ma) and 没有 (méi yǒu) questions affirmatively you can repeat the verb and the compliment of result as well as the particle 了 (le).

verb	verb compliment of results	completed action particle
做	完	了
zuò	wán	le

To answer 吗 (ma) questions affirmatively, you may also answer 对 (duì).  
Questions that use 没有 (méi yǒu) may not be answered with 对 (duì).

In all the example questions below, 吗 (ma) may be used to replace 没有 (méi yǒu) and visa-versa. However, only the 吗 (ma) questions may be answered with 对 (duì).

**T.** (1,2) Have you brought the blueprints? (3) Has anyone brought the blueprints?

1. S-V-O 你带来了设计图没有?
  2. 把 sentence 你把设计图带来了没有?
  3. 把 sentence 有人把设计图带来了没有?
1. nǐ dài lái le shèjìtú méi yǒu?
  2. nǐ bǎ shèjìtú dài lái méi yǒu?
  3. yǒu rén bǎ shèjìtú dài lái le méi yǒu?

affirmative answer: 带来了 (dài lái le)

**U.** Have you written down my phone number?

1. S-V-O 你记下来我的电话号码了吗?
  2. 把 sentence 你把我的电话号码记下来了吗?
1. nǐ jì xià lái wǒde diànhuà hàomǎ le ma?
  2. nǐ bǎ wǒde diànhuà hàomǎ jì xià lái le ma?

affirmative answer: 记下来了 (jì xià lái le) / 对 (duì)

V. (1,2) Did you throw away those newspapers? (3) Who threw away the newspapers?

1. S-V-O 你扔掉了那些报纸没有?
2. 把 sentence 你把那些报纸扔掉了没有?
3. 把 sentence 谁把那些报纸扔掉了?
1. nǐ rēngdiào le nà xiē bàozhǐ méi yǒu?
2. nǐ bǎ nà xiē bàozhǐ rēngdiào le méi yǒu?
3. shéi bǎ nà xiē bàozhǐ rēngdiào le?

(questions 1,2) affirmative answer: 扔掉了(rēng diào le)

answer to 爸爸把那些报纸扔掉了。  
(question 3): bàba bǎ nàxiē bàozhǐ rēng diào le.  
Father threw away the newspapers.

answer to 我不知道。  
(question 3): wǒ bù zhīdào。  
I don't know.

W. Did Father break the umbrella?

1. S-V-O 爸爸弄坏了雨伞吗?
2. 把 sentence 爸爸把雨伞弄坏了吗?
1. bàba nòng huài le yǔsǎn ma?
2. bàba bǎ yǔsǎn nòng huài le ma?

affirmative answer: 弄坏了(nòng huài le) / 对(duì)

X. Did you return the book you borrowed last time?

1. S-V-O 你还了上次借的那本书没有?
2. 把 sentence 你把上次借的那本书还了没有?
1. nǐ huán le shàng cì jiè de nà běn shū méi yǒu? 。
2. nǐ bǎ shàng cì jiè de nà běn shū huán le méi yǒu?

affirmative answer: 还了(huán le)



Y. Did you get the camera out?

1. S-V-O 你拿出来了照相机吗?
2. 把 sentence 你把照相机拿出来了吗?
1. nǐ ná chū lái le zhào xiàng jī ma?
2. nǐ bǎ zhào xiàng jī ná chū lái le ma?

affirmative answer: 拿出来了(ná chū lái le) / 对 (duì)

Z. Did you get the camera out of the car?

1. S-V-O 你从车里拿出来照相机了没有?
2. S-V-O 你从车里拿出来了照相机没有?
3. 把 sentence 你把照相机从车里拿出来了没有?
1. nǐ cóng chē lǐ ná chū lái zhào xiàng jī le méi yǒu?
2. nǐ cóng chē lǐ ná chū lái le zhào xiàng jī méi yǒu?
3. nǐ bǎ zhào xiàng jī cóng chē lǐ ná chū lái le méi yǒu?

affirmative answer: 拿出来了 (ná chū lái le)

A1. 你把电池装上了吗? Have you put the battery in?

nǐ bǎ diàn chí zhuāng shàng le ma?

affirmative answer: 装上了 (zhuāng shàng le) / 对 (duì)

B1. 你把作业做完了没有? Have you finished your homework?

nǐ bǎ zuò yè zuò wán le méi yǒu?

affirmative answer: 做完了 (zuò wán le)

C1. 你把晚饭做好了没? Have you finished cooking dinner?

nǐ bǎ wǎn fàn zuò hǎo le ma?

affirmative answer: 做好了 (zuò hǎo le) / 对 (duì)

**D1.** 你把行李准备好了没有? Have you packed your bags?

nǐ bǎ xínglǐ zhǔnbèi hǎo le méi yǒu?

affirmative answer: 准备好了 (zhǔnbèi hǎo le)

**E1.** 1. 你把插头插上了吗? 2. 你把插头插进去了没有?

Have you plugged it in?

1. nǐ bǎ chātóu chā shàng le ma?

2. nǐ bǎ chātóu chā jìn qù le méi yǒu?

affirmative answers: 1. 插上了 (chā shàng le) / 对 (duì)

2. 插进去了 (chā jìn qù le)

**F1.** 你把笔记本电脑插头插进去了没有? Did you plug in the laptop?

nǐ bǎ bǐjìběn diànnǎo chātóu chā jìn qù le méi yǒu?

affirmative answer: 插进去了 (chā jìn qù le)

In the sentence below the speaker is talking to a person who has just returned from the post office. The speaker knows that the listener has gone to the post office and was expecting to receive a parcel in the mail.

**G1.** 你把包裹取回来了吗? Did you pick up the package?

nǐ bǎ bāoguǒ qǔ huí lái le ma?

affirmative answer: 取回来了 (qǔ huí lái le) / 对 (duì)

**H1.** 你把信发出去了没有? Did you mail the letter?

nǐ bǎ xìn fā chū qù le méi yǒu?

affirmative answer: 发出去了 (fā chū qù le)

**I1.** 你把电子邮件发出去了没有? Did you send the email?

nǐ bǎ diàn zǐ yóu jiàn fā chū qù le méi yǒu?



affirmative answer: 发出去了 (fā chū qù le)

In the question below, the speaker is making sure the listener put something “in” some place. For instance, if two people were in the process of leaving a travel agency and the speaker wanted to make sure that the listener had not forgotten to put the airline tickets in her purse or bag, the sentence below would be used.

**J1.** 你把机票放进去了没有? Did you put the tickets away?

nǐ bǎ jīpiào fàng jìn qù le méi yǒu?

affirmative answer: 放进去了 (fàng jìn qù le)

**In questions that use auxiliary verbs, 吗 is used (没有 cannot be used).** In these sentences the questions concern the auxiliary verbs being used, not the actions. For instance, to say “Did he take his book bag yesterday?” either 吗 (ma) or 没有 (méi yǒu) are correct because the question concerns the the action of taking the bookbag. [他昨天拿了书包没有? (tā zuótiān ná le shūbāo méiyǒu?) and 他昨天拿了书包吗? (tā zuótiān ná le shūbāo ma?)] However, 没有 (méi yǒu) could not be used to ask “Was it necessary for him to take his book bag?” because the question concerns the necessity of taking the book bag, not the action of taking the bookbag. [他昨天必须拿书包吗? (tā zuótiān bìxū ná shūbāo ma?)]

Questions with auxiliary verbs may be answered affirmatively by repeating the auxiliary verb or saying 对 (duì).

To answer questions with auxiliary verbs negatively, use 不 (bù) and then the auxiliary verb.

**K1.** Should I wear a raincoat?

1. S – AV – V – O 我应该穿雨衣吗?
2. 把 sentence 我应该把雨衣穿上吗?
1. wǒ yīnggāi chuān yǔyī ma?
2. wǒ yīnggāi bǎ yǔyī chuān shàng ma?

affirmative answer: 应该 (yīng gāi) / 对 (duì)

negative answer: 不应该 (bù yīng gāi)

**L1.** Are you going to throw away those newspapers?

1. S – AV – V – O 你会扔掉那些报纸吗?

2. 把 sentence 你会把那些报纸扔掉吗?
1. nǐ huì rēngdiào nà xiē bàozhǐ ma?
2. nǐ huì bǎ nà xiē bàozhǐ rēng diào ma?

affirmative answer: 会 (huì) / 对 (duì)

negative answer: 不会 (bú huì)

**M1. Do I need to move those books?**

1. S - AV - V - O 我必须搬走这些书吗?
2. 把 sentence 我必须把这些书搬走吗?
1. wǒ bìxū bān zǒu zhè xiē shū ma?
2. wǒ bìxū bǎ zhè xiē shū bān zǒu ma?

affirmative answer: 必须 (bì xū) / 对 (duì)

negative answer: 不必 (bú bì)

**N1. Would you like to redecorate your apartment?**

1. S - AV - V - O 你想装修房子吗?
2. 把 sentence 你想把房子装修一下吗?
1. nǐ xiǎng zhuāngxiū fángzi ma?
2. nǐ xiǎng bǎ fángzi zhuāngxiū yíxià ma?

affirmative answer: 想 (xiǎng) / 对 (duì)

negative answer: 不想 (bù xiǎng)

**O1. Can you repair my computer?**

1. S - AV - V - O 你能修我的电脑吗?
2. S - AV - V - O 你能修理我的电脑吗?
3. 把 sentence 你能把我的电脑修好吗?
4. 把 sentence 你能把我的电脑修理好吗?
1. nǐ néng xiū wǒ de diànnǎo ma?
2. nǐ néng xiūlǐ wǒ de diànnǎo ma?
3. nǐ néng bǎ wǒ de diànnǎo xiū hǎo ma?
4. nǐ néng bǎ wǒ de diànnǎo xiūlǐ hǎo ma?

affirmative answer: 能 (néng) / 对 (duì)



negative answer: 不能 (bù néng)

**P1.** Can you print my file?

1. S – AV – V – O 你可以打印我的文件吗?
2. 把 sentence 你可以把我的文件打印好吗?
1. nǐ kěyǐ dǎyìn wǒ de wénjiàn ma?
2. nǐ kěyǐ bǎ wǒ de wénjiàn dǎyìn hǎo ma?

affirmative answer: 可以 (kě yǐ) (most common) / 对 (duì)

negative answer: 不可以 (bù kě yǐ) / 不行 (bù xíng)

### Commands and Requests (that begin with 把)

In spoken Chinese it is not uncommon to hear a sentence begin with 把. When making commands, such as “close the door”, and it is obvious who the speaker is talking to, then the subject is implied, not stated. If there were a group of people and the speaker wanted to single out one person, then a subject would be used. For instance, in the example below, if someone were requesting the listener to take their cell phone out of their purse or pocket, they would use the following sentence pattern.

Get your cell phone out (of your purse, bag or pocket).

Subject	把	Object	Predicate Verb	+ other elements
doer of the action	把	receiver of the action	the action	compliment of result
<b>(implied not spoken)</b>	把	手机	拿	出来
	bǎ	shǒu jī	ná	chū lái
	bǎ	cell phone	fetch	take out

In the examples below, if the speaker wanted to say “hurry up”, they would begin the sentence with 快 (kuài) (quickly).

Quickly! get your cell phone out (of your purse, bag or pocket).

	把	Object	Predicate Verb	+ other elements
快	把	手机	拿	出来
kuài	bǎ	shǒu jī	ná	chū lái
quickly	bǎ	cell phone	fetch	take out



If the speaker wanted to say “please”, they would begin the sentence with 请 (qǐng) (please).

	把	Object	Predicate Verb	+ other elements
请	把	手机	拿	出来
qǐng	bǎ	shǒu jī	ná	chū lái
please	bǎ	cell phone	fetch	take out

If the speaker wanted to say “please help me (do something)”, they would begin the sentence with 请帮我 (qǐng bāng wǒ). In Chinese, the word “help” can be used to mean that two people do something together, or that someone is doing something “for” someone. The following sentence can mean either, “Please help me erase the blackboard.” (Both the speaker and the listener are erasing the blackboard) or “Please erase the blackboard for me.” (The listener is erasing the blackboard alone.)

	把	Object	Predicate Verb (duplicated)
请帮我	把	黑板	擦擦
qǐng bāng wǒ	bǎ	hēi bǎn	cā ca
please help me	bǎ	blackboard	clean / wipe

擦 (cā) means “to wipe” and is used to express “to wipe something to clean it”. In the sentences below, 擦擦 (cā cā) or 擦一擦 (cā yi cā) may be used. 扫 (sǎo) means “to sweep”, in the last sentence below 扫一扫 (sǎo yi sǎo) could also be used.

- |           |                   |   |
|-----------|-------------------|---|
| 1. 把桌子擦擦。 | bǎ zhuōzǐ cā ca。  | Wipe off the table.<br>Clean off the table. |
| 2. 把脸擦一擦。 | bǎ liǎn cā yi cā。 | Dry your face.                              |
| 3. 把玻璃擦擦。 | bǎ bōlí cā ca。    | Clean the window.                           |
| 4. 把地擦一擦。 | bǎ dì cā yi cā。   | Mop the floor.                              |
| 5. 把黑板擦擦。 | bǎ hēibǎn cā ca。  | Erase the blackboard.                       |
| 6. 把地扫扫。  | bǎ dì sǎo sa。     | Sweep the floor.                            |

打开 (dǎ kāi) is used to express both “turn on” as well as “open”; 关上 (guān shang) is used to express both “turn off” as well as “close”.

- |            |                          |                               |
|------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 7. 把空调打开。  | bǎ kōngtiáo dǎ kāi。      | Turn the air conditioner on.  |
| 8. 把空调关上。  | bǎ kōngtiáo guān shang。  | Turn the air conditioner off. |
| 9. 把窗户打开。  | bǎ chuāng hù dǎ kāi。     | Open the window.              |
| 10. 把窗户关上。 | bǎ chuāng hù guān shang。 | Close the window.             |



These nouns could be used to replace any of the things in the sentences above:

电视	diàn shì	television	护照	hù zhào	passport
门	mén	the door	箱子	xiāng zi	box, suitcase
手机	shǒu jī	cell phone	灯	dēng	light, lamp
空调	kōng tiáo	air conditioner	电脑	diàn nǎo	computer

关掉 (guān diào) may be also used to express “turn off” when talking about things that are electric.

11. 把空调关掉。      bǎ kōng tiáo guān diào。      Turn the air conditioner off.

In the sentences above, for the things that are physically closed (not electric), such as doors and windows, 没关好 (méi guān hǎo) would be used to express that something was closed well. For instance, if someone was getting out of a car and the door wasn't closed well, the driver would say 没关好 (méi guān hǎo).

In the above example, it is assumed that the window opens on hinges, like a door. When talking about opening or closing things that slide, such as curtains or windows that slide, the verb “pull” [拉 (lā)] is used, as in the examples below.

12. 把窗帘拉开。      bǎ chuāng lián lā kāi。      Open the curtains.
13. 把窗帘拉上。      bǎ chuāng lián lā shang。      Close the curtains.
14. 把窗户拉开。      bǎ chuāng hù lā kāi。      Open the window.
15. 把窗户拉上。      bǎ chuāng hù lā shang。      Close the window.
16. 把拉链拉上。      bǎ lā liàn lā shang      Zip up your jacket.

打开 (dǎ kāi) is used when saying “open your book”; 合上 (hé shàng) is used to express “close your book”. This is also true for telling someone to close a magazine [杂志 (zá zhì)] or a notebook [笔记本 (bǐ jì běn)].

17. 把你的书打开。      bǎ nǐ de shū dǎ kāi。      Open your book.

18. 把你的书合上。      bǎ nǐ de shū hé shang      Close your book.

To say “put on clothes”, 穿上 (chuān shang) is used. For instance, if a children were leaving for school, and their mother told them put on their coats [外衣 (wài yī)]; she



would say “把外衣穿上 (bǎ wàiyī chuān shang)”. If it is clear what item of clothing the speaker is referring to, any article of clothing may be referred to as “clothes” [衣服 (yīfú)]. To say “take off” an article of clothing, 脱下来 (tuō xià lái) is used. In the sentences below, 你的 (nǐ de) is optional.

19. 把(你的)衣服穿上。            bǎ (nǐ de) yīfu chuān shang.
20. 把(你的)衣服脱下来。        bǎ (nǐ de) yīfu tuō xià lái.
21. 把(你的)鞋穿上。            bǎ (nǐ de) xié chuān shang.
22. 把(你的)鞋脱下来。        bǎ (nǐ de) xié tuō xià lái.

19. Put on your (an article of clothing that is clear to the listener).
20. Take off your (an article of clothing that is clear to the listener).
21. Put on your shoes.
22. Take off your shoes.

穿好 (chuān hǎo) may be used to tell someone to “put on” an article of clothing or to tell someone to “fix” something that is wrong. For instance, a parent could use the sentence below to tell a child to zip up the jacket they are wearing or to tell the child to put on their jacket.

23. 把衣服穿好。            bǎ yīfu chuān hǎo。

When expressing “putting on” [穿上 (chuān shàng)] or “wearing” [穿着 (chuān zhe)] articles of clothing, 穿 (chuān) is not used for everything one can wear. For wearing some things, such as hats, glasses, and gloves; 戴 (dài) is used. When referring to items that are worn, but are tied, for example a necktie, 戴 (dài) or 系 (jì) may be used. If someone wanted to tell a person wearing a tie that it wasn’t tied well, they would say, 没系好 (méi jì hǎo) or 没戴好 (méi dài hǎo) which means “your tie isn’t straight”. 摘 (zhāi) is used to express “taking off” when taking off things that use 戴 (dài) or 系 (jì) to express “putting on”.

24. 把眼镜戴上。            Put on your glasses.    bǎ yǎnjìng dài shang.
25. 把眼镜摘下来。        Take off your glasses.   bǎ yǎnjìng zhāi xià lái.

In the sentences above, 眼镜 (yǎn jìng) could be replaced by any one of the articles listed below.

手套	shǒu tàò	gloves	*腰带	yāo dài	*belt
项链	xiàng liàn	necklace	*围巾	wéi jīn	*neck scarf
耳环	ěr huán	ear rings	*领带	lǐng dài	*necktie
帽子	mào zi	hat / cap			



\*To say “put on” or “to wear” a necktie, neck scarf or belt; 系 (jì) or 戴 (dài) may be used. To say “take off” a belt, 解开 (jiě kāi) is used.

In the sentences below, 上 (shàng) and 好 (hǎo) are compliments of results. In the contexts below, 上 (shàng) is only used to express “put on”, but 好 (hǎo) may be used for expressing “put on” as well as expressing “to adjust”. For example, the first sentence means “put on a tie”. The second sentence below could mean “put on a tie” or “straighten your tie”.

- |             |  |                         |
|-------------|--|-------------------------|
| 26. 把领带系上。  | Put on a tie.                                  | bǎ lǐngdài jì shang.    |
| 27. 把领带系好。  | Put on a tie.<br>Straighten you tie.           | bǎ lǐngdài jì hǎo.      |
| 28. 把鞋带系上。  | Tie your shoes.                                | bǎ xié dài jì shang.    |
| 29. 把鞋带系好。  | Tie your shoes.<br>Re-tie you shoe laces.      | bǎ xié dài jì hǎo.      |
| 30. 把安全带系上。 | Fasten your seatbelt.                          | bǎ ānquán dài jì shang. |
| 31. 把安全带系好。 | Fasten your seatbelt.<br>Adjust your seatbelt. | bǎ ānquán dài jì hǎo.   |
| 32. 把绳子系上。  | Tie that rope.                                 | bǎ shéng zi jì shang.   |
| 33. 把绳子系好。  | Tie that rope.<br>Re-tie that rope.            | bǎ shéng zi jì hǎo.     |

Remember, that the context of the sentence is important when using 着 (zhe) in 把(bǎ) sentences. (refer to the explanation at the beginning of this unit.)

Sentences 34 – 37 all mean “Take your passport.”

- |            |                      |
|------------|----------------------|
| 34. 把护照带着。 | bǎ hùzhào dài zhe.   |
| 35. 把护照拿着。 | bǎ hùzhào ná zhe.    |
| 36. 把护照带上。 | bǎ hùzhào dài shang. |
| 37. 把护照拿上。 | bǎ hùzhào ná shang.  |

In the sentences below, 带 (dài) or 拿 (ná) could be used.

- |            |                   |                      |
|------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| 38. 把雨伞带上。 | Take an umbrella. | bǎ yǔsǎn dài shang.  |
| 39. 把相机拿上。 | Take a camera.    | bǎ xiàngjī ná shang. |

40. Take the books you checked out from the library last week.

- |                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| 40. 把你上个星期借的书拿上。 | bǎ nǐ shàng gè xīngqī<br>jiè de shū ná shang. |
|------------------|---|



放好 (fàng hǎo) means to “put something away” in its proper place. For example, if two were leaving an embassy, the speaker might remind the listener to put their passport in their bag so that it wouldn't fall out of a pocket or get misplaced. At home, 放好 (fàng hǎo) could be used to tell children to put away their toys.

41. 把护照放好。 Put your passport away. bǎ hùzhào fàng hǎo.

The sentences below would be used to tell another person to clean up a messy area by putting things away. For instance, if someone's desk is messy, or if a teacher tells a class of students to clean off their desks in preparation for a test.

42. 把东西收起来。 Put your things away. bǎ dōngxi shōu qǐ lái.

43. 把东西放起来。 Put your things away. bǎ dōngxi fàng qǐ lái.

If the speaker is telling the listener to put something in a place that is higher up than the speaker 放上去 (fàng shàng qù) is used. For instance, if a person had just boarded a plane or train, an attendant would use the sentence below to tell the passenger to put their luggage in the overhead luggage rack or storage compartment. This phrase could also be used to tell someone to put a box on a shelf (that is higher up than the speaker). 箱子 (xiāng zi) is used to refer to many kinds of relatively large boxes such as, cardboard boxes, trunks and suitcases.

44. 把箱子放上去。 Put the box up there. bǎ xiāngzi fàng shàng qù.

45. 把箱子放上去。 Put your luggage up there. bǎ xínglǐ fàng shàng qù.

To tell someone to put something “here” or “there” the following sentences are used.

46. 把箱子放在这儿。 Put the suitcase(s) over here. bǎ xiāngzi fàng zài zhèr.

47. 把箱子放在那儿。 Put the suitcase(s) over there. bǎ xiāngzi fàng zài nàr.

盒子 (hézi) is used to refer to many kinds of relatively small boxes such as shoe boxes and boxes that small merchandise comes in.

48. Put the box in the drawer.

48. 把那个盒子放进抽屉里。 bǎ nà gè hézi fàng jìn chōutì lǐ.

The sentence below is used to tell someone to take something out of something (a bag, a pocket, a suitcase, a car). 拿 is usually for something small that can be moved using one hand. When larger things are being moved, such as moving a sofa out of a room, 搬 (bān) is used.

49. 把相机拿出来。 Get out the camera. bǎ xiàngjī ná chū lái.

50. 把沙发搬出来。 Bring the sofa out. bǎ shāfā bān chū lái.  
(of a room / a house)

51. Bring the sofa out of the living room.

51. 把沙发从客厅搬出来。 bǎ shāfā cóng kètīng bān chū lái.

52. Hang up (an article of clothing).

52. 把衣服挂上。 bǎ yīfú guà shang.

53. Hang up that picture on the wall.

53. 把画挂在墙上。 bǎ huà guà zài qiáng shang.

54. Put a battery in (something).

54. 把电池装上。 bǎ diànchí zhuāng shang.

55. 把门关一下。 Close the door. bǎ mén guān yíxià.

56. Wash this article of clothing.

56. 把这件衣服洗一下。 bǎ zhè jiàn yīfu xǐ yíxià.

57. Wash these clothes.

57. 把这些衣服洗一下。 bǎ zhè xiē yīfu xǐ yíxià.

58. Preview today's new words (Go over the words we will study in today's lesson.)

58. 把今天的生词预习一下。 bǎ jīntiān de shēngcí yùxí yíxià.

59. Review yesterday's grammar.

59. 把昨天的语法复习一下。 bǎ zuótiān de yǔfǎ fùxí yíxià.

60. Clean up this room.

60. 把房间收拾一下。      bǎ fáng jiān shōushi yíxià。

### To Give Something to Someone

In Mandarin SVO sentences that use 给 (gěi) to express “giving” something to someone, it is possible to have two objects. In English sentences, prepositional phrases that have indirect objects are used to accomplish the same thing. For instance, in the sentence, “Anna gave that sweater to me.”, the direct object is the word “sweater” because it receives the action of the verb, and the word “me” (in the prepositional phrase “to me”) is the indirect object which represents the secondary goal of the action of the verb. In the sentences below, “object 2” would be indirect objects in English sentences. In first example below, it is clear who is being spoken to, so the implied subject, 你 (nǐ), does not need to be spoken. In the second example, the subject is Anna.

Give your plane ticket and passport to me.

把	<b>object 1</b>	给	<b>object 2</b>
把	机票和护照	给	我
bǎ	jīpiào hé hùzhào	gěi	wǒ

Anna, give your plane ticket and passport to her.

<b>subject</b>	把	<b>object 1</b>	给	<b>object 2</b>
安娜	把	机票和护照	给	她
ān nà	bǎ	jīpiào hé hùzhào	gěi	tā

In sentences that show intention or completed actions, an auxiliary verb is needed to show intention (example sentence 1 below) or the particle 了 (le) would be used to show that the action had been completed (example sentences 2 and 3 below).

(1) I will give this red sweater to a friend.

<b>subject</b>	<b>auxiliary verb</b>	把	<b>object</b>	给	<b>object</b>
我	会	把	这件红毛衣	给	朋友
wǒ	huì	bǎ	zhè jiàn hóng máoyī	gěi	péng you

(2) Anna gave that sweater to her boyfriend.

<b>subject</b>	把	<b>object</b>	给	<b>object</b>	<b>particle</b>
安娜	把	那件红毛衣	给	她的男朋友	了
ān nà	bǎ	nà jiàn máoyī	gěi	tā de nán péngyou	le

(3) Anna gave that sweater to her boyfriend.

<b>subject</b>	把	<b>object</b>	给	<b>particle</b>	<b>object</b>
安娜	把	那件红毛衣	给	了	她的男朋友
ān nà	bǎ	nà jiàn máoyī	gěi	le	tā de nán péngyou



1. 把那本书给我。 Give that book to me. bǎ nà běn shū gěi wǒ.
2. 把作业给我。 Give me your homework. bǎ zuòyè gěi wǒ.
3. 把机票给我。 Give me your plane ticket. bǎ jīpiào gěi wǒ
4. Give the teacher the homework notebooks.
4. 把作业本给老师。 bǎ zuòyèběn gěi lǎoshī。
5. Give that gift to mother.
5. 把那件礼物给妈妈。 bǎ nà jiàn lǐwù gěi māma。
6. Give that dictionary to Anna.
6. 把那本词典给安娜。 bǎ nà běn cídiǎn gěi ānnà。

**These examples show the use of (7, 10) auxiliary verbs and (8,9,11,12) the particle 了 (le) in 把 (bǎ) sentences that use 给 (gěi).**

7. 我会把那件礼物给妈妈。 wǒ huì bǎ nà jiàn lǐwù gěi māma。
8. 我把那件礼物给了妈妈。 wǒ bǎ nà jiàn lǐwù gěi le māma。
9. 我把那件礼物给妈妈了。 wǒ bǎ nà jiàn lǐwù gěi māma le。
7. I will give that picture to Mom.
8. I gave that picture to Mom.
9. I gave that picture to Mom.
10. 我会把那本词典给安娜。 wǒ huì bǎ nà běn cídiǎn gěi ānnà。
11. 我把那本词典给了安娜。 wǒ bǎ nà běn cídiǎn gěi le ānnà。
12. 我把那本词典给安娜了。 wǒ bǎ nà běn cídiǎn gěi ānnà le。
10. I will give that dictionary to Anna.
11. I gave that dictionary to Anna.
12. I gave that dictionary to Anna.

### Using verbs with “compliments of results” in 把 (bǎ) sentences

First, we will review how to use 给(gěi), as a compliment of results, in sentences that do not use 把 (bǎ). When using a verb followed by the compliment of results, 给 (gěi), it is possible to have two objects and not use a 把 sentence. 给 (gěi) is used as a “compliment of results” to express that the verb has resulted “giving” something to a



second party. No characters may go between a verb and its compliment of results.

He handed a letter to me.

subject	predicate verb	compliment of results	object 1	object 2	particle
他 tā	交 jiāo	给 gěi	我 wǒ	一封信 yì fēng xìn	了 le。
He	to hand something to someone	to result in giving	I	one letter	(completed action)

To say the same thing, using a 把 (bǎ) sentence, 一封信 (yì fēng xìn) cannot be used because it is not specific. Also, it would be incorrect to say “他交那封信给我了。”(tā jiāo nà fēng xìn gěi wǒ le. ) because the compliment of results, 给 (gěi), must go immediately after the verb 交 (jiāo).

He handed that letter to me.

subject	把	object 1	predicate verb	compliment of result	object 2	particle
他 tā	把 bǎ	那封信 nà fēng xìn	交 jiāo	给 gěi	我 wǒ	了。 le。
He	bǎ	that letter	to hand something to someone	to result in giving	I	(completed action)

### Example Sentences

1. 请把这张表交给王老师。
2. 我明天就把这张表交给王老师。
3. 王先生，麻烦你把这封信交给莉莉。
4. 我的照相机坏了，你能把你的照相机借给我吗？
5. 莉莉打算把明信片寄给他的朋友。
6. 麻烦你，把面包递给我。

1. qǐng bǎ zhè zhāng biǎo jiāo gěi Wáng lǎoshī。
2. wǒ míngtiān jiù bǎ zhè zhāng biǎo jiāo gěi Wáng lǎoshī。
3. Wáng xiānshēng, máfan nǐ bǎ zhè fēngxìn jiāo gěi Lìlì。
4. wǒ de zhàoxiàngjī huài le, nǐ néng bǎ nǐ de zhàoxiàngjī jiè gěi wǒ ma?
5. Lìlì dǎsuàn bǎ míngxìnpìàn jì gěi tā de péngyou。

6. máfan nǐ, bǎ miànbāo dì gěi wǒ。

1. Please give this form to the teacher.
2. I will give the Teacher Wang the form tomorrow.
3. Mr. Wang, can I trouble you to give this letter to Lili?
4. My camera is broken, can you lend me yours?
5. Lili plans to mail this postcard to her friend.
6. Could I trouble you to pass the bread?

### Sentences that must use 把 (bǎ)

In sentences with two objects and the verb compliment of results is 在(zài), 到(dào), or 成(chéng) it is necessary to use a 把 (bǎ) sentence because the compliment of results must directly follow the verb with nothing between them.

The compliment of results 在(zài) is used to express that a person or thing has reached or will remain at a certain place - by the action of the verb. If a speaker were looking at a bookshelf full of books and told the listener to put one specific book on the table, the example sentence below would be used. It would be incorrect to say - (你)放那本书在桌子上。 ([nǐ] fàng nà běn shū zài zhuōzi shàng。 ) because the compliment of results, 在 (zài), must immediately follow the verb 放 (fàng). Furthermore, in a 把 (bǎ) sentence, 一本书 (yì běn shū) could not be used because it is not specific.

Put that book on the table.

把	object 1	predicate verb	compliment of result	object 2
把	那本书	放	在	桌子上。
bǎ	nà běn shū	fàng	zài	zhuōzi shàng。
bǎ	that book	put	to result in being at a place	on the table

Little Wang, put that book on the table.

subject	把	object 1	predicate verb	compliment of result	object 2
小王	把	那本书	放	在	桌子上。
Xiǎo Wáng	bǎ	nà běn shū	fàng	zài	zhuōzi shàng。
Little Wang	bǎ	that book	put	to result in being at a place	on the table

### Example Sentences

1. 把书摆在书架上。
2. 他把通知挂在门外边了。



3. 把那瓶花放在桌子上。
4. 莉莉把他的电话号码写在本子上了。
5. 我把自行车放在楼下的车棚里了。
6. 小明把闹钟放在床旁边了。
7. 他把邮票贴在信封上了。
8. 把那花瓶放在哪儿？

1. bǎ shū bǎi zài shū jià shàng。
2. tā bǎ tōngzhī guà zài mén wài biān le。
3. bǎ nà huāpíng fàng zài zhuōzǐ shàng。
4. lìlì bǎ tā de diànhuà hàomǎ xiě zài běnzi shàng le。
5. wǒ bǎ zìxíngchē fàng zài lóuxià de chēpéng lǐ le。
6. xiǎo míng bǎ nàozhōng fàng zài chuáng páng biān le。
7. tā bǎ yóupiào tiē zài xìnfēng le。
8. bǎ nà huāpíng fàng zài nǎr?

1. Arrange the books (properly) in the bookcase.
2. He hung a notice on the outside of the door.
3. Put the vase on the table.
4. Lili wrote his phone number in her notebook.
5. I put (my,the) bicycle down in the covered bicycle parking area.
6. Little Ming put his alarm clock next to his bed.
7. He put the stamp on the envelope.
8. Where do I put this vase of flowers? .

The compliment of results 到 (dào) is used to express that the action of the verb has resulted in a person or thing reaching a certain place, achieving a goal or an action continuing until a certain time. If a speaker told a listener to take a form to the office, the example sentences below could be used.

Take this form to the office.

把	object 1	predicate verb	compliment of result	object 2
把	这张表	送	到	办公室。
bǎ	zhè zhāng biǎo	sòng	dào	bàn gōng shì。
bǎ	this form	deliver	arrive at	office

Please take this form to the office for me.

	把	object 1	predicate verb	compliment of result	object 2
请帮我	把	这张表	送	到	办公室。
qǐng bāng wǒ	bǎ	zhè zhāng biǎo	sòng	dào	bàn gōng shì。
Please help me	bǎ	this form	deliver	arrive at	office

### Example Sentences

1. 我还没把这张表送到办公室。
2. 妈妈把孩子送到幼儿园了。
3. 我把汽车开到大门口了。
4. 学生要开晚会，把桌子搬到教室里。

1. wǒ hái méi bǎ zhè zhāng biǎo sòng dào bàn gōng shì。
2. māma bǎ hái zi sòng dào yòu ér yuán le。
3. wǒ bǎ qì chē kāi dào dà mén kǒu le。
4. xué shēng yào kāi wǎn huì, bǎ zhuō zi bān dào jiāo shì lǐ。

1. I haven't taken the form to the office yet.
2. Mother took her child to kindergarten.
3. He drove the car to the main gate.
4. The students are going to have a party, move the tables into the classroom.

The compliment of results 成 (chéng) is used to express that a person or thing has been changed into something of another kind by the action of the verb.

He exchanged American dollars for Chinese renminbi (yuan).

subject	把	object 1	predicate verb	compliment of result	object 2	particle
他	把	美元	换	成	人民币	了。
tā	bǎ	měi yuán	huàn	chéng	rén mín bì	le。
He	bǎ	American dollars	exchange	changed into	Chinese currency	(completed action)

### Example Sentences

1. 你能帮我把这篇文章翻译成英语吗？
2. 他把我当成日本人了。
3. 妈妈把大衣改成了夹克。
4. 魔术师把纸变成花了。



5. 你能把它翻译成英语吗?

1. nǐ néng bāng wǒ bǎ zhè piān wénzhāng fānyì chéng yīngyǔ ma?
2. tā bǎ wǒ dāng chéng rì běn rén le.
3. māma bǎ dàyī gǎi chéng le jiákè.
4. móshùshī bǎ zhǐ biàn chéng huā le.
5. nǐ néng bǎ tā fānyì chéng yīngyǔ ma?

1. Can you help me translate this article into English?
2. He thought I was Japanese.
3. Mom changed the coat into a jacket.
4. The magician turned paper into flowers.
5. Can you translate it into English?

If a beginner student were learning to write Chinese characters and wanted to write the word “cow” [牛 (niú)] but mistakenly wrote the character used in “afternoon” [下午(xià wǔ)] then the following sentence would be used.

6. You wrote “牛” incorrectly and actually wrote “午”.

6. 你把“牛”写成“午”了。 nǐ bǎ “niú” xiě chéng “wǔ” le.

If a beginner student were learning to speak Chinese wanted to say the word “some” [些(xiē)] but mistakenly said “shoe” [鞋(xié)] then the following sentence would be used.

7. You wanted to say “some” by you actually said “shoe”.

7. 你把“些”说成了“鞋”。 nǐ bǎ “xiē” shuō chéng le “xié”.

In the sentence below, the person who answered the phone did not understand the person who made the call. The person making the call said “10” but the person who answered the phone thought the caller said “4”.

8. The person who answered the phone thought he/she heard “4” but I said “10”.

8. 接电话的人把“十”听成“四”了。  
jiē diàn huà de rén bǎ “shí” tīng chéng “sì” le.

In the sentence below, the person speaking has been mistaken for another person called Teacher Wang.



9. He mistook me for Teacher Wang.

9. 他把我看成王老师了。 tā bǎ wǒ kàn chéng Wáng lǎoshī le。

Note: Notice that it does not change the meaning of the sentences if 了 (le) is placed after the verb or at the end of the sentences in these cases.

### Compound Compliment of Direction used in 把 Sentences

A 把 (bǎ) sentence must be used when the sentences has two objects and the predicate verb has a compound directional compliment with an object of place. Remember that, in a sentences with a compound compliment of direction with an object is a location, the object must placed directly before 去 (qù) or 来 (lái). For example:

This table only shows the parts of speech for example sentences 1 and 2 below so it will be easier to understand the explanations. These are not sentences.

	object 1	predicate verb	compound compliment of direction	object 2 location
(not a sentence)	1. 我的朋友	送	回去	家
(not a sentence)	2. 新同事	带	进来	办公室

In both sentences below, notice that their second objects are locations and are placed between the two characters of the compound compliment of directions.

1. 我把我的朋友送回家去了。
2. 老板把新同事带进办公室来了。

1. wǒ bǎ wǒ de péngyou sòng huí jiā qù le。
2. lǎobǎn bǎ xīn tóngshì dài jìn bàngōngshì lái le。

1. I took my friend home.
2. The boss brought the new co-worker into the office.

### 上来 come up

In the first sentence, the speaker is in a higher place than Little Wang, perhaps Little Wang has just come up a flight of stairs. In the second sentence, the speaker is on the top of the mountain and Little Wang has come up the mountain carrying food and water. The word “扛 (káng)” indicates that the things he carried were carried on his shoulder(s).

1. 小王把水和食品都扛上来了。

2. 小王把水和食品都扛上山来了。

1. Xiǎo Wáng bǎ shuǐ hé shípǐn dōu káng shàng lái le.
2. Xiǎo Wáng bǎ shuǐ hé shípǐn dōu káng shàng shān lái le.

1. Little Wang brought the water and food up.
2. Little Wang brought the water and food up here to the top (of the mountain).

### 上去 go up

In sentence 2, the child is not as tall as the car so he must throw the ball up when throwing it onto the top of the car.

1. 小孩把球扔上去了。
2. 小孩把球扔上车去了。

1. xiǎohái bǎ qiú rēng shàng qù le.
2. xiǎohái bǎ qiú rēng shàng chē qù le.

1. The child threw the ball up.
2. The child threw the ball up onto the top of the car.

### 下来 come down

In these sentences, the speaker is on a floor that is lower than the person who carried the patient (or sick person). Using 来 (lái) indicates that the patient was carried toward the speaker. Using 下 (xià) indicates that the patient was carried down from a higher place. “背 (bèi)” indicates the patient (or sick person) was carried on someone’s back. For instance, if someone had broken their ankle and someone carried them “horse-style”.

1. 他把病人背下来了。
2. 他把病人背下楼来了。

1. tā bǎ bìngrén bēi xià lái le.
2. tā bǎ bìngrén bēi xià lóu lái le.

1. He carried the patient down. (on his back)
2. He came downstairs with the patient (on his back).



## 下去 go down

In these sentences, the speaker was part of the group of people that moved some books. For example, the books are now in a classroom on the first floor and the speaker is on the second floor.

1. 我们把书搬下去了。
2. 我们把书搬下楼去了。

1. wǒmen bǎ shū bān xià qù le。
2. wǒmen bǎ shū bān xià lóu qù le。

1. We took the books down.
2. We took the books downstairs.

## 进来 come in

In these sentences, the compliment, 来 (lái), indicates that the action is coming toward the speaker. In this case, the speaker is inside the bedroom. The word “抱 (bào)” is used when carrying something in your arms, the way a baby would be carried.

1. 他把小狗抱进来了。
2. 他把小狗抱进卧室来了。

1. tā bǎ xiǎo gǒu bào jìn lái le。
2. tā bǎ xiǎo gǒu bào jìn wòshì lái le。

1. She carried the dog in.
2. She carried the dog into the bedroom.

## 进去 go in

In these sentences, 房 (fáng) can mean a house, apartment or a room. Using 去 (qù), indicates the action is moving away from the speaker. In this case, the speaker is outside the room, house or apartment and the things were moved in.

1. 我们把东西都搬进去了。
2. 我们把东西都搬进新房去了。

1. wǒmen bǎ dōngxī dōu bān jìn qù le。
2. wǒmen bǎ dōngxī dōu bān jìn xīn fáng qù le。

1. We took everything in.



2. We took everything into the new room (or home).

### 回来 return , come

In these sentences, 接 (jiē) means that mother has picked up the child, 小明 (Xiǎo Míng) and returned to their home. For instance, if the mother had gone to the child's school to bring him/her home from school. The compliment, 来 (lái), indicates the action is moving toward the speaker. In this case, the speaker is inside the home.

1. 妈妈把小明接回来了。
2. 妈妈把小明接回家来了。

1. māma bǎ Xiǎo Míng jiē huí lái le.
2. māma bǎ Xiǎo Míng jiē huí jiā lái le.

1. Mother brought Xiǎo Míng back.
2. Mother brought Xiǎo Míng back home.

### 回去 return , go

In these sentences, 接 (jiē) means that mother has picked up the child, 小明 (Xiǎo Míng). The compliment, 去 (qù), indicates that the action is moving away from the speaker. In this case, the speaker is at the place where the mother picked up 小明 (Xiǎo Míng) and both the mother and child have gone away from the place the speaker is. For instance, if a child at school asked a teacher where Xiǎo Míng is, a teacher could use the second sentences below to express that Xiǎo Míng's mother had taken him home.

1. 小明的妈妈把小明接回去了。
2. 小明的妈妈把小明接回家去了。

1. Xiǎo Míng de māma bǎ Xiǎo Míng jiē huí qù le.
2. Xiǎo Míng de māma bǎ Xiǎo Míng jiē huí jiā qù le.

1. Xiǎo Míng's mother picked up Xiǎo Míng and took him back.
2. Xiǎo Míng's mother picked up Xiǎo Míng and took him back home.

### 出去 go out

In these sentences, 扔 (rēng) means "to throw something away". The compliment, 去 (qù), indicates that action is moving away from the speaker. In this case, the speaker is in the classroom and the trash is being taken out of the classroom.

1. 大家把垃圾扔出去了。
2. 大家把垃圾扔出教室去了。



1. dàjiā bǎ lājī rēng chū qù le。
2. dàjiā bǎ lājī rēng chū jiāoshì qù le。

1. Eveyone took the trash out (and threw it away).
2. Eveyone took the trash (that was in the classroom) out (and threw it away).

The sentences below would not be stated with an object of place.

### 出来 **come out**

1. 玛丽把书拿出来了。
2. 玛丽把书从书包里拿出来了。

1. mǎlì bǎ shū ná chū lái le。
2. mǎlì bǎ shū cóng shūbāolǐ ná chū lái le。

1. Mary got that book out.
2. Mary took that book out of her bookbag.

### 过去 **go across**

In this sentence, 递 (dì) means “to pass, handover, give”. For instance, if a customer were handing money to a cashier and the cashier was standing behind a counter. The compliment, 去 (qù), indicates that the customer is on the same side of the counter as the speaker and has passed the money way from the speaker to the cashier.

The customer handed the money over.

顾客把钱递过去了。 gùkè bǎ qián dì guò qù le。

### 过来 **come across**

In this sentence, 叫 (jiào) means “to call out”. 同学 (tóng xué) which means “classmate” is sometimes used to express the word “student”. In the sentence below, the teacher has called one of the students to come to the front of the room where the teacher is sitting at his/her desk. The compliment, 来 (lái), indicates that the teacher told the student to come toward him/her.

The teacher called the student over.

老师把一名同学叫过来了。 lǎoshī bǎ yì míng tóngxué jiào guò lái le。

## 起来 **start and continue something**

The police caught the thief.

警察把小偷抓起来了。      jǐngchá bǎ xiǎotōu zhuā qǐ lái le。

## Unit 34

### 被 (bèi) Sentences

This unit shows how use 被 (bèi) to make passive voice sentences.

#### New Words

1.	被	bèi	introduces the doer of an action in a passive sentence
2.	脖子	bó zi	neck
3.	茶叶	chá yè	tea leaves
4.	冲	chōng	to dash against with great force
5.	吹	chuī	blow
6.	灯	dēng	light
7.	叮	dīng	sting (by a mesquito or bee)
8.	动	dòng	to move
9.	姑娘	gū niang	young lady
10.	光	guāng	used up, nothing left
11.	开水	kāi shuǐ	boiling water
12.	块	kuài	a piece of
13.	录音机	lù yīn jī	cassette tape recorder
14.	批评	pī píng	critisize
15.	欺骗	qī piàn	cheat, swindle
16.	肉	ròu	meat
17.	伤	shāng	to injure
18.	树叶	shù yè	leaf
19.	锁	suǒ	to lock
20.	烫	tàng	to burn, to scald
21.	踢	tī	kick
22.	铁路	tiě lù	railway, railroad tracks
23.	蚊子	wén zi	mosquito
24.	咬	yǎo	bite
25.	院子	yuàn zi	yard, courtyard
26.	摘	zhāi	pick (flowers, fruit, etc.)
27.	抓住	zhuā zhù	to catch, to sieze
28.	撞	zhuàng	to bump, to hit

## Comparison of Active and Passive voice

被 (bèi) sentences are passive voice sentences. 被 (bèi) introduces the doer of an action in a passive voice sentence. In active voice sentences, the subject is the doer of the action. In passive voice sentences, subject is the receiver of the action. For instance, “A thief stole my bicycle” is an active voice sentence and “My bicycle was stolen by a thief” is a passive voice sentence.

Active voice: “A thief stole my bicycle.”

Subject doer of the action	Predicate Verb the action	了	Object receiver of the action
小偷 xiǎo tōu Thief	偷 tōu steal	了 le completed action	我的自行车 wǒ de zìxíngchē my bicycle

Passive voice: “My bicycle was stolen by a thief.”

Subject receiver of the action	被 被	Object ( of 被 ) doer of the action	Predicate Verb the action	+ other elements (rule # 2 below)
我的自行车 wǒ de zìxíngchē My bicycle	被 bèi	小偷 xiǎo tōu thief	偷 tōu steal	了 le completed action

Sometimes, the object of 被 (bèi), the doer of the action, may be omitted. In this case, 被 (bèi) goes directly before the predicate verb.

Passive voice: “My bicycle was stolen”

Subject receiver of the action	被 被	Predicate Verb the action	+ other elements (rule # 2 below)
我的自行车 wǒ de zìxíngchē My bicycle	被 bèi	偷 tōu steal	了 completed action

### Summary of rules for simple 被 (bèi) sentences:

1. The predicate verb must be a transitive verb.
2. The predicate verb must be followed by other elements such as a compliment, 了 (le) or 过 (guo).
3. Potential compliments, using 得 (de) cannot be placed after the predicate verb.
4. The aspect particle 着 (zhe) cannot be placed after the predicate verb.



1. 小偷被抓住了。                   The thief was caught.
2. 那个姑娘被欺骗了。           That young lady was cheated.
3. 窗户被吹开了。                 The window was blown open.

1. xiǎo tōu bèi zhuā zhù le。
2. nà gè gūniáng bèi qīpiàn le。
3. chuānghù bèi chuī kāi le。

### Using 让 (ràng) and 叫(jiào)

In spoken Chinese, 被 (bèi) may be replaced by the prepositions 让 (ràng) or 叫(jiào). In sentences that use 让 (ràng) and 叫(jiào), instead of 被 (bèi); the objects of the prepositions 让 (ràng) and 叫(jiào), which are the doers of the actions, may not be omitted.

4. 字典叫我买来了。                   The dictionary was bought by me.
5. 图书馆的新书都让人借走了。     The new books in the library have all been borrowed.

4. zìdiǎn jiào wǒ mǎi lái le。
5. túshūguǎn de xīn shū dōu ràng rén jiè zǒu le。

When it is not necessary or is impossible to tell the doer of the action the word 人 (rén) may be used in sentences that use 让 (ràng), 叫(jiào) or 被 (bèi).

6. 录音机被人搬到别的教室去了。
  7. 院子里的花儿叫人摘了。
  8. 大门让人锁了。
6. The recorder was moved to another classroom by someone.
  7. The flowers in the yard were picked by someone.
  8. The door was locked by someone.

6. lùyīnjī bèi rén bān dào bié de jiāoshì qù le。
7. yuànzi lǐ de huār jiào rén zhāi le。
8. dà mén<sup>\*</sup> ràng rén suǒ le。

In sentence 3, 大门 (dà mén) can mean “main door” or “gate”.



When time is specified in a sentence, it may go directly before or directly after the subject.

The boy was bitten by the dog yesterday.

那个男孩子昨天被狗咬伤了。	nà gè nán hái zi zuó tiān
	bèi gǒu yǎo shāng le。
昨天那个男孩子被狗咬伤了。	zuó tiān nà gè nán hái zi
	bèi gǒu yǎo shāng le。

### Negative Statements

The negative form of a 被 (bèi) is generally formed by placing 没 (méi) or 没有 (méi yǒu) directly before 被 (bèi).

My bicycle was not stolen by a thief.

Subject	Negation	被	Object ( of 被 )	Predicate Verb	+ other elements (rule # 2 above)
receiver of the action		被	doer of the action	the action	
我的自行车	没(有)	被	小偷	偷	走
wǒ de zì xíng chē	méi (yǒu)	bèi	xiǎo tōu	tōu	zǒu
My bicycle	not		thief	steal	go

My bicycle was not stolen

Subject	Negation	被	Predicate Verb	+ other elements (rule # 2 above)
receiver of the action		被	the action	
我的自行车	没(有)	被	偷	走
wǒ de zì xíng chē	méi (yǒu)	bèi	tōu	zǒu
My bicycle	not		steal	go

While the grammar involved in creating a negative form of a 被 (bèi) sentence isn't difficult, it is important to remember the context involved when using a negative 被 (bèi) sentence. For instance, if someone *should* have locked the door but did not, a speaker may say, 大门没被人锁上。(dà mén méi bèi rén suǒ shàng。)(The door wasn't locked by anyone.). However, to simply express that the door isn't locked, 大门没锁着。(dà mén méi suǒ zhe。)(The door isn't locked.) would be used. If someone *should* have moved the tape recorder to the classroom, but did not, then 录音机没被人搬到教室里去。(lùyīnjī méi bèi rén bān dào jiāoshì lǐ qù。)(The recorder was not taken into the classroom by anyone) would be used. However, to



simply express that the recorder is not in the classroom, 录音机不在教室里。(lùyīnjī bú zài jiāoshì lǐ) (The recorder isn't in the classroom) would be used.

### Questions

Yes / No questions may be formed by adding 吗 (ma) or 没有 (méi yǒu) to the end of a statement.

Was your bicycle stolen?

你的自行车被偷了吗?      nǐ de zìxíngchē bèi tōu le ma?  
你的自行车被偷了没有?      nǐ de zìxíngchē bèi tōu le méi yǒu?

You may answer with a complete statement or use the following short answers.

affirmative answer: 被偷了。      bèi tōu le。      Yes, it was stolen.  
negative answer: 没被偷。      méi bèi tōu。      No, it wasn't stolen.  
negative answer: 没有。      méi yǒu。      No.

### Example Sentences

1. 树叶被风刮跑了。
  2. 水被人喝了。
  3. 门被他踢开了。
  4. 灯被老师打开了。
  5. 书被他拿走了。
- 
1. The leaves have been blown by the wind.
  2. The water has been drunk by someone.
  3. The door was kicked open by him.
  4. The light was turned on by the teacher.
  5. The book was bought by him.

1. shù yè bèi fēng guā pǎo le。
2. shuǐ bèi rén hē le。
3. mén bèi tā tī kāi le。
4. dēng bèi lǎo shī dǎ kāi le。
5. shū bèi tā ná zǒu le。

In sentence 1 above, 刮跑 (guā pǎo) or 刮走 (guā zǒu) would be used to say the leaves were already on the ground and blowing across the ground. 刮掉 (guā diào) would mean they were blown off of the tree branches, 掉 (diào) means “to fall”.



6. 铁路被大水冲坏了。
7. 那块肉被狗吃了。
8. 我被老师批评了。
9. 刚才说的话被他听见了。
10. 这件事被他们知道了。

6. The railway was damaged by the flood.
7. The meat was eaten by the dog.
8. I was criticized by the teacher.
9. What was just said was heard by him.
10. This thing (information / situation / piece of news) is known by them.

6. tiě lù bèi dà shuǐ chōng huài le。
7. nà kuài ròu bèi gǒu chī le。
8. wǒ bèi lǎoshī pīpíng le。
9. gāngcái shuō de huà bèi tā tīng jiàn le。
10. zhè jiàn shì bèi tā men zhīdào le。

11. 那棵树被大风刮倒了。
12. 钱被我花光了。
13. 我的手没被开水烫伤。
14. 桌子上的东西没被人动过。
15. 他让汽车撞伤了。

11. The tree was knocked down by the wind.
12. The money was spent by me.
13. My hand was not burned by the boiling water.
14. The things on the table were not moved by anyone.
15. He was hurt by a car.

11. nà kē shù bèi dà fēng guā dǎo le。
12. qián bèi wǒ huāguāng le。
13. wǒ de shǒu méi bèi kāishuǐ tàng shāng。
14. zhuōzi shàng de dōngxi méi bèi rén dòng guò。
15. tā ràng qìchē zhuàng shāng le。

16. 那对花瓶叫人拿走了。
17. 他的帽子叫风刮掉了。



18. 我的狗让人锁在房间里了。
19. 我的腿被狗咬了。
20. 我的脖子被蚊子叮了。

16. That pair of vases was taken away by someone.
17. His hat as blown off by the wind.
18. My dog was locked inside the room by someone.
19. My leg was bitten by the dog.
20. My neck was bitten by mosquitoes.

16. nà duì huāpíng jiào rén ná zǒu le。
17. tā de màozi jiào fēng guā diào le。
18. wǒ de gǒu ràng rén suǒ zài fáng jiān lǐ le。
19. wǒ de tuǐ bèi gǒu yǎo le。
20. wǒ de bózi bèi wénzi dīng le。

21. 图书馆的新书都被借出去了。
22. 茶叶被他放在了桌子上。
23. 东西被人放在我的屋子里了。
24. 这本书被王老师翻译成了英语。
25. 小偷被警察抓住了。

21. The new books in the library were all checked (loaned) out.
22. The tea leaves were put on the table by him.
23. The things were put in my bedroom by someone.
24. The book was translated into English by Teacher Wang.
25. The thief was caught by the police.

21. túshūguǎn de xīn shū dōu bèi jiè chū qù le。
22. chá yè bèi tā fàng zài le zhuōzi shàng。
23. dōngxi bèi rén fàng zài wǒ de wū zi lǐ le。
24. zhè běn shū bèi Wáng lǎoshī fānyì chéng le yīngyǔ。
25. xiǎotōu bèi jǐngchá zhuā zhù le。



## Appendix A Pronunciation Guide to Chinese

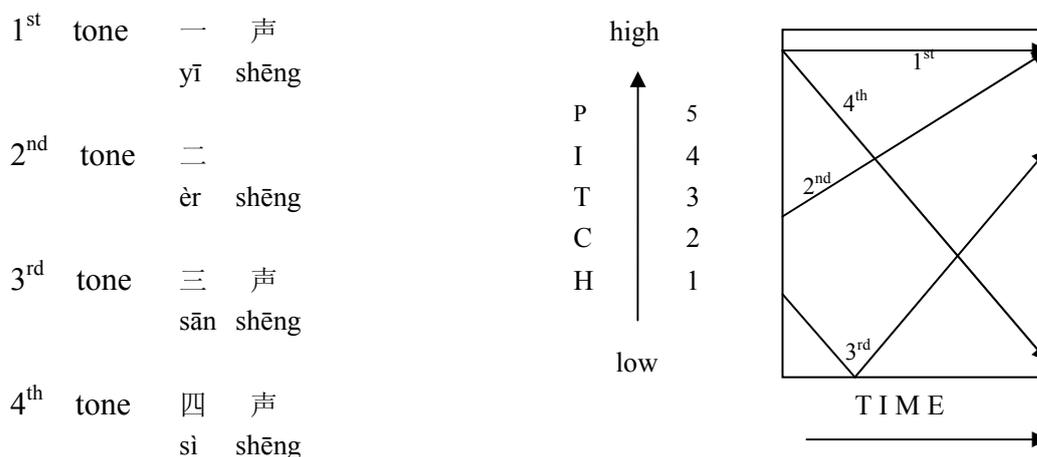
Pinyin Phonetic System .....	1
Tones .....	1
Pitch .....	2
Inflection .....	2
Neutral Tone Syllables .....	2
Guide to Pinyin Pronunciation Chart .....	2
Initials .....	3
Finals .....	3
Pinyin Chart Pronunciation Guide .....	4
Retroflex r .....	5
Tone Change Rules .....	6
Third Tone Rules .....	6
Tone Change Rules for 不 (bù) .....	6
Tone Change Rules for 一 (yī) .....	6

### Pinyin Phonetic System

During the 1950's the Chinese government developed and adopted a Romanized alphabet system to assist with learning Chinese pronunciation. The system, known as 拼音 (pīn yīn) ("spell sound"), is a letter-based phonetic system that allows one to speak Chinese with standard pronunciation. Each syllable is represented by pinyin letters that follow standard pronunciation rules. Tones are accounted for by a tone mark above each syllable.

first tone                      second tone                      third tone                      fourth tone  
—                      /                      ∨                      \

Each tone has both pitch and inflection as the diagram below illustrates:



### Tones

There are 4 distinct tones, and a neutral tone, which is spoken softly. The four tones: 1<sup>st</sup> - a high (flat) tone, 2<sup>nd</sup> - a rising tone, 3<sup>rd</sup> - a tone that combines a falling and a



rising inflection, and 4<sup>th</sup> - a falling tone. The neutral tone is soft and light. Each character is one syllable, each syllable has one tone.

The example below shows how different tones distinguish words that are otherwise pronounced alike.

1 <sup>st</sup> tone	2 <sup>nd</sup> tone	3 <sup>rd</sup> tone	4 <sup>th</sup> tone
耷	答	打	大
dā	dá	dǎ	dà
to droop	to answer	to hit	big

### Pitch

Notice the pitch of the third and first tones. When speaking a third tone, the fact that the syllable starts at the lowest pitch of the four tones is important to the listener. The low pitch of the third tone is the first and most important signal a listener has. While the inflection of the syllable is important, the pitch is also important. Beginners usually have problems with third tone syllables because they are concentrating on the proper inflection. Their main difficulty is that they do not bring the pitch low enough to be understood when speaking quickly. It is important that the first tone is distinctively higher, in pitch, than the other tones and that the start of third tone is lower, in pitch.

### Inflection

Since first tone does not require inflection, it is quite easy to master. The English language uses tones that are similar to the second and fourth tones. The word "no", spoken sharply, "NO!", is similar to the fourth tone. The word "what", when spoken as a one word question, "What?" is similar to the second tone. The key to speaking the second and fourth tones is making sure the tonal inflection very clear. Beginners must remember not to blend the syllables together. When speaking several syllables in succession, remember to start at the right pitch followed by a clear inflection.

### Neutral Tone Syllables

Some syllables are spoken, relatively softly, without a tone. This is referred to as the neutral tone, for example, in the word for mother, 妈妈 (māma). As separate characters each is pronounced as "mā", but when put together to form the word for "mother", the second "ma" becomes is spoken softly and quickly (neutral tone). In the pinyin phonetic writing system, neutral tones are unmarked.



### Guide to Pinyin Pronunciation Chart

A syllable is usually made up of a beginning consonant sound, called an "initial"; followed by a vowel sound, called a "final". Some syllables consist only of a final. Referencing Pinyin Chart 1, the columns are labeled A through AM and the rows are numbered from 1 to 23. The initials [ A3 - A23 ] are followed by finals [ B1 - AM1 ] to complete one syllable. For example:

initial	+	final	=	one syllable
[A3]	+	[B1]	=	[B3]
b	+	a	=	ba

#### Initials

The initials [A3-A23] pinyin pronunciations are approximately the same as they are in English with the exception of z, c, zh, q, and x.

Column	Initial	Pronunciation Guide
A11	z	like 'dz' or the 'ds' in suds
A12	c	like the 'ts' in rats
A14	zh	like 'j' in just with tongue back
A19	q	like the 'ch' in cheese with tongue forward
A20	x	like the 'sh' in sheet with tongue forward

#### Finals

The finals [ B1 - AN1 ] may also be used alone, however some of them are spelled differently when they are used alone. Row 2 [ B2 - AM2 ] shows the pinyin spellings of the finals when they are used alone. Notice that initials E2, F2 and P2 are blank because the finals in E1, F1, and P1 are not used alone. Notice that the sounds on the chart in Row 1, from Q1 to AN1 are not the same as the spellings in Row 2 from Q2 to AN2. This is because these syllables, when used alone, are spelled differently than simply spelling the final. For example: The pinyin spelling of 王 is 'wang'. However, there is no initial 'w' [ A3 - A23 ]. In this case, the pinyin for this word has no consonant initial. The final, 'uang' [ AH1 ], stands alone as a single syllable. A 'w' is used in place of the 'u' in the pinyin spelling, as shown in row 2. [ AH2 ]. The sounds used for pronunciation are in Row 1 and the pinyin spellings are in Row 2.



## Pinyin Chart (Pronunciation Guide)

Column	Final	Pronunciation Guide
B	a	like 'a' in father
C	o	like 'o' in more
D	e	like 'u' in up <sup>* Note 1</sup>
E	no letter	like 'r' in shirt
F	no letter	like 'i' in quiz
G	er	like the American pronunciation of the letter 'r' <sup>* Note 2</sup>
H	ai	like 'ai' in aisle
I	ei	like 'ei' in weigh
J	ao	like 'ow' in now
K	ou	like 'ough' in though
L	an	begins with an 'a' like in father and ends with 'n' like in no
M	en	like 'en' in open
N	ang	begins with an 'a' like in father and ends with 'ng' in hung
P	ong	like 'oh' followed by the 'ng' in song
Q	i	like 'i' in machine
R	ia	like 'i' in machine followed by 'a' in father
S	iao	like 'i' in machine followed by the 'ough' in though
T	ie	like 'i' in machine followed by the 'ay' in day <sup>* Note 3</sup>
U	iu	like 'i' in machine followed by 'oh'
V	ian	like 'i' in machine followed by 'an' (as described above in L)
W	in	like 'i' in machine followed by the 'n' in no
X	iang	like 'i' in machine followed by 'ang' (described above in N)
Y	ing	like 'ing' in sing
Z	iong	like 'i' in machine followed by 'ong' (described above in P)
AA	u	like 'oo' in boo <sup>* Note 4</sup>
AB	ua	like 'oo' in boo followed by the 'a' in father
AC	uo	like 'oo' in boo followed by 'oh'
AD	uai	like 'oo' in boo followed by the 'ai' in aisle
AE	ui	like 'oo' in boo followed by 'ay' in sway
AF	uan	like 'oo' in boo followed by 'an' (as described above in L) <sup>* Note 5</sup>
AG	un	like 'oo' in boo followed by the 'n' in no
AH	uang	like 'oo' in boo followed by 'an' (as described above in L)
AI	ueng	like 'oo' in boo followed by 'an' (as described above in L)
AJ	ü	like 'ee' in knee followed by the 'u' in you (but with lips rounded) sounds like German ü or French eu <sup>* Note 6</sup>
AK	üe	ü (described above) followed by the 'ay' in day
AL	üan	ü (described above) followed by 'an' (described above in L)
AM	ün	ü (described above) followed by the 'n' in no



**Note 1:** When 'e' is pronounced alone, as one syllable, is not the same sound as used in 'ye' [ T2 ], which is pronounced like the 'ye' in yes.

**Note 2:** In the spoken language, there are cases when the 'er' sound [ G1,G2 ] is appended to other syllables. This is not reflected in the chart. The rules regarding the use this sound are discussed in the following section on rules for speaking.

**Note 3:** When 'ie' [ T1 ] is used after an initial, the 'i' is pronounced like the 'i' in machine followed by 'e' which is pronounced like the 'ay' in day. When 'ie' [ T1 ] is used alone, it is spelled 'ye' [ T2 ] and pronounced like the 'ye' in yes.

**Note 4:** Do not be mistaken that the 'u' in the pinyin spellings of yu, ju, qu and xu represent the 'oo' sound in column AA - it does not. These syllables are located in column AJ. In this case, the pinyin spelling rules use the letter 'u' as a substitute for the letter 'ü', but the syllable is spoken with the sound of 'ü'. The pinyin spellings yu, ju, qu and xu - represent the syllables: ü, jü, qü and xü .

**Note 5:** Do not be mistaken that the pinyin spelling of yuan, juan, quan and xuan represent the 'uan' sound in column AF - they do not. These syllables are located in the AL column. In this case, the pinyin spelling rules substitute the letter 'u' for 'ü', but the syllable is spoken with the sound of 'üan'. In this case, the spellings yuan, juan, quan and xuan represent the syllables - . yüan, jüan, qüan and xüan .

**Note 6:** In pinyin spelling, the letter 'ü' is only used in four spellings. (nü, lü, nüe, yüe,) [ AJ9, AJ10, AK9, AK10 ]. The spellings in AJ - AM columns of the chart show that the letter 'ü' is spelt as 'u' when it is used with the initials 'j', 'q' and 'x'. Even though they are spelled with 'u', they are not spoken with the same sound as the 'u' in AA. Syllables in the AJ - AM columns are pronounced using 'ü', not 'u'.

## Rules for Speaking

### Retroflex r

The retroflex "r" (er) is sometimes attached to a final. This sound is included in the syllable that it is attached to, so the addition of 儿 (er) doesn't change the original tone. Only an 'r' is added to the pinyin spelling. For instance, 哪 (nǎ) becomes 哪儿 (nǎr). Standard Mandarin has several instances when this is used. If the retroflex "r" (er) is added to a word ending in a consonant, the consonant is still pronounced. For instance, when 儿 (er) is added to 点 (diǎn), the final "n" is pronounced. In these type words, the tongue will be in the position of final consonant and the 儿 (er) sound will have a slight nasal quality.



## Tone Change Rules

In spoken Chinese there are times when the tones of some syllables are changed. However, these changes are not usually reflected in written pinyin. The rules are:

### Third Tone Change Rule

If a 3<sup>rd</sup> tone is followed by another 3<sup>rd</sup> tone, the first 3<sup>rd</sup> tone becomes second tone. For example, 你好 (nǐ hǎo) - nǐ changes to a 2<sup>nd</sup> tone (ní) and 好 (hǎo) remains a 3<sup>rd</sup> tone. It is written as (nǐ hǎo) but spoken as (níhǎo).

### Tone Change Rules for 不 (bù)

The word 不 (bù) is 4<sup>th</sup> tone when it is spoken in isolation, but when it is followed by another 4<sup>th</sup> tone, it is pronounced 2<sup>nd</sup> tone. For example, 不要 (bù yào) is represented in pinyin spelling as (bù yào), but it is spoken as (bú yào). When 不 (bù) is used in affirmative negative questions, as in phrases such as 是不是 (shì bu shì), it is pronounced in the neutral tone.

### Tone Change Rules for 一 (yī)

**First tone** - The word '一 (yī)', which means 'one', is pronounced in the 1<sup>st</sup> tone when it is spoken in isolation, for instance, when counting, using cardinal numbers or stating non-arithmetic numbers such as room numbers. When it is the last digit of a number, it will also be spoken in the first tone, for example, 十一 (shí yī), which means eleven.

**Second tone** - When '一 (yī)' precedes a 4<sup>th</sup> tone syllable, it is pronounced in the 2<sup>nd</sup> tone, for example, 一个人 (yí gè rén) is pronounced 'yí gè rén'.

**Fourth tone** - When '一 (yī)' precedes a 1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup>, or 3<sup>rd</sup> tone syllable, it is pronounced 4<sup>th</sup> tone.

Chinese Character	一张	一年	一起
Written Pinyin	yī zhāng	yī nián	yī qǐ
Spoken Chinese	yì zhāng	yì nián	yì qǐ

Remember: Unlike English, when speaking a multi-syllabic word, the sounds do not blend. In Chinese, each syllable begins at its proper pitch.

In the Chinese OCW Conversational Chinese Grammar Book and Workbook, the pinyin has been changed to reflect the tone change rules for 不 (bù) and 一 (yī).



## Appendix B Advanced Measure Words

### Summary

#### Section A – Using nouns of quantity

#### Section B – Expressing “half” 半 (bàn)

##### B1. one half of a noun

两个桔子	liǎng gè júzi	one orange
半个桔子	bàn gè júzi	half an orange

##### B2. one and a half of a noun

三瓶啤酒	sān píng píjiǔ	three bottles of beer
三瓶半啤酒	sān píng bàn píjiǔ	three and a half bottles of beer

##### B3. one half of a noun of quantity

一年	yì nián	one year
半年	bàn nián	one half year

##### B4. one half of a noun of quantity

一年	yì nián	one year
一年半	yì nián bàn	one and a half years

#### Section C – Expressing Indeterminate Quantities

##### C1. a few, a little

一点(儿)	yì diǎn(r)	nouns
一点(儿)	yì diǎn(r)	adjectives
有一点(儿)	yǒu yì diǎn (r)	adjectives and verbs
一点点 and 有一点点	yì diǎndiǎn	nouns and adjectives
	yǒu yì diǎndiǎn	adjectives and verbs

##### C2. these, those, some

那些 / 这些	nà xiē / zhè xiē
一点点	yì diǎndiǎn

#### Section D – Using Measure Words with 多 (duō)

##### D1. Numbers that have a units place of “0” and nouns

四十多块钱	sì shí duō kuài qián	more than 40 rmb
-------	----------------------	------------------

##### D2. Numbers that have a units place of “1 -9” and nouns

四十二快多钱	sì shí èr kuài duō qián	more than 42 rmb
--------	-------------------------	------------------

Appendix B - Page 1 of 14

Chinese OCW Conversational Chinese is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution, Noncommercial, No Derivative Works 2.5 China Mainland License. Based on work at Chinese [www.chineseocw.com](http://www.chineseocw.com)



**D3.** Numbers that have a units place of “0” and nouns of quantity

十多年                      shí duō nián                      over 10 years

**D4.** Numbers that have a units place of “1 -9” and nouns of quantity

十一年多                      shí yì nián duō                      over 11 years

**Section E** – verbal measure words

**Section F** – characters that are measure words that appear in nouns

Refer to Appendix A for the tone change rules for 一 (yī).

**Section A – Nouns of Quantity**

Some nouns are considered “nouns of quantity” so they are, themselves, considered measure words. In this case, the numeral is placed just before the noun. The list below has some commonly used nouns of quantity.

Words that express time:

年	天	周	分	秒	刻	岁
nián	tiān	zhōu	fēn	miǎo	kè	sui
year	day	week	minute	second	quarter of an hour	years old

1. 一年有十二个月。                      One year has 12 months.
2. 一天有二十四个小时。                      One day has 24 hours.
3. 一个星期有七天。                      One week has seven days.
4. 一个小时有六十分钟。                      One hour has 60 minutes.
5. 一分钟有六十秒。                      One minute has 60 seconds.
6. 十五分钟是一刻。                      15 minutes is one quarter of an hour.
7. 他六岁。                      He is six years old.

1. yì nián yǒu shí èr gè yuè。
2. yì tiān yǒu èr shí sì gè xiǎoshí。
3. yí gè xīngqī yǒu qī tiān。
4. yí gè xiǎoshí yǒu liù shí fēn zhōng。
5. yí fēn zhōng yǒu liù shí miǎo。
6. shí wǔ fēn zhōng shì yī kè zhōng。
7. tā liù suì。

These words are nouns of quantity and are also measure words. In examples 1 – 5 they are used as nouns of quantity, in examples 6 – 9 they are used as measure words. (A “jin” is a measurement unique to China, it equals one half of a kilogram.)

斤	公斤	克	米
jīn	gōng jīn	kè	mǐ
half a kilogram	kilogram	gram	meter

- |                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| 1. 一公斤有两斤。         | There are two jin* in one kilogram.                  |
| 2. 一公斤有一千克。        | There are 1000 grams in one kilogram.                |
| 3. 他两米高。           | He is two meters tall.                               |
| 4. 他高两米。           | He is two meters tall.                               |
| 5. 从我的家到天安门是三千米。   | It is 3 kilometers from my home to Tiananmen Square. |
| 6. 我买了两斤苹果。        | I bought 2 jins of apples.                           |
| 7. 这件裙子用了三米布。      | This dress will take 3 meters of material. (to make) |
| 8. 这个瓶子里有 100 克水。  | This bottle has 100 grams of water in it.            |
| 9. 这个大蛋糕用了 2 公斤面粉。 | This big cake takes 2 kilograms of flour. (to make)  |

1. yī gōng jīn yǒu liǎng jīn。
2. yī gōng jīn yǒu yī qiān kè。
3. tā liǎng mǐ gāo。
4. tā gāo liǎng mǐ。
5. cóng wǒ de jiā dào tiānānmén shì sān qiān mǐ。
6. wǒ mǎi le liǎng jīn píngguǒ。
7. zhè jiàn qún zǐ yòng le sān mǐ bù。
8. zhè gè píngzi lǐ yǒu 100 kè shuǐ。
9. zhè gè dà dàn gāo yòng le 2 gōng jīn miàn fěn。

### Section B – Expressing “half” 半 (bàn)

**B1.** When expressing “one half” of a noun, the word order is:

半 (bàn) + measure word + noun

Comparison of expressing whole numbers and expressing “a half”:

我有两个桔子。 wǒ yǒu liǎng gè júzi。 I have two oranges.



我有半个桔子。 wǒ yǒu bàn gè júzi。 I have half an orange.

半瓶啤酒	bàn píng píjiǔ	half of a bottle of beer
半张纸	bàn zhāng zhǐ	half of a piece of paper
半只鸡	bàn zhī jī	half of a chicken
半个月	bàn gè yuè	half of a month
一个星期	bàn gè xīngqī	half of a week
半个小时	bàn gè xiǎoshí	half an hour
半个钟头	bàn gè zhōngtóu	half an hour

**B2.** When expressing “[number] and a half” of a noun, the word is:

whole number + measure word 半 (bàn) + noun

Comparison of whole numbers and expressing “[number] and a half”:

我有三瓶啤酒。 wǒ yǒu sān píng píjiǔ。 I have 3 bottles of beer.  
我有三瓶半啤酒。 wǒ yǒu sān píng bàn píjiǔ。 I have 3 and one half bottles of beer.

一杯半茶	yì bēi bàn chá	one and half cups of tea
两张半纸	liǎng zhāng bàn zhǐ	two and a half pieces of paper
三个半桔子	sān gè bàn júzi	three and a half oranges
四个半月	sì gè bàn yuè	four and a half months
五个半星期	wǔ gè bàn xīngqī	five and a half weeks
六个半小时	liù gè bàn xiǎoshí	six and a half hours
七个半钟头	qī gè bàn zhōngtóu	seven and half hours

**B3.** When expressing “one half” of a noun of quantity, the word order is:

半 (bàn) + noun of quantity

Comparison of whole numbers and expressing “a half”:

我住在北京一年了。 wǒ zhù zài Běijīng yì nián le。 I have lived in Beijing for one year.  
我住在北京半年了。 wǒ zhù zài Běijīng bàn nián le。 I have lived in Beijing for half a year.

半年	bàn nián	half of a year
半天	bàn tiān	half of a day
半分	bàn fēn	half of a minute

半秒 bàn miǎo half of a second

**B4.** When expressing “[number] and a half” of a noun of quantity, the word is:

whole number + noun of quantity 半 (bàn)

Comparison of whole numbers and expressing “[number] and a half”:

我住在北京一年了。 wǒ zhù zài Běijīng yì nián le。 I have lived in Beijing for one year.

我住在北京一年半了。 wǒ zhù zài Běijīng yì nián bàn le。 I have lived in Beijing for one and a half years.

一斤半羊肉 yī jīn bàn yáng ròu one and a half jin of mutton

两岁半 liǎng suì bàn two and a half years old

三年半 sān nián bàn three and a half years

四米半 sì mǐ bàn four and a half meters

五分半 wǔ fēn bàn five and a half minutes

六秒半 liù miǎo bàn six and a half seconds

七天半 qī tiān bàn seven and a half days

### Section C – Expressing Indeterminate Quantities

**C1.** Expressing “a few” or “a little”

<b>a little / a few</b>	一点(儿) yì diǎn(r)	有一点(儿) yǒu yì diǎn (r)	一点点 yì diǎndiǎn
-------------------------	---------------------	---------------------------	--------------------

**一点(儿) with Nouns**

When 一点(儿) [ yì diǎn (r) ] is used before a noun it has the function of a measure word to quantify the noun, indicating an indefinite small quantity, usually smaller than 一些 (yì xiē) indicates (example sentence 6). The noun can be omitted if the noun being referenced is clear. The retroflex 儿 (r) is always optional and 一 (yì) may be omitted except when it appears at the beginning of a sentence.

1. 我们先商量一点儿事，然后我们走吧。
2. 我把一点儿东西落在办公室。
3. 因为我喝了点儿酒所以我不必开车。
4. 吃一点儿什么？
5. 我去商店买一点儿糖\*。
6. 教室有一些学生。



1. wǒmen xiān shāngliàng yì diǎnr shì, ránhòu wǒmen zǒu ba。
2. wǒ bǎ yì diǎnr dōngxī là zài bàngōngshì。
3. yīnwéi wǒ hē le diǎnr jiǔ suǒyǐ wǒ búbì kāichē。
4. chī yì diǎnr shénme?
5. wǒ qù shāngdiàn mǎi yì diǎnr táng\*。
6. jiāoshì yǒu yì xiē xuéshēng。

\*Sugar and candy are the same word in Chinese. People refer to “refined white sugar” as白糖 (bái táng).

1. First we will talk (about something) and then we will go.
2. I left a few things at the office.
3. Because I drank a little (alcohol), I must not drive.
4. What would you like to eat?
5. I would like to go to the store and buy some candy.
6. There are some students in the classroom.

In the examples below, the nouns are omitted because it is clear from context what the speaker has in mind.

7. 我只买一点。 wǒ zhī mǎi yìdiǎn。 I only bought a little.
8. 再吃点儿吗? zài chī diǎnr ma? Would you like to eat a little more?

### 一点(儿) Adjectives

一点(儿) [ yì diǎn (r) ] does not come before adjectives, but it may be used after adjectives. It is usually used to form a comparative degree. The retroflex 儿 is always optional and 一 (yì) may be omitted except when it appears at the beginning of a sentence.

9. 今天比昨天热一点儿。
10. 我跑得比他快一点儿。
11. 今年的冬天比去年的冷一点儿。
12. 快点儿!
13. 慢点儿!

9. jīntiān bǐ zuótiān rè yìdiǎnr。
10. wǒ pǎo dé bǐ tā kuài yìdiǎnr。
11. jīn nián de dōngtiān bǐ qù nián de lěng yìdiǎnr。
12. kuài diǎnr!
13. màn diǎnr!



9. Today is a little warmer than yesterday.
10. I run a little faster than he does.
11. This year winter has been a little colder than last year.
12. Hurry up!
13. Be careful!

In sentence 11, 慢 (màn) which literally means “slow”, is commonly used to mean “be careful”.

### 有点儿 **Adjectives and Verbs**

有点(儿) [ yǒu yì diǎn (r) ] comes before a verb or an adjective, meaning “a bit”, “a little”, or “slightly” – it is often used to qualify something undesirable.

14. 他有点儿不高兴。
15. 这个大衣有点儿长。
16. 这些衣服有点儿脏了。
17. 我有点儿累。
18. 我有点儿想家。

14. tā yǒu diǎnr bú gāoxìng。
15. zhè gè dàiyī yǒu diǎnr cháng。
16. zhè xiē yīfú yǒu diǎnr zāng le。
17. wǒ yǒu diǎnr lèi。
18. wǒ yǒu diǎnr xiǎng jiā。

14. He is a little unhappy.
15. This coat is a little long.
16. These clothes are a little dirty.
17. I am a little tired.
18. I miss home a little.

### 一点点 **and** 有一点点

一点点 (yì diǎn diǎn) is a bit lower than 一点(儿) [ yǒu yì diǎn (r) ] but both expressions follow the same grammatical rules.

19. 给我一点点时间就够了。
20. 他只喝了一点点，就头疼了。
21. 做这个菜要用一点点咸。

19. gěi wǒ yì diǎn diǎn shíjiān jiù gòu le。
20. tā zhī hē le yì diǎn diǎn, jiù tóu téng le。



21. zuò zhè gè cài yào yòng yī diǎn diǎn xián。

19. Give me a little bit of your time and that will be enough.
20. He only has to drink a little (alcohol) and gets a headache.
21. To cook this dish you need a little bit of salt.

有一点点(yǒu yì diǎn diǎn) is a bit lower than 有点(儿) [ yǒu yì diǎn (r) ] but both expressions follow the same grammatical rules.

22. 我们的教室很好，就是有一点点热。
23. 在这儿住不错，就是有一点点远。
24. 菜的味道也确实不错，就是有一点点咸。

22. wǒmen de jiāoshì hěn hǎo, jiù shì yǒu yì diǎn diǎn rè.
23. zài zhèr zhù bú cuò, jiù shì yǒu yì diǎn diǎn yuǎn.
24. cài de wèidào bú cuò, jiù shì yǒu yì diǎn diǎn xián.

22. Our classroom is good, it is a little hot.
23. Living here isn't bad, but it is a little far (away).
24. This dish isn't bad but it is a little salty.

### Example Sentences

1. 他有点儿像他的爸爸。
2. 这件毛衣有点儿长，请换一个短一点儿的。
3. 刚来中国的时候，我生活有一点儿不习惯，现在习惯了。
4. 现在这么忙，你应该注意一点儿身体。
5. 你病了，得吃一点儿药。
6. 他刚才喝了一点酒，头有一点儿疼。
7. 大家都看着他，他觉得有点儿不好意思。
8. 我有一点儿不舒服。
9. 我不想看那个比赛，我对运动一点儿兴趣也没有。
10. 今天暖和一点儿了。
11. 她的病好一点儿了。
12. 我会说一点儿法语。

1. tā yǒu diǎnr xiàng tā de bàbà.
2. zhè jiàn máoyī yǒu diǎnr cháng, qǐng huàn yí gè duǎn yì diǎnr de.
3. gāng lái zhōngguó de shí hòu, wǒ shēnghuó yǒu yì diǎnr bú xíguàn, xiàn zài xíguàn le.



4. xiàn zài zhème máng, nǐ yīnggāi zhùyì yì diǎnr shēntǐ。
5. nǐ bìng le, děi chī yī diǎnr yào。
6. tā gāng cái hē le yì diǎnr jiǔ, tóu yǒu yì diǎnr téng。
7. dàjiā dōu kàn zhe tā, tā jué dé yǒu diǎnr bú hǎo yì sī。
8. wǒ yǒu yì diǎnr bú shū fú。
9. wǒ bú xiǎng kàn nà gè bǐsài,  
wǒ duì yùndòng yì diǎnr xìngqù yě méiyǒu。
10. jīntiān nuǎnhuó yì diǎnr le。
11. tā de bìng hǎo yì diǎnr le。
12. wǒ huì shuō yì diǎnr fǎyǔ。

1. He looks a little like his father.
2. This sweater is a little long, please exchange it for one that is a little shorter.
3. When I first came to China I wasn't quite used to life (here), now I am a little more used to it.
4. You are quite busy now, you should give a little (more) attention to your health.
5. You are sick, you need to take a little medicine.
6. He just drank a little alcohol, he has a little bit of a headache.
7. Everyone is looking at him, he feels a little embarrassed.
8. I feel a little sick.
9. I don't want to watch that game, I have no interest in sports.
10. Today is a little warmer. (than expected / than yesterday)
11. He is a little better today. / His health condition is a little better today.
12. I speak a little French.

### C1. Expressing “these”, “those”, and “some”

When expressing “some”, “a few” or “a little”, 些 (xiē) and 点 (diǎn) are often used after pronouns 那 (nà) and 这 (zhè). These are not used with nouns of quantity. In example 3, 活 (huó) means “task” and 干完 (gàn wán) means to “finish doing”.

- |                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| 1. 这些书是王老师的。         | These books are Teacher Wang's.                            |
| 2. 在教室里的那些学生是王老师的学生。 | The students in the classroom are Teacher Wang's students. |
| 3. 把这点儿活干完。          | Finish these tasks.  |
| 4. 工厂那点儿事, 我都知道。     | I understand everything about the factory.                 |

1. zhè xiē shū shì Wáng lǎoshī de。
2. zài jiāoshì lǐ de nà xiē xuéshēng  
shì Wáng lǎoshī de xuéshēng。



3. bǎ zhè diǎnr huó gàn wán。
4. gōngchǎng nà diǎnr shì, wǒ dōu zhīdào。

### Section D – Using Measures Words with 多 (duō)

#### D1. Using measure words and nouns with 多 (duō) (with whole numbers that have a units place of zero)

whole number  
(with unit place of 0) + 多 + measure word + noun

- |                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| 1. 这件毛衣要四十多块钱。   | This sweater is more than 40 rmb.           |
| 2. 今天我买了十多斤羊肉。   | I bought more than 10 jins of mutton today. |
| 3. 他们坐火车坐了十多个小时。 | They were on the train for over 10 hours.   |

1. zhè jiàn máoyī yào sì shí duō kuài qián。
2. jīntiān wǒ mǎi le shí duō jīn yang ròu。
3. tā men zuò huǒchē zuò le shí duō gè xiǎo shí。

#### D2. Using measure words and nouns with 多 (duō) (with whole numbers that have a units place of 1 – 9)

whole number  
(with unit place of 1 -9) + measure word + 多 + noun

- |                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| 1. 这件毛衣要四十二快多钱。  | This sweater is more than 42 rmb.           |
| 2. 今天我买了十四斤多羊肉。  | I bought more than 14 jins of mutton today. |
| 3. 他们坐火车了十五个多小时。 | They were on the train for over 15 hours.   |

1. zhè jiàn máo yī yào sì shí èr kuài duō qián。
2. jīntiān wǒ mǎi le shí sì jīn duō yang ròu。
3. tā men zuò huǒchē le shí wǔ gè duō xiǎo shí。



**D3.** Using measure words and nouns of quantity with 多 (duō)  
(with whole numbers that have a units place of zero)

whole number + 多 + noun of quantity  
(with unit place of 0)

1. 他二十多岁了。 He is over 20 years old.
2. 我住在北京十多年了。 I have lived in Beijing for more than 10 years.

1. tā èr shí duō suì le。
2. wǒ zhù zài Běijīng shí duō nián le。

**D4.** Using measure words and nouns of quantity with 多 (duō)  
(with whole numbers that have a units place of 1 – 9)

whole number + noun of quantity + 多  
(with unit place of 1 -9)

1. 他二十二岁多了。 He is over 22 years old.
2. 我住在北京十一年多了。 I have lived in Beijing for over 11 years.

1. tā èr shí èr suì duō le。
2. wǒ zhù zài Běijīng shí yī nián duō le。

### Section E – Verbal Measure Words

Verbal measure words are most commonly used as compliments of verbs to indicate the number of times actions happen. The number of times is expressed using a number and a verbal measure word. The number and measure word go between the verb and the object. In some instances, it is not necessary to include the object. In the example below, 趟 (tàng) means “a trip”.

I have been to the new bookshop once.

subject	verb	number of times (number + measure word)	object
我 wǒ	去过 qù guò	一趟 yí tàng	那家新的书店。 nà jiā xīn de shūdiàn?

subject	verb	number of times (number + measure word)
我 wǒ	去过 qù guò	一趟。 yí tàng

Appendix B - Page 11 of 14

Chinese OCW Conversational Chinese is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution, Noncommercial, No Derivative Works 2.5 China Mainland License. Based on work at Chinese [www.chineseocw.com](http://www.chineseocw.com)



When forming questions, 几 (jǐ) and 多少 (duō shǎo) are used in place of the number of times and the measure word is stated. Usually 几 (jǐ) is used for a relatively small number and 多少 (duō shǎo) is used for relatively large numbers.

How many times have you been to the new bookshop?

subject	verb	number of times? (几 / 多少 + measure word)	object
你 nǐ	去过 qù guò	几趟 jǐ tàng	那家新的书店? nà jiā xīn de shūdiàn?

The most common measure word for describing the number of times something occurs is 次 (cì) (one time, occurrence). Especially when answering questions. For instance, 我去过一次 (wǒ qù guò yī cì) (I have been [there] once.) is appropriate for answering a question, but 趟 (tàng) would normally be used in a statement.

次      cì      one time, occurrence

- |                |  |
|----------------|--|
| 1. 你们讨论过这件事?   | Have you discussed the matter?                 |
| 2. 你们讨论过几次这件事? | How many times have you discussed the matter?  |
| 3. 我们讨论过两次。    | We have discussed it twice.                    |
| 4. 你们见了几次面?    | How many times have you met?                   |
| 5. 见了两次面。      | (We) have met twice.                           |
| 6. 上个月你进了几次城?  | How many times did you go downtown last month? |
| 7. 进了一次城。      | (I) went downtown once.                        |
| 8. 你去哪儿旅行?     | Where did you go traveling?                    |
| 9. 这次到南方旅行。    | This time to the south.                        |

1. nǐ men tāolùn guò zhè jiàn shì?
2. nǐ men tāolùn guò jǐ cì zhè jiàn shì?
3. wǒ men tāolùn guò liǎng cì。
4. nǐ men jiàn le jǐ cì miàn?
5. jiàn le liǎng cì miàn。
6. shàng gè yuè nǐ jìn le jǐ cì chéng?
7. jìn le yī cì chéng。
8. nǐ qù nǎr lǚ xíng?



9. zhè cì dào nán fāng lǚ xíng。

The verbal measure word 遍 (biàn) is used to show that an action happens in its entirety from beginning to end.

- |                |  |
|----------------|--|
| 1. 你听过几遍了?     | How many times have you listened (to this)?      |
| 2. 你听过多少遍了?    | How many times have you listened (to this)?      |
| 3. 我已经听过几遍了。   | I have already listened (to this) several times. |
| 4. 我打算再复习一遍。   | I plan to review (something) again.              |
| 5. 我已经写了两遍。    | I have already written (something) twice.        |
| 6. 我又重新改了三遍。   | I changed it three times.                        |
| 7. 再说一遍。       | Say that again.                                  |
| 8. 这篇文章你再看一遍吧。 | Read this article again.                         |

1. nǐ tīng guò jǐ biàn le?
2. nǐ tīng guò duō shǎo biàn le?
3. wǒ yǐ jīng tīng guò jǐ biàn le。
4. wǒ dǎ suàn zài fù xī yí biàn。
5. wǒ yǐ jīng xiě le liǎng biàn。
6. wǒ yòu zhòng xīn gǎi le sān biàn。
7. zài shuō yí biàn。
8. zhè piān wén zhāng nǐ zài kàn yí biàn ba。

**Section E – Characters that are measure words that appear in nouns**

Some characters that are measure words appear in nouns. For instance, to say “a cup of (something)”, 杯 (bēi) is used. 一杯茶 (yī bēi chá) means “a cup of tea”. To say “a cup” as in the sentence “I have a cup”, one would say “我有一个杯子。(wǒ yǒu yí gè bēizi.).

瓶	píng	bottle	
三瓶水	sān píng shuǐ	three bottles of water	
三个瓶子	sān gè píng zi	three bottles	

Note: Many characters are both nouns and measure words. In these examples, 家 (jiā) means “home” or “family”:

1. 我家有三个人。                      There are four people in my family.  
wǒ jiā yǒu sān gè rén。
2. 我明天回家。                      I will go home tomorrow.  
wǒ míng tiān huí jiā。



In these examples, 家 (jiā) is a measure word for some business establishments.

一家商店	yì jiā shāngdiàn	one store
两家银行	liǎng jiā yínháng	two banks
三家医院	sān jiā yīyuàn	three hospitals
四家旅馆	sì jiā lǚguǎn	four hotels



## Appendix C

### Shopping / Money / Colors / Clothing

#### New Words

1.	人民币	rén mín bì	RMB (Chinese unit of currency)
2.	元	yuán	Chinese unit of currency
3.	角	jiǎo	.1 RMB (rén mín bì)
4.	分	máo (spoken only)	.1 RMB (rén mín bì)
5.	分	fēn	.01 RMB (rén mín bì)
6.	块	kuài (spoken only)	Chinese unit of currency
7.	钱	qián	money
8.	斤	jīn	Chinese unit of weight (.5 kilograms)
9.	一共	yí gòng	all together
10.	本	běn	measure word for books
11.	支	zhī	measure word for garments
12.	件	jiàn	measure word for writing instruments
13.	本子	běn zǐ	notebook
14.	钢笔	gāng bǐ	fountain pen
15.	桔子	jú zǐ	orange
16.	苹果	píng guǒ	apple
17.	花生米	huā shēng mǐ	peanut
18.	地图	dì tú	map
19.	衬衫	chèn shān	shirt
20.	百	bǎi	one hundred (100)
21.	白	bái	white
22.	黄	huáng	yellow

### Currency

The Chinese unit of currency, the 人民币 (rén mín bì), is written as 元 (yuán). It is usually spoken as 块 (kuài). Amounts of money are expressed in the following examples. Adding 钱 (qián) to the amount is optional.

(Refer to Appendix A for the tone change rules for 一 (yī).)



When expressing amounts of money, 二 (èr) is only used for an amount ending in two 分 (fèn) otherwise 两 (liǎng) is used.

	Written	Spoken
¥ 1.00	一元 (钱)	一块 (钱)
¥ 1.05	一元零五分 (钱)	一块零五分 (钱)
¥ 1.25	一元两角五 (分)	一元两角五 (分钱)
¥ 1.50	一元五	一块五
¥ 1.50	一元五 (毛钱)	一块五毛钱
¥ 1.65	一元六角五 (分钱)	一块五毛钱
¥ 0.02	两分 / 二分	两分 / 二分
¥ 1.00	yī yuán (qián)	written
	yī kuài (qián)	spoken
¥ 1.05	yī yuán líng wǔ fēn (qián)	written
	yī kuài líng wǔ fēn (qián)	spoken
¥ 1.25	yī yuán liǎng jiǎo wǔ (fēn)	written
	yī yuán liǎng jiǎo wǔ (fēn qián)	spoken
¥ 1.50	yī yuán wǔ	written
	yī kuài wǔ	spoken
	yī yuán wǔ (máo qián)	written
¥ 1.65	yī yuán liù jiǎo wǔ (fēn qián)	written
	yī kuài liù máo wǔ (fēn qián)	spoken
¥ 0.02	liǎng fēn / èr fēn	written and spoken

### Questions

When asking the price of an item or number of items, first state the quantity (using measure words or units of quantity) - then state the item - then add 多少钱 (duō shǎo qián).

amount / quantity	item	多少钱?	
1. 一斤	苹果	多少钱?	How much is a jin of apples?
2. 一本	本字	多少钱?	How much is one notebook?
3. 一包	花生米	多少钱?	How much is a bag of peanuts?
4. 一支	钢笔	多少钱?	How much is the fountain pen?

1. yì jīn píngguǒ duōshǎo qián?
2. yì běn běnzì duōshǎo qián?
3. yì bāo huāshēngmǐ duōshǎo qián?
4. yì zhī gāngbǐ duōshǎo qián?

To express the desire to buy something, 要 , 买 or 要买 may be used.

5. 我 (要 / 买 / 要买) 一包花生米。 I want one bag of peanuts.
  6. 您 (要 / 买 / 要买) 什么? What would you like?
  7. 您 (要 / 买 / 要买) 多少? How [many / much] would you like?
- 
5. wǒ (yào / mǎi / yàomǎi) yì bāo huāshēngmǐ.
  6. nín (yào / mǎi / yàomǎi) shénme?
  7. nín (yào / mǎi / yàomǎi) duōshǎo?

### Example Sentences

1. 我要中国地图。 I would like (to buy) a map of China.
2. 这张中国地图多少钱? How much is a map of China?

1. wǒ yào zhōngguó dìtú.
2. zhè zhāng zhōngguó dìtú duōshǎo qián?

1. 您买什么? What would you like to buy (see)?
2. 我买两个本子。 I would like to buy two notebooks.
3. 一个本子多少钱? How much is one notebook?
4. 一个本子五毛。 One notebook is five máo.
5. 一共多少钱? How much all together?
6. 一共一块。 Together, one kuài.

1. nín mǎi shénme?
2. wǒ mǎi liǎng gè běnzi.
3. yí gè běnzi duōshǎo qián?
4. yí gè běnzi wǔ máo.
5. yí gòng duōshǎo qián?
6. yí gòng yī kuài.

1. 我要买这两件衬衫。 I would like to buy these two shirts.
2. 一件衬衫多少钱? How much are the shirts?
3. 黄衬衫五十块一(毛) 。 Yellow shirts are ¥50 .10
4. 白衬衫四十二块八(毛) 。 White shirts are ¥48 . 80
5. 一共九十二块九(毛) 。 Together, ¥ 92 . 90
6. 您给我一百块。 You gave me ¥ 100 . 00



7. 找您七块一(毛)。 Here is your change ¥ 7 . 10

1. wǒ yào mǎi zhè liǎng jiàn chènshān.
2. yí jiàn chènshān duōshǎo qián?
3. huáng chènshān wǔshí kuài yī (máo).
4. bái chènshān sìshíèr kuài bā (máo).
5. yí gòng jǐushíèr kuài jiǔ (máo).
6. nín gěi wǒ yībǎikuài.
7. zhǎo nín qīkuàiyī (máo).

- |                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| 1. 一斤桔子多少钱?      | How much is one jin of oranges?                           |
| 2. 一斤一块三。        | One jin is ¥1.30.   |
| 3. 一斤苹果多少钱?      | How much is one jin of apples?                            |
| 4. 一斤三块。         | One jin is ¥3.00.   |
| 5. 我买三斤桔子, 一斤苹果。 | I would like to buy three jin of oranges, one jin apples. |
| 6. 一共六块九。        | Together ¥6.90.   |
| 7. 您给我十块钱。       | You gave me ¥10.00.                                       |
| 8. 找您三块一。        | Your change is ¥3.10.                                     |

1. yì jīn júzǐ duōshǎo qián?
2. yì jīn yīkuài sān.
3. yì jīn píngguǒ duōshǎo qián?
4. yì jīn sān kuài.
5. wǒ mǎi sān jīn júzǐ, yī jīn píngguǒ.
6. yí gòng liù kuài jiǔ.
7. nín gěi wǒ shí kuài qián.
8. zhǎo nín sān kuài yī.

### Colors

黑	hēi	black	一双皮鞋
红	hóng	red	一双手套
绿	lǜ	green	一双袜子
蓝	lán	blue	一条裤子
灰	huī	gray	一条短裤
紫	zǐ	purple	一件大衣
橘	jú	orange	一件雨衣
棕	zōng	brown	一顶帽子

### Clothes

yì (shuāng) pí xié	a pair of leather shoes
yì (shuāng) shǒutào	a pair of gloves
yì (shuāng) wàzi	a pair of socks
yí (tiáo) kùzi	a pair of pants
yí (tiáo) duǎnkù	a pair of shorts
yí (jiàn) dàyī	a coat
yí (jiàn) yǔyī	a raincoat
yì (dǐng) màozi	a hat

浅 qiǎn	light	一件裙子 yí (jiàn) qúnzi	a skirt, a dress
深 shēn	dark	一件内衣 yí (jiàn) nèiyī	an article of underwear

Measure words, included in parenthesis in the pinyin column, may not be left out.

Colors go after the measure words and may be stated in the 4 ways shown below. Color may be modified by putting "dark 深 (shēn)" or "浅 (qiǎn) light" before them as in example 2 below.

1) The color may be stated in a single syllable:

一件黄衬衫 a yellow shirt yí jiàn huáng chènshān

2) 的(de) may be used after the color:

一件深黄的衬衫 a dark yellow shirt yí jiàn shēn huángde chènshān

3) 色(sè) may be used after the color:

一件浅黄色衬衫 a yellow shirt yí jiàn huángsè chènshān

4) 色的(sè de) may be used after the color:

一件黄色的衬衫 a yellow shirt yí jiàn qiǎn huángsède chènshān

## Appendix D Numbers in Use

### New Words

1.	坐	zuò	sit, be in a bus or car
2.	路车	lù chē	bus number
3.	号码	hào mǎ	number
4.	电话	diàn huà	telephone
5.	电话号码	diàn huà hào mǎ	telephone number
6.	房间	fángjiān	house, apartment, room
7.	房间号	fáng jiān hào	house / apartment / room number
8.	课	kè	class
9.	节	jiē	measure word for classes
11.	重	zhòng	heavy
12.	斤	jīn	unit of weight ( .5 kilograms )
13.	公斤	gōng jīn	kilogram
14.	米	mǐ	meter
16.	岁	sui	years old
17.	快	kuài	fast, quick
18.	高	gāo	tall, high

### Telephone and Bus Numbers

#### ONE

When speaking, telephone numbers and bus numbers; the number 'one' is pronounced 'yào'. This avoids confusion with the number 7.

A: 你坐几路车?      What bus do you take?      nǐ zuò jǐ lù chē?

B: 我坐 713。      I take bus 713.      wǒ zuò qī yào sān。

A: 你的电话号码是多少?      What is your telephone number?

B: 我的电话号码是 5123 7190。      My number is 5123 7190.

A: nǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshǎo?

B: wǒ de diànhuà hàomǎ shì wǔ yào èr sān qī yào jǐu líng。

### Measurements (height and weight)

- A: 你多重? How much do you weigh? nǐ duō zhòng?  
B: 我 180 斤。 I weigh 180 斤。 wǒ yī bǎi bā shí jīn。
- A: 你多高? What is your height? nǐ duō gāo?  
B: 我一米五二。 I am 1.52 meters (tall). wǒ yī mǐ wǔ èr。
- A: 一公斤是几斤? How many jin(s) are in one kilogram?  
B: 一公斤是两斤。 One kilogram is two jin(s).
- A: yī gōngjīn shì jǐ jīn。  
B: yī gōngjīn shì liǎng jīn。

### Age

When express age or time 快 (kuài) is used to express 'almost'.

- A: 他几岁? How old is he? tā jǐ suì?  
(children under 10)
- B: 他快九岁了。 He is almost 9 years old. tā kuài jiǔ suì le。
- A: 你多大? nǐ duō dà? How old are you?  
B: 我二十六岁。 wǒ èr shí liù suì. I am 26 years old.  
我快十七岁了。 wǒ kuài shí qī suì le. I am almost 27 years old.

### Ordinal numbers

To create an ordinal number, place 第 before the number.

第一, 第二, 第三. . . . . 1st, 2nd, 3rd ...

明天第一节课是汉语。 Tomorrow, the first class is Chinese.

míngtiān dìyī jiē kè shì hànǔ.

### Room numbers

- A: 你房间号是多少? What is your room number?  
B: 我的房间是 508 号。 My room number is 508.
- A: nǐ fángjiān hào shì duōshǎo?  
B: wǒ de fángjiān shì wǔ líng bā hào.

## Appendix E

### Numbers from .001 to one million Percentages / Fractions

#### New Words

1. 千	qiān	one thousand (1,000)
2. 万	wàn	ten thousand (10,000)
3. 一百万	yī bǎi wàn	one million (1,000,000)
4. 点	diǎn	decimal point
5. 百分之(number)	bǎi fēn zhī (number)	(number) percent (%)
7. 同学	tóng xué	classmate
8. 班	bān	class
10. 女生	nǚ shēng	female student
11. 男生	nán shēng	male student

#### Fractions and Percentages

A。。。分之。。。 B     A is the whole amount, B is the part  
fēn zhī

<b>100%</b>		<b>20%</b>		<b>2/5</b>		
百	分之	百	分之	二十	五分之	二
bǎi	fēn zhī	bǎi	bǎi fēn zhī	èr shí	wǔ fēn zhī	èr

- |                 |                                 |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. 我们班百分之二十是男生。 | Our class is 20% boys.          |
| 2. 四分之一的同学是女生。  | 1/4 of my classmates are girls. |

1. wǒmen bān bǎi fēnzhī èrshí shì nánshēng.
2. sì fēnzhī yī de tóngxué shì nǚshēng.

The number 10,000 is one unit.

一万	yí wàn	1,000
两万	liǎng wàn	20,000
二十万	èr shí wàn	200,000
一百万	yì bǎi wàn	1,000,000

When speaking numbers, as you begin on the left proceed to the right, each digit represents the place value of the digit immediately following the one just stated and trailing zeros may be omitted.



**number is expressed as**

110	一百一	yì bǎi yī
110	一百一十	yì bǎi yī shí
120	一百二	yì bǎi èr
120	一百二十	yì bǎi èr shí
199	一百九十九	yì bǎi jiǔ shí jiǔ
1,000	一千	yì qiān
1,200	一千二	yì qiān èr
1,200	一千二百	yì qiān èr bǎi
2,999	两千九十九	liǎng qiān jiǔ shí jiǔ

When stating large numbers, saying 零(zero) takes the place of several zeros.

**number is expressed as**

1,001	一千零一	yì qiān líng yī
1,010	一千零一十	yì qiān líng yī shí
10,002	一万零二	yì wàn líng èr
10,020	一万零二十	yì wàn líng èr shí
100,003	十万零三	shí wàn líng sān

To express "a few", 几(jǐ) is used with 十(shí), 百(bǎi) and 千(qiān).

几十	jǐ shí	a few 10's
几百	jǐ bǎi	a few hundred
几千	jǐ qiān	a few thousand



## The number TWO

In the thousands place and above, 2 should be read as 两 (liǎng). 2000 is 两千 (liǎng qiān). When 2 appears in the hundreds place it may be read as either 二 (èr) or 两 (liǎng).

200	二百	èr bǎi	OR	两百	liǎng bǎi
2,000	两千			liǎng qiān	
2,002	两千零二			liǎng qiān líng èr	
2,020	两千零二十			liǎng qiān líng èr shí	
2,200	两千两百			liǎng qiān liǎng bǎi	
2,200	两千二百			liǎng qiān èr bǎi	
2,202	两千两百零二			liǎng qiān liǎng bǎi líng èr	
2,202	两千二百零二			liǎng qiān èr bǎi líng èr	
2,220	两千两百二十			liǎng qiān liǎng bǎi èr shí	
2,220	两千二百二十			liǎng qiān èr bǎi èr shí	
2,299	两千两百九十九			liǎng qiān liǎng bǎi jiǔ shí jiǔ	
2,299	两千二百九十九			liǎng qiān èr bǎi jiǔ shí jiǔ	

## Decimal numbers

0.001	零点零零一	líng diǎn líng líng yī
0.01	零点零一	líng diǎn líng
0.1	零点一	líng diǎn yī
2.1	二点一	èr diǎn yī
2.01	二点零一	èr diǎn líng yī
2.001	二点零零一	èr diǎn líng líng yī
2.201	二点二零一	èr diǎn èr líng yī



Pinyin Pronunciation Chart

Page 1 of 4

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L
1		a	o	e	(i)	(i)	er	ai	ei	ao	ou	an
2		a	o	e			er	ai	ei	ao	ou	an
3	b	ba	bo					bai	bei	bao		ban
4	p	pa	po					pai	pei	pao	pou	pan
5	m	ma	mo	me				mai	mei	mao	mou	man
6	f	fa	fo						fei		fou	fan
7	d	da		de				dai	dei	dao	dou	dan
8	t	ta		te				tai		tao	tou	tan
9	n	na		ne				nai	nei	nao	nou	nan
10	l	la		le				lai	lei	lao	lou	lan
11	z	za		ze	zi			zai	zei	zao	zou	zan
12	c	ca		ce	ci			cai		cao	cou	can
13	s	sa		se	si			sai		sao	sou	san
14	zh	zha		zhe		zhi		zhai	zhei	zhao	zhou	zhan
15	ch	cha		che		chi		chai		chao	chou	chan
16	sh	sha		she		shi		shai	shei	shao	shou	shan
17	r	ra		re		ri				rao	rou	ran
18	j											
19	q											
20	x											
21	g	ga		ge				gai	gei	gao	gou	gan
22	k	ka		ke				kai	kei	kao	kou	kan
23	h	ha		he				hai	hei	hao	hou	han

Chinese OCW Conversational Chinese is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-No Derivative Works 2.5 China Mainland License. Based on work at Chinese [www.chineseocw.com](http://www.chineseocw.com)



## Pinyin Pronunciation Chart

Page 2 of 4

	A	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W
1		en	ang	eng	ong	i	ia	iao	ie	iu	ian	in
2		en	ang	eng		yi	ya	yao	ye	you	yan	yin
3	b	ben	bang	beng		bi		biao	bie		bian	bin
4	p	pen	pang	peng		pi		piao	pie		pian	pin
5	m	men	mang	meng		mi		miao	mie	miu	mian	min
6	f	fen	fang	feng								
7	d	den	dang	deng	dong	di		diao	die	diu	dian	
8	t		tang	teng	tong	ti		tiao	tie		tian	
9	n	nen	nang	neng	nong	ni		niao	nie	niu	nian	nin
10	l		lang	leng	long	li	lia	liao	lie	liu	lian	lin
11	z	zen	zang	zeng	zong							
12	c	cen	cang	ceng	cong							
13	s	sen	sang	seng	song							
14	zh	zhen	zhang	zheng	zhong							
15	ch	chen	chang	cheng	chong							
16	sh	shen	shang	sheng								
17	r	ren	rang	reng	rong							
18	j					ji	jia	jiao	jie	jiu	jian	jin
19	q					qi	qia	qiao	qie	qiu	qian	qin
20	x					xi	xia	xiao	xie	xiu	xian	xin
21	g	gen	gang	geng	gong							
22	k	ken	kang	keng	kong							
23	h	hen	hang	heng	hong							

Chinese OCW Conversational Chinese is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-No Derivative Works 2.5 China Mainland License. Based on work at Chinese [www.chineseocw.com](http://www.chineseocw.com)



## Pinyin Pronunciation Chart

Page 3 of 4

	A	X	Y	Z	AA	AB	AC	AD	AE	AF	AG	AH
1		iang	ing	iong	u	ua	uo	uai	ui	uan	un	uang
2		yang	ying	yong	wu	wa	wo	wai	wei	wan	wen	wang
3	b		bing		bu							
4	p		ping		pu							
5	m		ming		mu							
6	f				fu							
7	d		ding		du		duo		dui	duan	dun	
8	t		ting		tu		tuo		tui	tuan	tun	
9	n	niang	ning		nu		nuo			nuan		
10	l	liang	ling		lu		fuo			fuan	lun	
11	z				zu		zuo		zui	zuan	zun	
12	c				cu		cuo		cui	cuan	cun	
13	s				su		suo		sui	suan	sun	
14	zh				zhu	zhua	zhuo	zhuai	zhui	zhuan	zhun	shuang
15	ch				chu	chua	chuo	chuai	chui	chaun	chun	chuang
16	sh				shu	shua	shuo	shuai	shui	shuan	shun	shuang
17	r				ru	rua	ruo		ruì	ruan	run	
18	j	jiang	jing	jiong								
19	q	qiang	qing	qiong								
20	x	xiang	xing	xiong								
21	g				gu	gua	guo	guai	gui	guan	gun	guang
22	k				ku	kua	kuo	kuai	kui	kuan	kun	kuang
23	h				hu	hua	huo	huai	hui	huan	hun	huang

Chinese OCW Conversational Chinese is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-No Derivative Works 2.5 China Mainland License. Based on work at Chinese [www.chineseocw.com](http://www.chineseocw.com)



	A	AI	AJ	AK	AL	AM
1		ueng	ü	üe	üan	ün
2		weng	yu	yue	yuan	yun
3	b					
4	p					
5	m					
6	f					
7	d					
8	t					
9	n		nü	nüe		
10	l		lü	lüe		
11	z					
12	c					
13	s					
14	zh					
15	ch					
16	sh					
17	r					
18	j		ju	jue	juan	jun
19	q		qu	que	quan	qun
20	x		xu	xue	xuan	xun
21	g					
22	k					
23	h					

## Glossary

Unit 30S are words in Unit 30 listed as Supplementary words

Chinese	Pinyin	English Meaning	Unit
<b>A</b>			
爱	ài	love	19
矮	ǎi	short	5
爱人	ài rén	husband or wife	11
安静	ān jìng	quiet	28
安全带	ān quán dài	seat belt	33
<b>B</b>			
吧	ba	softens a request	31
把	bǎ	measure word for chair	15
把	bǎ	a preposition used to make a subject – object – verb sentence	33
八	bā	eight	4
爸爸	bà ba	father	3
白	bái	white	24
摆	bǎi	to place things for the purpose decorating	17
半	bàn	half	9
搬	bān	move (things)	30S
办公室	bàn gōng shì	office	19
搬家	bān jiā	to move (to a new home)	33
抱	bào	to carry (in one's arms)	17
包	bāo	to wrap (a gift, a box)	33
报告	bào gào	report	24
包裹	bāo guǒ	parcel, package	33
报纸	bào zhǐ	newspaper	4
被	bèi	introduces the doer of an action in a passive sentence	34
背	bēi	to carry on one's back	17
北边	běi biān	north side	15
北面	běi miàn	north side	15
杯子	bēi zi	cup	6



北京	Běijīng	the capital of China	10
本	běn	measure word for books	4
本子	běn zi	notebook	33
比	bǐ	(something) compared to (something)	6
笔记本	bǐ jì běn	notebook	33
笔记本电脑	bǐ jì běn diàn nǎo	laptop computer	33
比较	bǐ jiào	relatively, comparatively	6
比赛	bǐ sài	match, competition	27
必须	bì xū	must	24
毕业	bì yè	graduate	12
变	biàn	change to, transform	33
边	biān	side	15
表	biǎo	form, table, chart	33
别	bié	other, do not	26
别的	bié de	other(s)	26
宾馆	bīn guǎn	hotel	29
病	bìng	sick	19
病人	bìng rén	sick person, patient	33
玻璃	bō lí	glass, window pane	33
脖子	bó zi	neck	34
不	bù	no	1
部	bù	measure word for movies	22
不如	bù rú	not as (comparison standard) as	6
<b>C</b>			
擦	cā	wipe	11
才	cái	then	26
菜	cài	food	25
餐馆	cān guǎn	restaurant	15
草	cǎo	grass	17
草地	cǎo dì	the ground covered with grass growing on it	17
茶	chá	tea	22
差	chà	short of	9
插	chā	to plug in	33
插头	chā tóu	electric plug	33



茶叶	chá yè	tea leaves	34
长	cháng	long, length	6
唱	chàng	sing	25
常常	cháng cháng	often	18
长城	cháng chéng	the Great Wall	26
唱歌	chàng gē	to sing	11
超市	chāo shì	supermarket, grocery store	29
车	chē	vehicle (car, bike, bus)	16
车棚	chē péng	covered parking for bicycles	33
衬衫	chèn shān	shirt	24
成	chéng	turn into	33
城市	chéng shì	city	6
吃	chī	to eat	12
冲	chōng	to dash against with great force	34
抽屉	chōu tì	drawer	33
抽烟	chōu yān	smoke (cigarettes, etc.)	24
出差	chū chāi	travel on business	13
出发	chū fā	set out	32
出租车	chū zū chē	taxi	22
出租汽车	chū zū qì chē	taxi	16
穿	chuān	to wear, to put on (clothing)	17
床	chuáng	bed	17
窗台	chuāng tái	window sill	17
吹	chuī	blow	34
次	cì	(number of) times	18
词典	cí diǎn	dictionary	4
从	cóng	from (a place)	12
从	cóng	from (a place or time)	29
从不	cóng bù	never	18
错	cuò	incorrect	22
<b>D</b>			
大	dà	big	5
打	dǎ	hit, send	22
打	dǎ	play (badminton, basketball, ping pong)	29



打电话	dǎ diàn huà	a phone call	11
打篮球	dǎ lán qiú	play basketball	11
打电话	dǎ diàn huà	make a telephone call	22
大家	dà jiā	everybody, everyone	22
打开	dǎ kāi	open, turn on	33
大门	dà mén	main gate	16
打球	dǎ qiú	to play (a ball game)	25
打扰	dǎ rǎo	disturb	26
打算	dǎ suàn	to plan	33
大小	dà xiǎo	size	6
大学	dà xué	university	12
大衣	dà yī	coat	5
打印	dǎ yìn	to print (computer)	25
带	dài	to take, to lead	17
戴	dài	to wear (hat, glasses, tie)	17
带	dài	to take, bring, carry	30
但是	dàn shì	but	26
当	dāng	to become	31
到	dào	to arrive, to attain a goal	22
道	dào	measure word for math problems	25
的	de	particle to indicate possession	3
得	de	structural particle	20
得多	de duō	a lot	6
德国	dé guó	Germany	5
的时候	de shí hou	when something happens	11
得	děi	to have to, must, to need to	24
等	děng	wait	11
灯	dēng	light	34
地	dì	ground	16
递	dì	pass or hand something to someone	33
低	dī	low	6
弟弟	dì dì	younger brother	3
地方	dì fang	a place or location	10
地区	dì qū	area	28



地上	dì shàng	on the floor, on the ground	22
地铁	dì tiě	subway	19
地图	dì tú	map	6
电池	diàn chí	battery	33
电话	diàn huà	telephone	22
电脑	diàn nǎo	computer	3
电视	diàn shì	television	10
点心	diǎn xīn	a snack	30S
电影	diàn yǐng	movie	11
点钟	diǎn zhōng	o'clock	9
电子	diàn zǐ	electronic	33
电子邮件	diàn zǐ yóu jiàn	email	33
掉	diào	fall, drop	30S
叮	dīng	sting (by a mesquito or bee)	34
动	dòng	to move	34
懂	dǒng	understand	20
东边	dōng biān	east side	15
东方	dōng fāng	eastern, Asia	26
东面	dōng miàn	east side	15
冬天	dōng tiān	winter	6
东西	dōng xi	things	11
都	dōu	all, both	2
读	dú	read, study	25
度	dù	degree (temperature)	6
度假	dù jià	vacation	18
读书	dú shū	to study	26
锻炼	duàn liàn	to do physical exercise	18
对	duì	correct	2
对面	duì miàn	opposite	15
多长	duō cháng	how long? (time)	9
多了	duō le	a lot	6
多少	duō shao	how many? how much?	7

## E

俄罗斯	é luó sī	Russia	15
-----	----------	--------	----



二	èr	two	4
<b>F</b>			
发	fā	send, transmit	33
发票	fā piào	receipt	24
发烧	fā shāo	to have a fever	13
法文	fǎ wén	French (language)	7
饭	fàn	meal	13
饭馆	fàn guǎn	restaurant	28
翻译	fān yì	to translate	25
放	fàng	to put something somewhere	17
方	fāng	square	5
放假	fàng jià	vacation	29
房间	fáng jiān	room	6
房子	fáng zi	house,apartment,building,room	6
飞	fēi	fly	30S
非常	fēi cháng	very, extremely	5
飞机	fēi jī	airplane	16
分钟	fēn zhōng	minute	9
封	fēng	measure word for letters	22
风	fēng	wind	33
风筝	fēng zheng	kite	30S
幅	fú	measure word for paintings	22
附近	fù jìn	nearby	29
父母	fù mǔ	parents	26
父亲	fù qīn	father	30S
复习	fù xí	review (a lesson)	33
<b>G</b>			
改	gǎi	change to, transform	33
该	gāi	should	24
干	gàn	to do	10
干净	gān jìng	clean	20
刚	gāng	just (now)	30S
高	gāo	tall	5
告诉	gào sù	tell	26



高兴	gāo xìng	happy, pleased	5
个	gè	general purpose measure word	4
歌	gē	song	25
哥哥	gē ge	older brother	3
给	gěi	to give	11
跟	gēn	with, and	29
公共汽车	gōng gòng qì chē	public bus	16
公里	gōng lǐ	kilometer	29
公园	gōng yuán	park	18
工作	gōng zuò	a job, to work	11
狗	gǒu	dog	22
故宫	gù gōng	Forbidden City (historical site in Beijing)	26
顾客	gù kè	customer	33
姑娘	gū niang	young lady	34
挂	guà	to hang something up	17
刮	guā	blow	33
关	guān	close	17
关掉	guān diào	turn off (electric things)	33
关上	guān shang	close, turn off	33
光	guāng	used up, nothing left	34
广州	Guǎng zhōu	a city in China	29
贵	guì	expensive, honorable, to be named (family name)	1
桂林	Guilín	a province of China	12
过	guò	particle for indicating past experience	12
过	guò	come or go across, to cross	30
<b>H</b>			
哈尔滨	Hā ěr bīn	a city in northeastern China	6
还	hái	still, yet, still more, also, (used for emphasis)	26
海	hǎi	sea	30S
害怕	hài pà	afraid	19
还是	hái shì	or (in a question - not used in a statement)	2
孩子	hái zi	child	6
杭州	Háng zhōu	a city in southeastern China	6



号	hào	number (expressing a day)	8
好	hǎo	successful, satisfactory, good	22
好	hǎo	good	1
好吃	hǎo chī	delicious	28
号码	hào mǎ	number	33
和	hé	and	2
喝	hē	drink	10
合上	hé shàng	close a book	33
盒子	hé zi	box (small)	33
黑	hēi	dark, black	25
黑板	hēi bǎn	blackboard	11
很	hěn	very	5
恨	hèn	hate	19
很多	hěn duō	many	7
很少	hěn shǎo	not much, not many, not often	18
红	hóng	red	5
后边	hòu biān	behind	15
后面	hòu miàn	behind	15
护照	hù zhào	passport	33
画	huà	to paint or draw (a picture)	22
花	huā	flower	1
花	huā	use time, spend time	31
花瓶	huā píng	flower vase	33
花园宾馆	huā yuán bīn guǎn	Garden Hotel	29
坏	huài	broken	25
还	huán	return (something)	22
换	huàn	to exchange	25
环境	huán jìng	environment	28
画儿	huàr	painting, picture	22
花儿	huār	flower	30
回	huí	return	19
会	huì	will	11
会	huì	can, will, probably	25
回来	huí lái	come back	13



回答	huí dá	to answer	22
会议室	huì yì shì	meeting room	29
火车	huǒ chē	train	16
或者	huò zhě	or (in a statement - not used in a question)	2

## J

极	jí	extremely	28
记	jì	to take note, remember, record	33
系	jì	“put on” or “wear” belts, scarves and tied things	33
寄	jì	mail (verb)	30S
几	jǐ	several, how many?	7
机场	jī chǎng	airport	29
几点	jǐ diǎn	what time?	9
机票	jī piào	plane ticket	33
及时	jí shí	in a timely manner	32
吉他	jí tā	guitar	28
家	jiā	home (a place), family (people)	11
家	jiā	measure word for shops and stores	12
夹克	jiá kè	jacket	33
价钱	jià qián	price	6
件	jiàn	measure word for articles of clothing	5
见	jiàn	to meet, to see	22
件	jiàn	measure word for affairs and matters	25
建筑	jiàn zhù	building (noun)	15
讲	jiǎng	speak, say, tell	25
叫	jiào	to be called	1
交	jiāo	to hand over or hand in something	22
教室	jiāo shì	classroom	3
教学楼	jiāo xué lóu	teaching building	29
饺子	jiǎo zi	Chinese dumpling	10
借	jiè	borrow	12
接	jiē	to receive, to pick up (i.e., a child from school)	33
街	jiē	street	22
接电话	jiē diàn huà	to answer the phone	33



结果	jié guǒ	outcome, result	28
结婚	jié hūn	married	26
姐姐	jiě jie	older sister	3
解决	jiě jué	solve, resolve, settle	32
解开	jiě kāi	take off (a belt)	33
姐妹	jiě mèi	sister	3
紧	jǐn	tightly	32
近	jìn	near	29
进	jìn	enter	30
今年	jīn nián	this year	8
今天	jīn tiān	today	6
警察	jǐng chá	police	33
经常	jīng cháng	often	18
经理	jīng lǐ	manager	32
经验	jīng yàn	experienced	6
旧	jiù	old (things – not people or animals)	5
就	jiù	then	12
九	jiǔ	nine	4
酒	jiǔ	alcohol, alcoholic drinks	24
句子	jù zi	sentence	17
觉得	jué de	to think, to feel	24

## K

咖啡	kā fēi	coffee	10
咖啡馆	kā fēi guǎn	coffee shop	30S
开	kāi	open, turn on	17
开	kāi	drive, open, begin	19
开会	kāi huì	start a meeting, have a meeting	11
开车	kāi chē	drive a car (bus, truck)	19
开放	kāi fàng	to make open to the public	26
开始	kāi shǐ	begin, start	29
开水	kāi shuǐ	boiling water	34
看	kàn	to see, to watch	10
看病	kàn bìng	see a doctor	19
扛	káng	to carry something on one's shoulders	33



刻	kè	a quarter of an hour	9
棵	kē	measure word for trees	6
课本	kè běn	textbook	25
课间	kè jiān	break between classes	31
客厅	kè tīng	living room	32
可以	kě yǐ	allow, permit, may	25
课桌	kè zhuō	school desk for students	15
空调	kōng tiào	air conditioner	33
哭	kū	cry	32
快	kuài	fast, quick	9
块	kuài	a piece of	34
宽	kuān	wide	6
<b>L</b>			
辣	là	spicy hot	25
拉	lā	pull	33
拉链	lā liàn	zipper	33
来	lái	come	10
懒	lǎn	lazy	5
篮球	lán qiú	basketball	25
老	lǎo	old (people and animals - not objects)	1
姥姥	lǎo lao	maternal grandmother	17
老师	lǎo shī	teacher	1
了	le	particle for indicating completed action	12
冷	lěng	cold	6
离	lí	from (a place)	29
李	Lǐ	plum, a common surname	1
里	lǐ	inside	11
礼物	lǐ wù	gift	33
礼拜	lǐ bài	week	8
里边	lǐ bian	in, inside	16
离开	lí kāi	leave	26
里面	lǐ mian	in, inside	16
礼物	lǐ wù	gift	30S
俩	liǎ	equivalent to 两个(liǎng gè)	4



脸	liǎn	face	33
辆	liàng	measure word for vehicles and bicycles	4
两	liǎng	two (used with measure words)	4
聊	liáo	chit chat	31
了	liǎo	verb compliment indicating possibility	25
聊天	liáo tiān	chit chat	31
聊天儿	liáo tiānr	chit chat	11
莉莉	Lili	a name of a person	33
邻居	lín jū	neighbor	32
零	líng	zero	4
领带	lǐng dài	necktie	33
另外	lìng wài	other, besides	26
六	liù	six	4
流利	liú lì	fluent	28
楼	lóu	building	5
楼房	lóu fáng	multi-story building	16
路	lù	road	16
录音机	lù yīn jī	cassette tape recorder	34
旅游	lǚ yóu	to travel for pleasure	18

## M

吗	ma	modal particle used at the end of a sentence to change a statement into a question	1
麻烦	má fan	trouble, inconvenience	33
妈妈	mā ma	mother	3
马上	mǎ shàng	immediately	30S
卖	mài	sell	13
买	mǎi	buy	11
卖完	mài wán	sell out of something	13
买东西	mǎi dōng xi	go shopping	11
慢	màn	slow	20
满意	mǎn yì	satisfy	32
忙	máng	busy	5
猫	māo	cat	30S
毛笔	máo bǐ	brush for calligraphy	19
毛衣	máo yī	sweater	12



每	měi	every	10
美国	měi guó	the USA	2
美国人	měi guó rén	American citizen	2
妹妹	mèi mei	younger sister	3
没有	méi yǒu	do not have	7
美元	měi yuán	American dollars	33
们	men	a suffix added to pronouns indicating plural	2
门	mén	door, gate	17
门口	mén kǒu	door, gate	17
面	miàn	side, surface	15
面包	miàn bāo	bread	33
面条	miàn tiáo	noodles	19
明	Míng	bright, a given name	1
名	míng	measure word for persons	33
明年	míng nián	next year	8
明天	míng tiān	tomorrow	8
明信片	míng xìn piàn	postcard	33
名字	míng zi	name	1
魔术师	mó shù shī	magician	33
母亲	mǔ qīn	mother	30S
<b>N</b>			
拿	ná	to carry in one's hand, to fetch	25
那	nà	that	3
哪	nǎ	which	2
那么	nà me	that much	6
那些	nà xiē	those	5
南边	nán biān	south side	15
难过	nán guò	sad, grieved	28
难看	nán kàn	ugly	5
南面	nán miàn	south side	15
男朋友	nán péng you	boyfriend	3
闹钟	nào zhōng	alarm clock	33
哪儿	nǎr	where?	10
呢	ne	modal particle used at the end of a sentence to create a question in a soft tone	2



呢	ne	a particle that indicates an action in progress	11
能	néng	can, will	25
你	nǐ	you	1
你们	nǐ men	you (plural)	2
年	nián	year	8
念	niàn	to read aloud	17
您	nín	you (formal, indicating respect)	1
牛	niú	cow	33
纽约	niǔ yuē	New York	6
弄	nòng	make	33
女朋友	nǚ péng you	girlfriend	3
女士	nǚ shì	Madam, lady, respectful way to address a woman that is older than yourself	1

### P

爬	pá	climb	30
趴	pā	to lie face down	32
怕	pà	to dislike, to fear	19
排队	pái duì	to wait in line	31
牌子	pái zi	sign	17
旁边	páng biān	beside	15
跑步	pǎo bù	run	18
碰	pèng	touch, bump	33
朋友	péng you	friend	3
啤酒	pí jiǔ	beer	30
批评	pī píng	criticize	34
篇	piān	measure word for literary articles	22
便宜	pián yi	inexpensive	6
票	piào	ticket	13
漂亮	piào liang	pretty	5
瓶	píng	bottle (of something)	30
苹果	píng guǒ	apple	6
乒乓球	pīng pāng qiú	ping pong, table tennis	25
瓶子	píng zi	bottle (noun)	30



## Q

骑	qí	ride (a bike, a horse, motorcycle)	19
起	qǐ	rise	30
七	qī	seven	4
骑车	qí chē	to ride a bike	25
汽车	qì chē	car	19
起床	qǐ chuáng	get up	31
骑马	qí mǎ	to ride a horse	25
欺骗	qī piàn	cheat, swindle	34
骑自行车	qí zì xíng chē	ride a bike	19
钱	qián	money	22
铅笔	qiān bǐ	pencil	4
前边	qián biān	front side	15
前面	qián miàn	front side	15
墙	qiáng	wall	17
切	qiē	cut, slice	22
勤快	qín kuài	diligent, hardworking	5
请	qǐng	please	1
清楚	qīng chu	clear	20
球	qiú	ball	33
去	qù	go	10
取	qǔ	to take, to fetch	33
去年	qù nián	last year	8
裙子	qún zi	dress, skirt	17

## R

然后	rán hòu	then, afterwards	26
热	rè	hot	6
热情	rè qíng	cordially	32
人	rén	person	2
人口	rén kǒu	population	6
人民币	rén mín bì	Chinese currency	33
认识	rèn shi	to meet someone, to know someone	24
认为	rén wéi	opinion	24
认真	rèn zhēn	conscientious	32



扔	rēng	to throw	33
扔掉	rēng diào	throw away	33
日	rì	day	8
日本	rì běn	Japan	5
肉	ròu	meat	34
如果	rú guǒ	if	26

## S

三	sān	three	4
扫	sǎo	sweep	33
沙发	shā fā	sofa	22
山	shān	mountain	30
伤	shāng	to injure	34
上班	shàng bān	to start work, to be at work	23
上边	shàng bian	top side	16
上车	shàng chē	to get into a vehicle	23
上船	shàng chuán	to get in a boat	23
商店	shāng diàn	store, shop	10
上个星期	shàng ge xīng qī	last week	8
上个月	shàng ge yuè	last month	8
上海	Shàng hǎi	Shanghai (a major city in China)	10
上街	shàng jiē	to set out on a (local) trip (ie., to go shopping)	23
上课	shàng kè	to start class, to be in class	23
上楼	shàng lóu	to go upstairs	23
上路	shàng lù	to set out on (long) journey	23
上面	shàng mian	top side	16
上午	shàng wǔ	morning	9
上学	shàng xué	to go to school (daily classes or begin a major course)	23
设计图	shè jì tú	blueprints	33
什么	shén me	what	1
什么时候	shén me shí hòu	when?	10
身体	shēn tǐ	health, body	11
生病	shēng bìng	fall ill, become sick	25
生词	shēng cí	new words	33



生活	shēng huó	life	26
生日	shēng rì	birthday	8
声音	shēng yīn	voice, sound	6
绳子	shéng zi	rope	33
十	shí	ten	4
是	shì	is, are, am	1
事	shì	matters or affairs	25
时间	shí jiān	time	9
食品	shí pǐn	foodstuffs	19
事儿	shìr	affairs, matters	31
受	shòu	to receive	25
手	shǒu	hand	32
收	shōu	receive	22
手机	shǒu jī	cell phone	33
首都	shǒu dū	capital	29
收拾	shōu shi	to put in order, to tidy up	33
树	shù	tree	6
束	shù	measure word meaning a ‘bunch’ (of flowers)	30
书	shū	book	3
书包	shū bāo	book bag, backpack	16
书店	shū diàn	bookstore	14
舒服	shū fu	comfortable	32
书架	shū jià	bookshelf	16
数学	shù xué	math (as a subject)	25
树叶	shù yè	leaf	34
睡	shuì	sleep	20
水	shuǐ	water	33
谁	shuí (shéi)	who (commonly pronounced shéi)	2
水果	shuǐ guǒ	fruit	5
睡觉	shuì jiào	sleep	11
水平	shuǐ píng	level	25
四	sì	four	4
死	sǐ	die	26



司机	sī jī	driver	25
送	sòng	deliver, give (free of charge)	22
宿舍	sù shè	dormitory	12
锁	suǒ	to lock	34
所以	suǒ yǐ	so	26

## T

他	tā	he	2
她	tā	she	2
弹	tán	play a stringed musical instrument with one's fingers, pluck a string	28
他们	tā men	they (for a group of both females and males)	2
她们	tā men	they (females)	2
太	tài	too	5
台灯	tái dēng	table lamp	17
太阳	tài yáng	sun	30S
谈	tán	talk, discuss	26
烫	tàng	to burn, to scald	34
躺	tǎng	to lie down or recline	17
讨论	tǎo lùn	discuss	11
讨厌	tǎo yàn	hate, disgusting	19
疼	téng	to have pain	25
踢	tī	kick	34
天	tiān	day	8
天气	tiān qì	weather	6
天津	Tiānjīn	a city near Beijing	31
条	tiáo	measure word for roads	6
条	tiáo	measure word for skirts and dresses	24
跳舞	tiào wǔ	to dance	18
贴	tiē	to stick something to another thing	17
铁路	tiě lù	railway, railroad tracks	34
停	tíng	stop	30S
听	tīng	listen, hear	20
通常	tōng cháng	regular, ordinary, normal	18
同事	tóng shì	colleague, coworker	33



同学	tóng xué	classmate	3
通知	tōng zhī	notice	33
头	tóu	head	32
图书馆	tú shū guǎn	library	10
腿	tuǐ	leg	25
推	tuī	push	22
脱	tuō	take off (clothing and shoes)	33

## W

外边	wài bian	outside	16
外国	wài guó	foreign country	28
外面	wài mian	outside	16
外衣	wài yī	coat	17
完	wán	to complete, to finish	22
晚	wǎn	late	31
晚饭	wǎn fàn	dinner	22
晚会	wǎn huì	party (in the evening)	33
晚上	wǎn shang	evening, late, night time	9
王	Wáng	king, a common surname	1
玩儿	wánr	play, relax and enjoy oneself	19
伟	Wěi	great, a common given name	1
为什么	wèi shén me	why	19
危险	wēi xiǎn	dangerous	25
问	wèn	ask	1
文化	wén huà	culture	26
文件	wén jiàn	documents, papers	25
问题	wèn tí	question, problem	25
文章	wén zhāng	article, passage, essay	19
蚊子	wén zi	mosquito	34
握	wò	to hold	32
我	wǒ	I, me	1
我们	wǒ men	we	2
卧室	wò shì	bedroom	33
五	wǔ	five	4
午饭	wǔ fàn	lunch	31



屋子	wū zi	room	22
<b>X</b>			
洗	xǐ	wash	11
西边	xī biān	west side	15
西瓜	xī guā	watermelon	22
喜欢	xǐ huan	like	19
西面	xī miàn	west side	15
下课	xià kè	to end a class	12
下班	xià bān	to get off work	23
下边	xià bian	under, below, bottom side	16
下车	xià chē	to get out of a vehicle	23
下船	xià chuán	to get out of a boat	23
下个星期	xià ge xīng qī	next week	8
下个月	xià ge yuè	next month	8
下课	xià kè	to end a class	23
下楼	xià lóu	to go downstairs	23
下面	xià mian	under, below, bottom side	16
夏天	xià tiān	summer	6
下午	xià wǔ	afternoon	9
下学	xià xué	to end a day of school	23
下雪	xià xuě	to snow	23
下雨	xià yǔ	to rain	13
先	xiān	first	26
先生	xiān sheng	mister, gentleman	1
现在	xiàn zài	now	10
想	xiǎng	think, want, miss (long for)	24
香蕉	xiāng jiāo	banana	6
箱子	xiāng zi	box (large), suitcase	33
笑	xiào	smile, laugh	32
小	xiǎo	little, small	1
小狗	xiǎo gǒu	puppy	22
笑话	xiào huà	joke	25
小姐	xiǎo jiě	young lady, Miss (title)	1
小时	xiǎo shí	hour	9



小偷	xiǎo tōu	thief	33
校长	xiào zhǎng	headmaster, school principle	3
鞋	xié	shoe	33
写	xiě	write	11
谢谢	xiè xie	thanks, thank you	19
写信	xiě xìn	to write a letter	19
写字	xiě zì	write, write letters or characters	20
信	xìn	letter	19
新	xīn	new	5
新鲜	xīn xiān	fresh	5
行	xíng	OK	31
姓	xìng	surname	1
幸福	xìng fú.	happiness	6
行李	xíng li	luggage	33
星期	xīng qī	week	8
兄弟	xiōng dì	brother	3
修	xiū	repair	28
修理	xiū lǐ	to repair	25
休息	xiū xi	rest, break, a day off	11
学期	xué qī	term, semester	8
学生	xué sheng	student	2
学习	xué xí	study	10
学校	xué xiào	school	3
学院	xué yuàn	campus	15

## Y

眼镜	yǎn jìng	glasses	17
演员	yǎn yuán	performer, actor	32
药	yào	medicine	18
要	yào	want, will, intend	24
咬	yǎo	bite	34
要是	yào shi	if	26
页	yè	page	16
夜	yè	night	23
也	yě	also	2



爷爷	yéye	paternal grandfather	17
一	yī	one	4
一点儿	yì diǎnr	a little bit	6
一定	yí dìng	already	22
衣服	yī fu	clothes	19
以后	yǐ hòu	after	12
以后	yǐ hòu	after	27
一会儿	yí huìr	indicates a short time	31
已经	yǐ jīng	already	25
一起	yì qǐ	together	11
以前	yǐ qián	before	12
以前	yǐ qián	before	27
一下	yí xià	indicates a short time or casual manner	31
一下儿	yí xiàr	indicates a short time or casual manner	31
一些	yì xiē	some	6
一样	yí yàng	the same	6
医院	yī yuàn	hospital	15
椅子	yǐ zi	chair	15
一边。。一边	yìbiān...yìbiān	while (two actions occurring at the same time)	27
银行	yín háng	bank	30
因为	yīn wèi	because	11
音乐	yīn yuè	music	6
应该	yīng gāi	should	24
英国	yīng guó	England	2
英国人	yīng guó rén	British citizen	2
英文	yīng wén	English language	5
英语	yīng yǔ	English language	10
用	yòng	use	19
又	yòu	(1) indicates a repetition of an action (2) indicates a succession of actions	28
有	yǒu	have	7
右边	yòu biān	right side	15
幼儿园	yòu ér yuán	kindergarten	33



邮局	yóu jú	post office	15
右面	yòu miàn	right side	15
邮票	yóu piào	stamp	33
友谊商店	yǒu yì shāng diàn	Friendship Store	12
游泳	yóu yǒng	swim	24
又。。又	yòu...yòu	indicates two actions that happen in the same time period	28
语法	yǔ fǎ	grammar	33
羽毛球	yǔ máo qiú	badminton	29
雨伞	yǔ sǎn	umbrella	33
预习	yù xí	preview (a lesson)	33
语言	yǔ yán	language	29
雨衣	yǔ yī	raincoat	33
圆	yuán	round	5
远	yuǎn	far	29
圆珠笔	yuán zhū bǐ	ballpoint pen	4
院子	yuàn zi	yard, courtyard	34
月	yuè	month	8
越来越	yuè lái yuè	used to state a progression	6
运动	yùn dòng	sports, participating in sports	18
<b>Z</b>			
在	zài	an adverb that indicates an action in progress	11
在	zài	in, at	14
在	zài	at, there exists, there is	15
在	zài	to be at a place	22
再	zài	(1) indicates a repetition of an action (2) Indicates a continuation	28
再见	zài jiàn	good bye	1
咱们	zán men	we	2
早	zǎo	early	21
早饭	zǎo fàn	breakfast	12
早上	zǎo shang	morning	9
怎么	zěn me	how?	19
怎么样	zěn me yàng	how? (when asking about the condition of	24



		something or someone)	
摘	zhāi	to take off things [that use 戴]	33
摘	zhāi	pick (flowers, fruit, etc.)	34
站	zhàn	to stand	17
张	Zhāng	a common surname	1
张	zhāng	measure word for newspapers and pieces of paper	4
张	zhāng	measure word for table	15
找	zhǎo	to look for	11
着急	zháo jí	worry, hurry	24
照相机	zhào xiàng jī	camera	17
着	zhe	aspect particle indicating a continuing state or action	17
着	zhe	adverbial modifier to show the manner in which an action is done	32
这	zhè	this	3
这个星期	zhè ge xīng qī	this week	8
这个月	zhè ge yuè	this month	8
这么	zhè me	this much	6
这么	zhè me	so, very	26
这些	zhè xiē	these	5
正在	zhèng zài	an adverb that indicates an action in progress	11
这儿	zhèr	here	11
只	zhǐ	only	26
支	zhī	measure word for pens and pencils	4
知道	zhī dào	to know	26
之后	zhī hòu	after	27
之前	zhī qián	before	27
中国	zhōng guó	China	2
中国人	zhōng guó rén	Chinese citizen	2
中间	zhōng jiān	middle, between	15
中文	zhōng wén	Chinese (language)	7
中午	zhōng wǔ	noon	9
周	zhōu	week	8



周末	zhōu mò	weekend	18
住	zhù	live	12
注意	zhù yì	pay attention to	24
抓	zhuā	to grab, to sieze, to catch	33
抓住	zhuā zhù	to catch, to sieze	34
专业	zhuān yè	university major	6
撞	zhuàng	to bump, to hit	34
装	zhuāng	load, pack	33
装修	zhuāng xiū	decorate, remodel	33
准备	zhǔn bèi	prepare	33
桌子	zhuō zi	table	5
自行车	zì xíng chē	bicycle	4
走	zǒu	walk, to leave a place	12
走路	zǒu lù	to walk down the street	32
最	zuì	most	19
最好	zuì hǎo	best	26
最近	zuì jìn	recently	11
最喜欢	zuì xǐ huan	favorite	19
座	zuò	measure word for buildings	5
做	zuò	to do	10
坐	zuò	to sit	17
坐	zuò	to ride in a vehicle	19
昨天	zuó tiān	yesterday	6
左边	zuǒ biān	left side	15
左面	zuǒ miàn	left side	15
作业	zuò yè	homework	22
作业本	zuò yè běn	homework notebook	33

